

WIEN2k

An Augmented Plane Wave Plus Local Orbitals Program
for Calculating Crystal Properties

User's Guide, WIEN2k_17.1 (Release 07/03/2017)

**Peter Blaha
Karlheinz Schwarz
Georg Madsen
Dieter Kvasnicka
Joachim Luitz**

Vienna University of Technology
Institute of Materials Chemistry
Getreidemarkt 9/165-TC
A-1060 Vienna, Austria

Peter Blaha, Karlheinz Schwarz, Georg K. H. Madsen, Dieter Kvasnicka, Joachim Luitz:
WIEN2k

An Augmented Plane Wave + Local Orbitals Program for Calculating Crystal Properties

revised edition WIEN2k_17.1 (Release 07/03/2017)

Prof. Dr. Karlheinz Schwarz
Vienna University of Technology
Institute of Materials Chemistry
Getreidemarkt 9/165-TC
A-1060 Vienna, Austria
ISBN 3-9501031-1-2

ISBN 3-9501031-1-2

Contents

I	Introduction to the WIEN2k package	1
1	Introduction	3
2	Basic concepts	7
2.1	Density Functional Theory	7
2.2	The APW Methods	8
2.2.1	The LAPW Method	8
2.2.2	The APW+lo Method	9
2.2.3	General considerations	10
3	Quick Start	13
3.1	Naming conventions	13
3.2	Starting the server	14
3.3	Connecting to the w2web server	15
3.4	Creating a new session	15
3.5	Creating a new case	16
3.6	Creating the struct file	16
3.7	Initialization	18
3.8	The SCF calculation	20
3.9	The case.scf file	21
3.10	Saving a calculation	21
3.11	Calculating properties	21
3.11.1	Electron density plots	21
3.11.2	Density of States (DOS)	24
3.11.3	X-ray spectra	26
3.11.4	Bandstructure	26
3.11.5	Bandstructure with band character plotting / full lines	27
3.11.6	Volume Optimization	28
3.12	Setting up a new case	29
3.12.1	Manual setup	29
3.12.2	Setting up a new case using w2web	29

II	Detailed description of the files and programs of the WIEN2k package	31
4	Files and Program Flow	33
4.1	Flow of input and output files	33
4.2	Input/Output files	37
4.3	The case.struct.file	38
4.4	The case.scf file	42
4.5	Flow of programs	43
4.5.1	Core, semi-core and valence states	45
4.5.2	Spin-polarized calculation	45
4.5.3	Fixed-spin-moment (FSM) calculations	45
4.5.4	Antiferromagnetic (AFM) calculations	46
4.5.5	Spin-orbit interaction	46
4.5.6	Orbital potentials	47
4.5.7	Onsite-exact-exchange and hybrid functionals for correlated electrons	48
4.5.8	Unscreened and screened hybrid functionals ("hf"-module)	50
4.5.9	Slater, SmBJ and KLI potentials ("hf"-module)	55
4.5.10	modified Becke-Johnson potential (mBJ) for band gaps	56
4.5.11	DFT-D3 for dispersion energy	57
4.5.12	Nonlocal van der Waals functionals	57
5	Shell scripts	61
5.1	Job control	61
5.1.1	Main execution script (x_lapw)	61
5.1.2	Create the master input file case.struct (makestruct_lapw)	63
5.1.3	Job control for initialization (init_lapw)	63
5.1.4	Job control for iteration (run_lapw or runsp_lapw)	64
5.1.5	Job control for iteration with the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potentials (run_vnonloc_lapw)	66
5.2	Utility scripts	67
5.2.1	Save a calculation (save_lapw)	67
5.2.2	Restoring a calculation (restore_lapw)	68
5.2.3	Reduce atomic spheres and interpolate density (reduce_rmt_lapw)	68
5.2.4	Remove unnecessary files (clean_lapw)	68
5.2.5	Migrate a case to/from a remote computer (migrate_lapw)	68
5.2.6	Generate case.inst (instgen_lapw)	69
5.2.7	Set R-MT values in your case.struct file (setrmt_lapw)	69
5.2.8	create_add_atom_clmsum_lapw	69
5.2.9	Create case.int file (for DOS) (configure_int_lapw)	70

5.2.10	Check for running WIEN jobs (check_lapw)	70
5.2.11	Cancel (kill) running WIEN jobs (cancel_lapw)	70
5.2.12	Extract critical points from a Bader analysis (extractaim_lapw)	70
5.2.13	scfmonitor_lapw	71
5.2.14	analyse_lapw	71
5.2.15	Check parallel execution (testpara_lapw)	72
5.2.16	Check parallel execution of lapw1 (testpara1_lapw)	72
5.2.17	Check parallel execution of lapw2 (testpara2_lapw)	72
5.2.18	grepline_lapw	72
5.2.19	initso_lapw	72
5.2.20	init_hf_lapw	72
5.2.21	init_mbj_lapw	73
5.2.22	vec2old_lapw	73
5.2.23	clmextrapol_lapw	73
5.2.24	makescratch_lapw	74
5.3	Structure optimization	74
5.3.1	Lattice parameters (Volume, c/a, lattice parameters)	74
5.3.2	Minimization of internal parameters (min_lapw)	76
5.4	Phonon calculations	79
5.4.1	init_phonon_lapw	79
5.4.2	analyse_phonon_lapw	80
5.5	Parallel Execution	80
5.5.1	k-Point Parallelization	81
5.5.2	MPI parallelization	81
5.5.3	How to use WIEN2k as a parallel program	81
5.5.4	The .machines file	82
5.5.5	How the list of k-points is split	84
5.5.6	Flow chart of the parallel scripts	84
5.5.7	On the fine grained parallelization	85
5.6	NMR calculations: Chemical shift and Knight shift	87
5.6.1	Chemical shift	87
5.6.2	Knight shifts	91
5.7	Wannier functions (wien2wannier)	92
5.7.1	Usage	93
5.7.2	Help and FAQ	94
5.8	Spontaneous Polarization, Piezoelectricity and Born Charges (BerryPI)	94
5.8.1	Options	95
5.8.2	Spontaneous Polarization	95

5.8.3	Born effective charges	96
5.8.4	Piezoelectric constants	97
5.9	Getting on-line help	97
5.10	Interface scripts	98
5.10.1	eplot.lapw	98
5.10.2	gibbs.lapw	98
5.10.3	parabolfit.lapw	99
5.10.4	dosplot.lapw	99
5.10.5	dosplot2.lapw	99
5.10.6	Cgrace.lapw, Cgrace_conf.lapw and Cgrace_dos.lapw	100
5.10.7	Curve.lapw	100
5.10.8	specplot.lapw	100
5.10.9	rhoplot.lapw	100
5.10.10	prepare_xsf.lapw	101
5.10.11	opticplot.lapw	102
5.10.12	addjoint-updn.lapw	102
6	Initialization	103
6.1	NN	103
6.1.1	Execution	104
6.2	SGROUP	104
6.2.1	Execution	104
6.3	SYMMETRY	104
6.3.1	Execution	105
6.4	LSTART	105
6.4.1	Execution	105
6.4.2	Dimensioning parameters	105
6.4.3	Input	106
6.5	KGEN	107
6.5.1	Execution	108
6.5.2	Dimensioning parameters	108
6.6	DSTART	108
6.6.1	Execution	108
6.6.2	Dimensioning parameters	109

7	SCF cycle	111
7.1	LAPW0	111
7.1.1	Execution	112
7.1.2	Dimensioning parameters	112
7.1.3	Input	112
7.2	DFTD3	115
7.2.1	Execution	117
7.2.2	Input	117
7.3	NLVDW	119
7.3.1	Execution	119
7.3.2	Input	119
7.4	ORB	120
7.4.1	Execution	121
7.4.2	Dimensioning parameters	121
7.4.3	Input	121
7.5	LAPW1	124
7.5.1	Execution	124
7.5.2	Dimensioning parameters	125
7.5.3	Input	125
7.6	HF	128
7.6.1	Execution	129
7.6.2	Input	129
7.7	LAPWSO	130
7.7.1	Execution	131
7.7.2	Dimensioning parameters	131
7.7.3	Input	131
7.8	LAPW2	133
7.8.1	Execution	133
7.8.2	Dimensioning parameters	133
7.8.3	Input	134
7.9	SUMPARA	137
7.9.1	Execution	137
7.9.2	Dimensioning parameters	137
7.10	LAPWDM	138
7.10.1	Execution	138
7.10.2	Dimensioning parameters	138
7.10.3	Input	139
7.11	LCORE	139

7.11.1	Execution	140
7.11.2	Dimensioning parameters	140
7.11.3	Input	140
7.12	MIXER	141
7.12.1	Execution	141
7.12.2	Dimensioning parameters	142
7.12.3	Input	142
8	Analysis, Properties and Optimization	145
8.1	AIM	145
8.1.1	Execution	146
8.1.2	Dimensioning parameters	146
8.1.3	Input	146
8.2	BerryPI	149
8.3	BROADENING	150
8.3.1	Execution	150
8.3.2	Input	150
8.4	DIPAN	151
8.4.1	Execution	152
8.4.2	Dimensioning parameters	152
8.4.3	Input	152
8.5	ELAST	153
8.5.1	Execution	153
8.5.2	Input	154
8.6	FILTVEC	157
8.6.1	Execution	157
8.6.2	Dimensioning parameters	157
8.6.3	Input file case.inf	158
8.7	FSGEN	159
8.8	IRelast	159
8.9	IRREP	161
8.9.1	Execution	161
8.9.2	Dimensioning parameters	161
8.10	JOINT	161
8.10.1	Execution	162
8.10.2	Dimensioning parameters	162
8.10.3	Input	162
8.11	KRAM	164
8.11.1	Execution	165

8.11.2	Dimensioning parameters	165
8.11.3	Input	165
8.12	LAPW3	166
8.12.1	Execution	166
8.12.2	Dimensioning parameters	166
8.13	LAPW5	166
8.13.1	Execution	167
8.13.2	Dimensioning parameters	167
8.13.3	Input	167
8.14	LAPW7	169
8.14.1	Execution	170
8.14.2	Dimensioning parameters	170
8.14.3	Input	171
8.15	MINI	172
8.15.1	Execution	173
8.15.2	Dimensioning parameters	173
8.15.3	Input	173
8.16	NMR	175
8.17	OPTIC	175
8.17.1	Execution	177
8.17.2	Dimensioning parameters	177
8.17.3	Input	178
8.18	OPTIMIZE	179
8.18.1	Execution	179
8.18.2	Input	179
8.19	QTL	180
8.19.1	Execution	180
8.19.2	Input	180
8.19.3	Output	182
8.20	SPAGHETTI	182
8.20.1	Execution	183
8.20.2	Input	183
8.21	TELNES3	185
8.21.1	Execution	186
8.21.2	Input	186
8.21.3	Practical considerations	191
8.21.4	Files	191
8.22	TETRA	192

8.22.1	Execution	193
8.22.2	Dimensioning parameters	193
8.22.3	Input	193
8.23	XSPEC	195
8.23.1	Execution	195
8.23.2	Dimensioning parameters	196
8.23.3	Input	196
9	Utility Programs	199
9.1	symmetso	199
9.1.1	Execution	200
9.2	pairhess	200
9.2.1	Execution	200
9.2.2	Dimensioning parameters	201
9.2.3	Input	201
9.3	eigenhess	202
9.4	patchsymm	202
9.4.1	Execution	202
9.5	afminput	203
9.5.1	Execution	203
9.5.2	Dimensioning parameters	203
9.6	clmcopy	203
9.6.1	Execution	204
9.6.2	Dimensioning parameters	204
9.6.3	Input	204
9.7	reformat	205
9.8	hex2rhomb and rhomb_in5	205
9.9	plane	205
9.10	add_columns	206
9.11	add_columns_new	206
9.12	clminter	206
9.13	eosfit	206
9.14	calla_Pre	207
9.15	eosfit6	207
9.16	spacegroup	207
9.17	join_vectorfiles	207
9.18	arrows	208
9.19	xyz2struct	209
9.20	cif2struct	209

9.21	Tmaker	210
9.22	struct2cif	210
9.23	struct2poscar	210
9.24	conv2prim	210
9.25	fleur2wien	210
9.26	StructGen of w2web	211
9.27	supercell	211
	9.27.1 Execution	211
9.28	structeditor	211
	9.28.1 Execution	213
9.29	Visualization	213
	9.29.1 BALSAC	213
	9.29.2 XCrysDen	214
9.30	Unsupported software	214
10	Examples	215
10.1	TiC	215
10.2	FCC Nickel	215
10.3	Rutile	216
10.4	supercell calc	217
10.5	Further examples	218
III	Installation of the WIEN2k package and Dimensioning of programs	219
11	Installation and Dimensioning	221
11.1	Requirements	221
	11.1.1 Installation tips for mpich, fftw (either version 2.1.5 or 3.3), and ELPA	222
	11.1.2 Installation of LIBXC	223
11.2	Installation of WIEN2k	223
	11.2.1 Expanding the WIEN2k distribution	223
	11.2.2 Site configuration for WIEN2k	225
	11.2.3 User configuration	226
	11.2.4 Performance and special considerations	226
	11.2.5 Global dimensioning parameters	227
11.3	w2web	227
	11.3.1 General issues	227
	11.3.2 How does w2web work?	228
	11.3.3 w2web -files in you home directory	228
	11.3.4 The configuration file conf/w2web.conf	228

11.3.5	The password file <code>conf/w2web.users</code>	228
11.3.6	Using the https-protocol with w2web	228
11.4	Environment Variables	229
12	Trouble shooting	231
12.1	Ghost bands	232
IV	Appendix	237
A	Local rotation matrices	239
A.1	Rutile (TiO_2)	240
A.2	Si Γ -phonon	240
A.3	Trigonal Selenium	241
B	Periodic Table	243

List of Tables

4.1	Input and output files of init programs	35
4.2	Input and output files of utility programs	36
4.3	Input and output files of main programs in an SCF cycle	37
4.4	Lattice type, description and bravais matrix used in WIEN2k . The angle γ' is defined via $\cos(\gamma) = \cos(\gamma') \sin(\alpha) \sin(\beta) + \cos(\beta) \cos(\alpha)$	39
6.6	Relativistic quantum numbers	107
7.3	global XC-switches	116
7.4	EX-switches	116
7.5	EC-switches	117
7.6	VX-switches	118
7.7	VC-switches	119
7.54	LM combinations of "Cubic groups" (3 (111)) direction, requires "positive atomic index" in case.struct. Terms that should be combined [Kara and Kurki-Suonio, 1981] must follow one another.	136
7.55	LM combination and local coordinate system of "non-cubic groups" (requires "negative atomic index" in case.struct)	137
8.93	Possible values of QSPLIT and their interpretation	181
8.116	Quantum numbers of the core state involved in the x-ray spectra	197

List of Figures

2.1	Partitioning of the unit cell into atomic spheres (I) and an interstitial region (II) . . .	8
3.1	TiC in the sodium chloride structure. This plot was generated using BALSAC (see 9.29.1). Interface programs between WIEN2k and BALSAC are available.	14
3.2	Startup screen of w2web	15
3.3	Main window of w2web	16
3.4	StructGen of w2web	17
3.5	List of input files	20
3.6	Task “Electron Density Plots”	22
3.7	Electron density of TiC in (100) plane using Xcrysden	23
3.8	Electron density of TiC in (100) plane	24
3.9	Density of states of TiC	25
3.10	Density of states of TiC	25
3.11	Ti L_{III} spectrum of TiC	26
3.12	Bandstructure of TiC	27
3.13	Bandstructure of TiC, showing t2g-character bands of Ti in character plotting mode .	28
3.14	Energy vs. volume curve for TiC	28
4.1	Data flow during a SCF cycle (programX.def, case.struct, case.inX, case.outputX and optional files are omitted)	34
4.2	Program flow in WIEN2k	44
5.1	Flow chart of lapw1para	84
5.2	Flow chart of lapw2para	85
7.1	Schematic dependence of DOS and $u_l(r, E_l)$ on the energy	127
9.1	3D electron density in TiC generated with XCrysDen	214

Licence conditions of WIEN2k

P. Blaha, K. Schwarz, G. K. H. Madsen, D. Kvasnicka and J. Luitz

Prof. Dr. Karlheinz Schwarz
Vienna University of Technology
Institute of Materials Chemistry
Getreidemarkt 9/165-TC
A-1060 Vienna, Austria
Fax: +43-1-58801-165982

DEFINITIONS:

In the following, the term “the authors”, refers to P. Blaha, K. Schwarz, G. K. H. Madsen, D. Kvasnicka and J. Luitz at the above address. “Program” shall mean that copyrighted APW+LO code (in source and object form) comprising the computer programs known as **WIEN2k** or the graphical user interface **w2web**.

MANDATORY TERMS AND CONDITIONS:

I will adhere to the following conditions upon receipt of the program:

1. All title, ownership and rights to the program or to copies of it remain with the authors, irrespective of the ownership of the media on which the program resides.
2. I will not supply a copy of the code to anyone for any reason whatsoever. This in no way limits my making copies of the code for backup purposes, or for running on more than one computer system at my institution (it is a site license for the registered group). I will refer any request for copies of the program to the authors.
3. I will not incorporate any part of **WIEN2k** or **w2web** into any other program system, without prior written permission of the authors.
4. I will keep intact all copyright notices.
5. I understand that the authors supply **WIEN2k** and **w2web** and its documentation on an “as is” basis without any warranty, and thus with no additional responsibility or liability. I agree to report any difficulties encountered in the use of **WIEN2k** or **w2web** to the authors.
6. In any publication in the scientific literature I will reference the program as follows:

P. Blaha, K. Schwarz, G. K. H. Madsen, D. Kvasnicka and J. Luitz, **WIEN2k**, An Augmented Plane Wave + Local Orbitals Program for Calculating Crystal Properties (Karlheinz Schwarz, Techn. Universität Wien, Austria), 2001. ISBN 3-9501031-1-2

Please enter your publications with WIEN2k on our web-page for “papers”, so that we can easily include them in the list of WIEN-publications. In addition we like to receive a copy (ps-, pdf-file or reprint), especially for less common journals. Please send it to the second author, K. Schwarz.

7. It is understood that modifications of the **WIEN2k** or the **w2web** code can lead to problems where the authors may not be able to help. Please report useful modifications or major extensions to the authors.
8. I understand that support for running the program can not be provided in general, except on the basis of a joint project between the authors and the research partner.

Part I

Introduction to the WIEN2k package

1 Introduction

The Linearized Augmented Plane Wave (LAPW) method has proven to be one of the most accurate methods for the computation of the electronic structure of solids within density functional theory. A full-potential LAPW-code for crystalline solids has been developed over a period of more than twenty years. A first copyrighted version was called **WIEN** and it was published by

P. Blaha, K. Schwarz, P. Sorantin, and S. B. Trickey, in
Comput. Phys. Commun. 59, 399 (1990).

In the following years significantly improved and updated UNIX versions of the original **WIEN**-code were developed, which were called **WIEN93**, **WIEN95** and **WIEN97**. Now a new version, **WIEN2k**, is available, which is based on an alternative basis set. This allows a significant improvement, especially in terms of speed, universality, user-friendliness and new features.

WIEN2k is written in FORTRAN 90 and requires a UNIX operating system since the programs are linked together via C-shell scripts. It has been implemented successfully on the following computer systems: Pentium systems running under Linux, IBM RS6000, HP, SGI, Compac DEC Alpha, and SUN. It is expected to run on any modern UNIX (LINUX) system.

Hardware requirements will change from case to case (small cases with 10 atoms per unit cell can be run on any Pentium PC with 128 Mb under Linux), but generally we recommend a powerful PC or workstation with at least 256 Mb (better 512 Mb or more) memory and 1 Gb (better a few Gb) of disk space. For coarse grain parallelization on the k-point level, a cluster of PCs with a 100 Mb/s network is sufficient. Faster communication is recommended for the fine grain (single k-point) parallel version.

In order to use all options and features (such as the new graphical user interface **w2web** or some of its plotting tools) the following public domain program packages in addition to a F90 compiler must be installed:

- ▶ perl 5 or higher (for **w2web** only)
- ▶ emacs or another editor of your choice
- ▶ ghostscript (with jpeg support)
- ▶ gnuplot (with png support)
- ▶ www-browser
- ▶ pdf-reader (acroread,...)
- ▶ MPI+SCALAPACK (on parallel computers only)

Usually these packages should be available on modern systems. If one of these packages is not available, it can either be installed from public domain sources (see Chapt. 11) or the corresponding configuration may be changed (e.g. using vi instead of emacs). None of the principal components of **WIEN2k** requires these packages, only for advanced features or **w2web** they are needed.

The development of **WIEN2k** was made possible by support from many sources. We try to give credit to all who have contributed. We hope not to have forgotten anyone who made an important

contribution for the development or the improvement of the **WIEN2k** code. If we did, please let us know (we apologize and will correct it). The main developers in addition to the authors are the following groups:

- ▶ C. Ambrosch-Draxl (Univ. Graz, Austria) and her group, optics
- ▶ T. Charpin (Paris), elastic constants
- ▶ H. Hofstaetter and O.Koch (Vienna) iterative diagonalization
- ▶ M. Jamal (Iran) various scripts, 2D-optimize, IRelast, Tmaker
- ▶ K. Jorissen (Univ.Antwerp), C.Hebert (TU Wien), telnes3
- ▶ R. Laskowski (TU Vienna), structeditor, main developer of mpi-parallelization, new dstart version, NMR module
- ▶ E. Kabliman (TU Vienna), arrows
- ▶ F. Karsai (TU Vienna), elast, lapwso
- ▶ D. Koller (TU Vienna), prepare_xsf_lapw
- ▶ L. Marks (Northwestern Univ.): speed-up, various optimizations, geometry optimization (PORT) and new mixer (MSEC1, MSR1, MSR1a)
- ▶ R. Luke (Univ. Delaware): new mixer (MSEC1)
- ▶ P. Novák and J. Kuneš (Prague), LDA+U, SO, lapwdm, qtl, dipan
- ▶ C. Persson (Uppsala), irreducible representations
- ▶ M. Scheffler (Fritz Haber Inst., Berlin) and his group, forces, dstart, geometry optimization
- ▶ E. Sjöstedt and L Nordström (Uppsala, Sweden), APW+lo
- ▶ J. Sofo and J. Fuhr (Barriloché), Bader analysis
- ▶ F. Tran (Vienna), various xc-functionals, Forces for orbital potential, Hybrid-Functionals
- ▶ P. Wissgott (TU Vienna) join_vectorfiles
- ▶ B. Yanchitsky and A. Timoshevskii (Kiev), sgroup

We want to thank those **WIEN97** users, who reported bugs or made suggestions and thus contributed to new versions as well as persons who have made major contributions in the development of previous versions of the code:

- ▶ R. Augustyn (Vienna), U. Birkenheuer (Munich, wavefunction plotting), P. Blöchl (IBM Zürich), F. Boucher (Nantes), A. Chizmeshsya (Arizona), R.Dohmen and J.Pichlmeier (RZG Garching, parallelization) P. Dufek (Vienna), H. Ebert (Munich), E. Engel (Frankfurt), H. Enkisch (Dortmund), M. Fähnle (MPI Stuttgart), B. Harmon (Ames, Iowa), S. Kohlhammer (Stuttgart), T. Kokalj (Ljubljana), H. Krimmel (Stuttgart), P. Louf (Vienna), I. Mazin (Washington), M. Nelhiebel (Vienna), V. Petricek (Prague), C. Rodrigues (La Plata, Argentina), P. Schattschneider (Vienna), R. Schmid (Frankfurt), D. Singh (Washington), H. Smolinski (Dortmund), T. Soldner (Leipzig), P. Sorantin (Vienna), S. Trickey (Gainesville), S. Wilke (Exxon, USA), B. Winkler (Kiel)

This work was supported by the following institutions:

- ▶ Austrian Science Foundation (FWF-Projects P5939, P7063, P8176, SFB08-11)
- ▶ Siemens Nixdorf (WIEN93)
- ▶ IBM (WIEN)

We take this opportunity to thank for all contributions.
For suggestions or bug reports please contact the authors by email:

`pblaha@theochem.tuwien.ac.at`
`kschwarz@theochem.tuwien.ac.at`

2 The basic concepts of the present band theory approach

2.1 The density functional theory

An efficient and accurate scheme for solving the many-electron problem of a crystal (with nuclei at fixed positions) is the local spin density approximation (LSDA) within density functional theory ([Hohenberg and Kohn, 1964], [Kohn and Sham, 1965]). Therein the key quantities are the spin densities $\rho_\sigma(r)$ in terms of which the total energy is

$$E_{tot}(\rho_\uparrow, \rho_\downarrow) = T_s(\rho_\uparrow, \rho_\downarrow) + E_{ee}(\rho_\uparrow, \rho_\downarrow) + E_{Ne}(\rho_\uparrow, \rho_\downarrow) + E_{xc}(\rho_\uparrow, \rho_\downarrow) + E_{NN}$$

with E_{NN} the repulsive Coulomb energy of the fixed nuclei and the electronic contributions, labelled conventionally as, respectively, the kinetic energy (of the non-interacting particles), the electron-electron repulsion, nuclear-electron attraction, and exchange-correlation energies. Two approximations comprise the LSDA, i), the assumption that E_{xc} can be written in terms of a local exchange-correlation energy density μ_{xc} times the total (spin-up plus spin-down) electron density as

$$E_{xc} = \int \mu_{xc}(\rho_\uparrow, \rho_\downarrow) * [\rho_\uparrow + \rho_\downarrow] dr \quad (2.1)$$

and ii), the particular form chosen for that μ_{xc} . Several forms exist in literature, we use the most recent and accurate fit to the Monte-Carlo simulations of Ceperly and Alder by Perdew and Wang [Perdew and Wang, 1992]. E_{tot} has a variational equivalent with the familiar Rayleigh-Ritz principle. The most effective way known to minimize E_{tot} by means of the variational principle is to introduce orbitals χ_{ik}^σ constrained to construct the spin densities as

$$\rho_\sigma(r) = \sum_{i,k} \rho_{ik}^\sigma |\chi_{ik}^\sigma(r)|^2 \quad (2.2)$$

Here, the ρ_{ik}^σ are occupation numbers such that $0 \leq \rho_{ik}^\sigma \leq 1/w_k$, where w_k is the symmetry-required weight of point k . Then variation of E_{tot} gives the Kohn-Sham equations (in Ry atomic units),

$$[-\nabla^2 + V_{Ne} + V_{ee} + V_{xc}^\sigma] \chi_{ik}^\sigma(r) = \epsilon_{ik}^\sigma \chi_{ik}^\sigma(r) \quad (2.3)$$

which must be solved and thus constitute the primary computational task. This Kohn-Sham equations must be solved self-consistently in an iterative process, since finding the Kohn-Sham orbitals requires the knowledge of the potentials which themselves depend on the (spin-) density and thus on the orbitals again.

Recent progress has been made going beyond the LSDA by adding gradient terms of the electron density to the exchange-correlation energy or its corresponding potential. This has led to the generalized gradient approximation (GGA) in various parameterizations, e.g. PW91 [Perdew et al., 1992] or Perdew, Burke and Ernzerhof (PBE) [Perdew et al., 1996], which is the recommended option.

Recent meta-GGA versions called PKZB [Perdew et al., 1999] and TPSS [Tao et al., 2003] employes for the evaluation of the exchange-correlation energy not only the gradient of the density, but also the kinetic energy density $\tau(r)$. Unfortunately, such schemes are not yet self-consistent.

2.2 The Full Potential APW methods

Recently, the development of the Augmented Plane Wave (APW) methods from Slater's APW, to LAPW and the new APW+lo was described by [Schwarz et al., 2002].

2.2.1 The LAPW method

The linearized augmented plane wave (LAPW) method is among the most accurate methods for performing electronic structure calculations for crystals. It is based on the density functional theory for the treatment of exchange and correlation and uses e.g. the local spin density approximation (LSDA). Several forms of LSDA potentials exist in the literature, but recent improvements using the generalized gradient approximation (GGA) are available too (see sec. 2.1). For valence states relativistic effects can be included either in a scalar relativistic treatment [Koelling and Harmon, 1977] or with the second variational method including spin-orbit coupling ([MacDonald et al., 1980], [Novák, 1997]). Core states are treated fully relativistically [Desclaux, 1969].

A description of this method to linearize Slater's old APW method (i.e. the LAPW formalism) and further programming hints are found in many references: [Andersen, 1973, Andersen, 1975], [Koelling, 1972], [Koelling and Arbman, 1975] [Wimmer et al., 1981],[Weinert, 1981], [Weinert et al., 1982], [Blaha and Schwarz, 1983], [Blaha et al., 1985], [Wei et al., 1985], [Mattheis and Hamann, 1986], [Jansen and Freeman, 1984], [Schwarz and Blaha, 1996]). An excellent book by [Singh and Nordström, 2006] describes all the details of the LAPW method and is highly recommended to the interested reader. Here only the basic ideas are summarized; details are left to those references.

Like most "energy-band methods", the LAPW method is a procedure for solving the Kohn-Sham equations for the ground state density, total energy, and (Kohn-Sham) eigenvalues (energy bands) of a many-electron system (here a crystal) by introducing a basis set which is especially adapted to the problem.

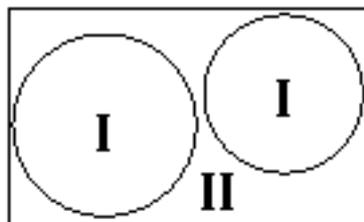


Figure 2.1: Partitioning of the unit cell into atomic spheres (I) and an interstitial region (II)

This adaptation is achieved by dividing the unit cell into (I) non-overlapping atomic spheres (centered at the atomic sites) and (II) an interstitial region. In the two types of regions different basis sets are used:

1. (I) inside atomic sphere t , of radius R_t , a linear combination of radial functions times spherical harmonics $Y_{lm}(r)$ is used (we omit the index t when it is clear from the context)

$$\phi_{\mathbf{k}_n} = \sum_{lm} [A_{lm,\mathbf{k}_n} u_l(r, E_l) + B_{lm,\mathbf{k}_n} \dot{u}_l(r, E_l)] Y_{lm}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) \quad (2.4)$$

where $u_l(r, E_l)$ is the (at the origin) regular solution of the radial Schroedinger equation for energy E_l (chosen normally at the center of the corresponding band with l-like character) and the spherical part of the potential inside sphere t ; $\dot{u}_l(r, E_l)$ is the energy derivative of u_l evaluated at the same energy E_l . A linear combination of these two functions constitute the linearization of the radial function; the coefficients A_{lm} and B_{lm} are functions of k_n (see below) determined by requiring that this basis function matches (in value and slope) each plane wave (PW) the corresponding basis function of the interstitial region; u_l and \dot{u}_l are obtained by numerical integration of the radial Schroedinger equation on a radial mesh inside the sphere.

2. (II) in the interstitial region a plane wave expansion is used

$$\phi_{\mathbf{k}_n} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega}} e^{i\mathbf{k}_n \cdot \mathbf{r}} \quad (2.5)$$

where $\mathbf{k}_n = \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}_n$; \mathbf{K}_n are the reciprocal lattice vectors and \mathbf{k} is the wave vector inside the first Brillouin zone. Each plane wave is augmented by an atomic-like function in every atomic sphere.

The solutions to the Kohn-Sham equations are expanded in this combined basis set of LAPW's according to the linear variation method

$$\psi_{\mathbf{k}} = \sum_n c_n \phi_{\mathbf{k}_n} \quad (2.6)$$

and the coefficients c_n are determined by the Rayleigh-Ritz variational principle. The convergence of this basis set is controlled by a cutoff parameter $R_{mt} K_{max} = 6 - 9$, where R_{mt} is the smallest atomic sphere radius in the unit cell and K_{max} is the magnitude of the largest K vector in equation (2.6).

In order to improve upon the linearization (i.e. to increase the flexibility of the basis) and to make possible a consistent treatment of semicore and valence states in one energy window (to ensure orthogonality) additional (k_n independent) basis functions can be added. They are called "local orbitals (LO)" (Singh 91) and consist of a linear combination of 2 radial functions at 2 different energies (e.g. at the $3s$ and $4s$ energy) and one energy derivative (at one of these energies):

$$\phi_{lm}^{LO} = [A_{lm} u_l(r, E_{1,l}) + B_{lm} \dot{u}_l(r, E_{1,l}) + C_{lm} u_l(r, E_{2,l})] Y_{lm}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) \quad (2.7)$$

The coefficients A_{lm} , B_{lm} and C_{lm} are determined by the requirements that ϕ^{LO} should be normalized and has zero value and slope at the sphere boundary.

2.2.2 The APW+lo method

Sjöstedt, Nordström and Singh [Sjöstedt et al., 2000] have shown that the standard LAPW method with the additional constraint on the PWs of matching in value AND slope to the solution inside the sphere is not the most efficient way to linearize Slater's APW method. It can be made much more efficient when one uses the standard APW basis, but of course with $u_l(r, E_l)$ at a fixed energy

E_l in order to keep the linear eigenvalue problem. One then adds a new local orbital (lo) to have enough variational flexibility in the radial basisfunctions:

$$\phi_{\mathbf{k}_n} = \sum_{lm} [A_{lm,\mathbf{k}_n} u_l(r, E_l)] Y_{lm}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) \quad (2.8)$$

$$\phi_{lm}^{lo} = [A_{lm} u_l(r, E_{1,l}) + B_{lm} \dot{u}_l(r, E_{1,l})] Y_{lm}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) \quad (2.9)$$

This new lo (denoted with lower case to distinguish it from the LO given in equ. 2.7) looks almost like the old “LAPW”-basis set, but here the A_{lm} and B_{lm} do not depend on k_n and are determined by the requirement that the lo is zero at the sphere boundary and normalized.

Thus we construct basis functions that have “kinks” at the sphere boundary, which makes it necessary to include surface terms in the kinetic energy part of the Hamiltonian. Note, however, that the total wavefunction is of course smooth and differentiable.

As shown by [Madsen et al., 2001] this new scheme converges practically to identical results as the LAPW method, but allows to reduce “RKmax” by about one, leading to significantly smaller basis sets (up to 50 %) and thus the corresponding computational time is drastically reduced (up to an order of magnitude). Within one calculation a mixed “LAPW and APW+lo” basis can be used for different atoms and even different l -values for the same atom [Madsen et al., 2001]. In general one describes by APW+lo those orbitals which converge most slowly with the number of PWs (such as TM 3d states) or the atoms with a small sphere size, but the rest with ordinary LAPWs. One can also add a second LO at a different energy so that both, semicore and valence states, can be described simultaneously.

2.2.3 General considerations

In its general form the LAPW (APW+lo) method expands the potential in the following form

$$V(\mathbf{r}) = \begin{cases} \sum_{LM} V_{LM}(r) Y_{LM}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) & \text{inside sphere} \\ \sum_{\mathbf{K}} V_{\mathbf{K}} e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{r}} & \text{outside sphere} \end{cases} \quad (2.10)$$

and the charge densities analogously. Thus no shape approximations are made, a procedure frequently called a “full-potential” method.

The “muffin-tin” approximation used in early band calculations corresponds to retaining only the $l = 0$ component in the first expression of equ. 2.10 and only the $K = 0$ component in the second. This (much older) procedure corresponds to taking the spherical average inside the spheres and the volume average in the interstitial region.

The total energy is computed according to [Weinert et al., 1982].

Rydberg atomic units are used except internally in the atomic-like programs (LSTART and LCORE) or in subroutine outwin (LAPW1, LAPW2), where Hartree units are used. The output is always given in Rydberg units.

The forces at the atoms are calculated according to [Yu et al., 1991]. For the implementation of this formalism in WIEN see [Kohler et al., 1996] and [Madsen et al., 2001]. An alternative formulation by [Soler and Williams, 1989] has also been tested and found to be equivalent, both in computational efficiency and numerical accuracy [Krimmel et al., 1994].

The Fermi energy and the weights of each band state can be calculated using a modified tetrahedron method [Blöchl et al., 1994], a Gaussian or a temperature broadening scheme.

Spin-orbit interactions can be considered via a second variational step using the scalar-relativistic eigenfunctions as basis, see [MacDonald et al., 1980], [Singh and Nordström, 2006] and [Novák, 1997]. In order to overcome the problems due to the missing $p_{1/2}$ radial basis function in the scalar-relativistic basis (which corresponds to $p_{3/2}$), we have recently extended the standard LAPW basis by an additional “ $p_{1/2}$ -local orbital”, i.e. a LO with a $p_{1/2}$ basis function, which is added in the second-variational SO calculation ([Kuneš et al., 2001]).

It is well known that for localized electrons (like the 4f states in lanthanides or 3d states in some TM-oxides) the LDA (GGA) method is not accurate enough for a proper description. Thus we have implemented various forms of the LDA+U method as well as the “Orbital polarization method” (OP) (see [Novák, 2001] and references therein). In addition you can also calculate exact-exchange inside the spheres and apply various hybrid functionals (see [Tran et al., 2006] for details).

One can also consider interactions with an external magnetic (see [Novák, 2001]) or electric field (via a supercell approach, see [Stahn et al., 2001]).

PROPERTIES:

The density of states (DOS) can be calculated using the modified tetrahedron method of [Blöchl et al., 1994].

X-ray absorption and emission spectra are determined using Fermi’s golden rule and dipole matrix elements (between a core and valence or conduction band state respectively), see [Neckel et al., 1975], [Schwarz et al., 1979, Schwarz and Wimmer, 1980]

X-ray structure factors are obtained by Fourier Transformation of the charge density.

Optical properties are obtained using the “Joint density of states” modified with the respective dipole matrix elements according to [Ambrosch-Draxl et al., 1995, Abt et al., 1994, Abt, 1997] and in particular [Ambrosch-Draxl and Sofo, 2006]. A Kramers-Kronig transformation is also possible.

An analysis of the electron density according to Bader’s “atoms in molecules” theory can be made using a program by [Sofo and Fuhr, 2001].

3 Quick Start

Contents

3.1	Naming conventions	13
3.2	Starting the server	14
3.3	Connecting to the w2web server	15
3.4	Creating a new session	15
3.5	Creating a new case	16
3.6	Creating the struct file	16
3.7	Initialization	18
3.8	The SCF calculation	20
3.9	The case.scf file	21
3.10	Saving a calculation	21
3.11	Calculating properties	21
3.12	Setting up a new case	29

We assume that **WIEN2k** is properly installed and configured for your site and that you ran **userconfig_lapw** to adjust your path and environment. (For a detailed description of the installation see chapter 11.

This chapter is intended to guide the novice user in the handling of the program package. We will use the example of TiC in the sodium chloride structure to show which steps are necessary to initialize a calculation and run a self consistent field cycle. We also demonstrate how to calculate various physical properties from these SCF data. Along the way we will give all important information in a very abridged form, so that the novice user is not flooded with information, and the experienced user will be directed to more complete information.

In this chapter we will also show, how the new graphical user interface **w2web** can be utilized to setup and run the calculations.

3.1 Naming conventions

Before we begin with our introductory example, we describe the naming conventions, to which we will adhere throughout this user's guide.

On UNIX systems the files are specified by **case.type** and it is required that all files reside in a subdirectory **./case**. Here and in the following sections and in the shell scripts which run the package themselves, we follow a simple, systematic convention for file labeling.

For the general discussion (when no specific crystal is involved), we use **case**, while for a specific case, e.g. TiC, we use the following notation:

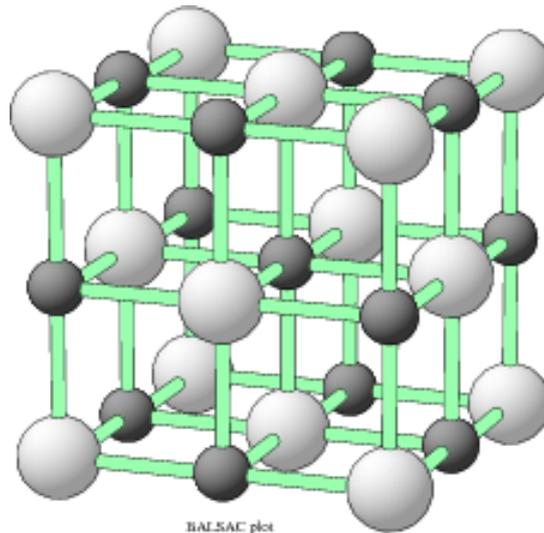


Figure 3.1: TiC in the sodium chloride structure. This plot was generated using BALSAC (see 9.29.1). Interface programs between **WIEN2k** and BALSAC are available.

```
case=TiC
```

The filetype “**type**” always describes the content of the file (e.g.,

```
type=inm is inPUT for mIXER).
```

Thus the input to MIXER for TiC is found in the file

```
TiC.inm
```

which should be in subdirectory `./TiC`.

3.2 Starting the w2web server

Start the user interface **w2web** on the computer where you want to execute **WIEN2k**(you may have to telnet, ssh,.. to this machine) with the command

```
w2web [-p xxxx]
```

If the default port (7890) used to serve the interface is already in use by some other process, you will get the error message `w2web failed to bind port 7890 - port already in use!`. Then you will have to choose a different port number (between 1024 and 65536) . Please remember this port number, you need it when connecting to the **w2web** server.

*Note: Only user **root** can specify port numbers below 1024!*

At the first startup of this server, you will also be asked to setup a username and password, which is required to connect to this server.

3.3 Connecting to the w2web server

Use your favorite WWW-browser to connect to **w2web**, specifying the correct portnumber, e.g.

```
netscape http://hostname_where_w2web_runs:7890
```

(If you do not remember the portnumber, you can find it by using “ps -ef | grep w2web” on the computer where **w2web** is running.) You should see a screen as in Fig.3.2.

3.4 Creating a new session

The user interface **w2web** uses **sessions** to distinguish between different working environments and to quickly change between different calculations. First you have to create a new session (or select an old one). Enter “TiC” and click the “Create” button.

Note: Creating a session does not automatically create a new directory!

You will be placed in your home directory if no working directory was designated to this session previously (or if the directory does not exist any more).

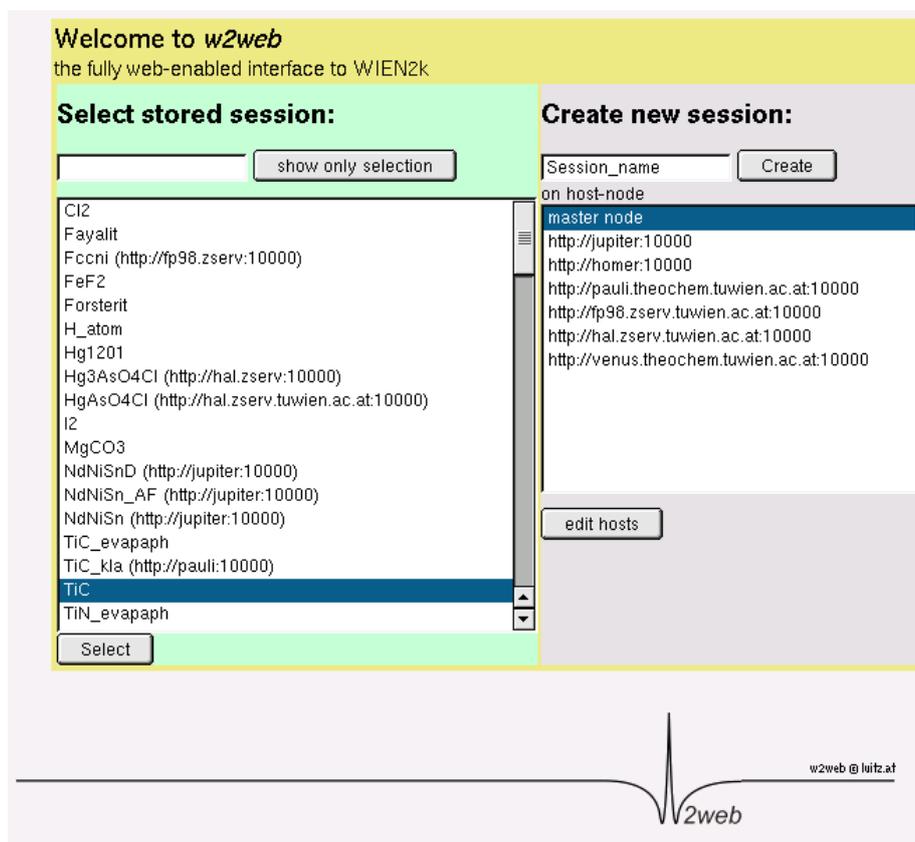


Figure 3.2: Startup screen of **w2web**

3.5 Creating a new case-directory

Using “*Session Mgmt.* [change directory](#)” you can select an existing directory or create a new one. For this example create a new directory **lapw** and than **TiC** using the “*Create*” button. After the directory has been created, you have to click on *select current directory* to assign this newly created directory to the current session.

After clicking on *Click to restart session* the main window of **w2web** will appear (Fig.3.3).

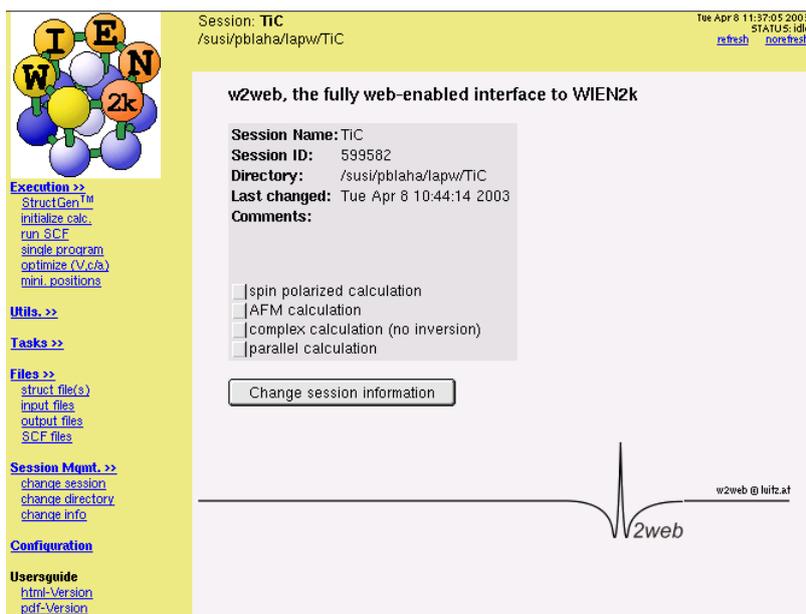


Figure 3.3: Main window of **w2web**

3.6 Creating the “master input” file case.struct

To create the file **TiC.struct** start the struct-file generator using “*Execution* [StructGen](#)” (see figure 3.4).

For a new case **w2web** creates an empty structure template in which you can specify structural data. Later on this information is used to generate the **TiC.struct** file.

As a first step specify the number of atoms (2 for TiC) and fill in the data given below into the corresponding fields (white boxes):

Title	TiC
Lattice	F (for face centered)
a	4.328 Å (make sure the Ang button is selected)
b	4.328 Å
c	4.328 Å
α, β, γ	90
Atom	Ti, enter position (0,0,0)
Atom	C, enter position (.5,.5,.5)

Click “*Save Structure*” (Z will be updated automatically) and “*set automatically RMT and continue editing*”:

This will compute the nearest neighbor distances using the program `nn` and `set.rmt.lapw` will then determine the optimal RMT values (muffin-tin radius, atomic sphere radius). *To learn more about the philosophy of setting RMTs see http://www.wien2k.at/reg_user/faq/rmt.html.* Since it is essential to keep RMTs constant within a series of calculations (eg. when you do a Volume-optimization, see 3.11.6), you should already now decide whether you want to do just one single calculation with fixed structural parameters, or whether you intend a relaxation of internal parameters (using forces and `min.lapw`) or a volume optimization, which would required reduced RMT values.

Choose a reduction of 3 % so that we can later optimize the lattice parameter.

The screenshot shows the StructGen web interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation links: Execution >>, [StructGen™], [view structure], [initialize calc.], [run SCF], [single prog.], [optimize(V,c/a)], [mini. positions], [Utils. >>], [Tasks >>], [Files >>], [struct file(s)], [input files], [output files], [SCF files], [Session Mgmt. >>], [change session], [change dir], [change info], [Configuration], and Usersguide [html-Version], [pdf-Version]. The main panel has a yellow header with 'Session: [TiC]' and a path '/susi/pblaha/lapw/lectures/TiC-UG'. Below the header is a green area with a 'Save Structure' button and the text 'You have to click "Save Structure" for changes to take effect!'. The main content area is white and contains: Title: TiC; Lattice: Type: F; a list of lattice types (P, F, B, CXY, CYZ, CXZ, R, H, 1_P1) with a link to 'Spacegroups from Bilbao Cryst Server'; Lattice parameters in Å (a=4.32800003862, b=4.32800003862, c=4.32800003862, α=90.000000, β=90.000000, γ=90.000000); Inequivalent Atoms: 2; Atom 1: Ti, Z=22.0, RMT=2.1700, [remove atom], Pos 1: x=0.00000000, y=0.00000000, z=0.00000000, [remove], [split], [add position]; Atom 2: C, Z=6.0, RMT=1.7700, [remove atom], Pos 1: x=0.50000000, y=0.50000000, z=0.50000000, [remove], [split], [add position]; [add an atom]; Number of symmetry operations: generate; and a final 'Save Structure' button with the text 'You have to click "Save Structure" for changes to take effect!'.

Figure 3.4: StructGen of w2web

When you are done, exit the **StructGen** with "save file and clean up". This will generate the file **TiC.struct** (shown now in view-only mode with a different background color), which is the master input file for all subsequent programs.

A few other hints on **StructGen**:

You have to click on **Save Structure** after every modifications you make in the white fields.

Add/remove a position/atom only if you have made no other changes before.

In a face-centered (body-centered) spacegroup you have to enter just one atom (not the ones in (.5,.5,0),...).

StructGen offers a built in calculator: Each position of equivalent atoms can be entered as a number, a fraction (e.g. $1/3$) or a simple expression (e.g. $0.21 + 1/3$). The first position defines the variables x , y and z , which can be using in expression defining the other positions (e.g. $-y$, x , $-z + 1/2$).

When you now choose “Files show all files”, you will see, that **tic.struct** has been created.

For a detailed description of these files consult sections 4.3 and 6.4.3.

3.7 Initialization of the calculation (init_lapw)

After the basic input file has been created, initialization of the calculation is done by “Execution initialize calc.”. For structures given by experiment (not man-made supercells,...) you would usually run in “Fast mode, just specify a few most important input parameters (or use the defaults). However, this introduction will guide you through all individual steps necessary to initialize the calculation. Simply follow the steps that are highlighted in green and follow the instructions.

The initialization process is described in detail in section 5.1.3.

Alternatively you could run the script **init_lapw [-b]** from the command line. All actions of this script are logged in short in **:log** and in detail in the file **case.dayfile**, which can easily be accessed by *Utils*. show dayfile.

Initializing the calculation will run several steps automatically, where **x** is the script to start **WIEN2k** programs (see section: 5.1.1).

x nn calculates the nearest neighbors up to a specified distance and thus helps to determine the atomic sphere radii (you must specify a distance factor f , e.g. 2, and all distances up to $f * NN$ -dist. are calculated)

view TiC.outputnn : check for overlapping spheres, coordination numbers and nearest neighbor distances, (e.g. in the sodium chloride structure there must 6 nearest and 12 next nearest neighbors). Using these distances and coordinations you can check whether you put the proper positions into your struct file or if you made a mistake. **nn** also checks whether your equivalent atoms are really crystallographically equivalent and eventually writes a new struct-file which you may or may not accept. If you have not done so at the very beginning, go back to **StructGen** and choose proper RMT values. *You can save a lot of CPU-time by changing RMT to almost touching spheres. See Sec.4.3*

x sgroup calculates the point and spacegroups for the given structure

view TiC.outputsgroup : Now you can either accept the **TiC.struct** file generated by **sgroup** (if you want to use the spacegroup information or a different cell has been found by **sgroup**) or keep your original file (default).

x symmetry generates from a raw **case.struct** file the space group symmetry operations, determines the point group of the individual atomic sites, generates the LM expansion for the lattice harmonics (in **case.in2_st**) and local rotation matrices (in **case.struct_st**).

view TiC.outputs : check the symmetry operations (they have been written to or compared with already available ones in **TiC.struct** by the program symmetry) and the point group symmetry of the atoms (You may compare them with the “International Tables for X-Ray Crystallography”). If the output does not match your expectations from the “Tables”, you might have made an error in specifying the positions. The **TiC.struct** file will be updated with symmetry operations, positive or negative atomic counter (for “cubic” point group symmetries) and the local rotation matrix.

- instgen_lapw** : You are requested to generate an input file **TiC.inst** and can define the spin-polarization of each atom. While this is not important for TiC, it is very important for spin-polarized calculations and in particular for anti-ferromagnetic cases, where you should “flip” the spin of the AFM atoms and/or set the spin of the “non-magnetic” atoms (eg. oxygen in NiO) to zero.
- x lstart** generates atomic densities (see section 6.4) and determines how the orbitals are treated in the band structure calculations (i.e. as core or band states, with or without local orbitals, ...). You are requested to specify the desired exchange correlation potential and an energy that separates valence from core states. For TiC select the recommended potential option “GGA of Perdew-Burke-Ernzerhof 96” and a separation energy of -6.0 Ry.
- edit TiC.outputst** : check the output (did you specify a proper atomic configuration, did lstart converge, are the core electrons confined to the atomic sphere?). Warnings for the radial mesh can usually be neglected since it affects only the atomic total energy. **lstart** generates **TiC.in0_st**, **in1_st**, **in2_st**, **inc_st** and **inm_st**. For Ti it selects automatically 1s, 2s, and 2p as core states, 3s and 3p will be treated with local orbitals together with 3d, 4s and 4p valence states.
- edit TiC.in1_st** : As mentioned, the input files are generated automatically with some default values which should be a reasonable choice for most cases. Nevertheless we highly recommend that you go through these inputs and become familiar with them. The most important parameter here is RKMAX, which determines the number of basis functions (size of the matrices). Values between 5-9 (3 if you have small H-spheres) are usually reasonable. Eventually you could change here the usage of APW or LAPW (set 1 or 0 after the CONT/STOP switch), since often APW is necessary only for orbitals more difficult to converge (3d, 4f). *Here we will just change EMAX of the energy window from 1.5 to 2.0 Ry in order to be able to calculate the unoccupied DOS to higher energies.*
- edit TiC.in2_st** : Here you may limit(increase the LM expansion, increase the value of GMAX (in cases with small spheres (e.g. systems with H-atoms) it will be automatically increased anyway) or specify a different BZ-integration method to determine the Fermi energy. For this example you should not change anything so that you can compare your results with the test run.
- Copy all generated inputs** (from **case.in*_st** to **case.in***). In cases without inversion symmetry the files **case.in1c**, **in2c** are produced.
- x kgen** generates a k-mesh in the Brillouin zone (BZ). You must specify the number of k-points in the whole BZ (use 1000 for comparison with the provided output, a “good” calculation needs 10 times as much). For details see section 6.5.
- view TiC.klist** : check the number of k-points in the irreducible wedge of the BZ (IBZ) and the energy interval specified for the first k-point. You can now either rerun **kgen** (and generate a different k-mesh) or continue.
- x dstart** generates a starting density for the SCF cycle by superposition of atomic densities generated in **lstart**. For details see section 6.6.
- view TiC.outputd** (check if gmax > gmin)
- Now you are asked** , whether or not you want to run a spin-polarized calculation (in such a case case **dstart** is re-run to generate spin-densities). For TiC say **No**.

Alternatively, **w2web** provides a “Fast-mode”, which is the recommended default and where the most important inputs can be specified right at the beginning and then the whole initialization runs at once. **Please check carefully the STDOUT-listing and some output-files for possible errors or warnings!!**. Only for hand-made **case.struct** files (eg. using supercells, ...) one should run the first steps (from **nn** to **symmetry** step by step, since in such cases these programs may rewrite **case.struct** and specify different multiplicities or even change the unit cell.

Initialization of a calculation (running **init_lapw**) will create all inputs for the subsequent SCF calculation choosing some default options and values. You can find a list of input files using “Files  input files” (3.5).

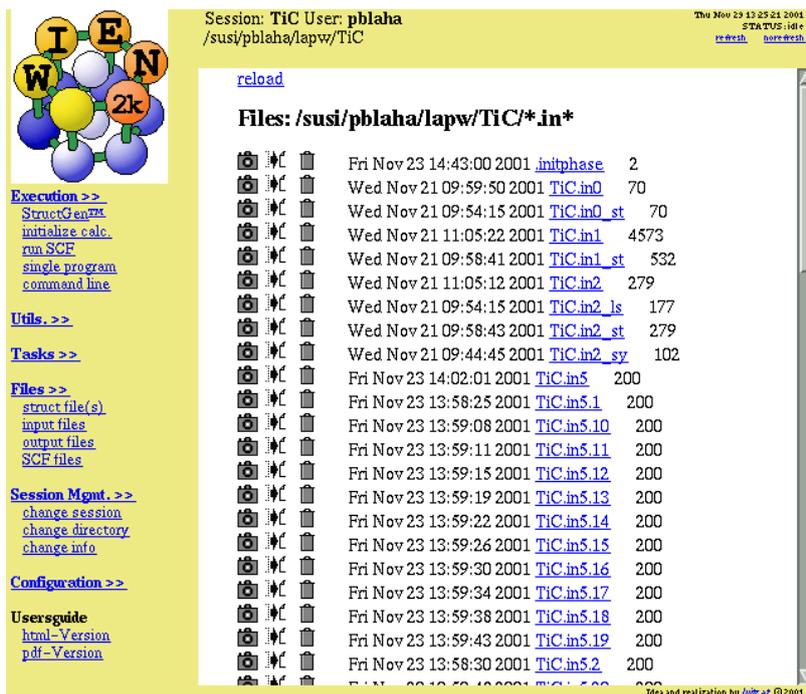


Figure 3.5: List of input files

3.8 The SCF calculation

After the case has been set up, a link to “run SCF” is added, (“Run Programs run SCF” and you should invoke the self-consistency cycle (SCF). This runs the script `run_lapw` with the desired options.

The SCF cycle consists of the following steps:

- LAPW0** (POTENTIAL) generates potential from density
- LAPW1** (BANDS) calculates valence bands (eigenvalues and eigenvectors)
- LAPW2** (RHO) computes valence densities from eigenvectors
- LCORE** computes core states and densities
- MIXER** mixes input and output densities

After selecting “run SCF” from the “Execution” menu, the SCF-window will open, and you can now specify additional parameters. For this example we select charge convergence to 0.0001: Specify “charge” to be used as convergence criterion, and select a value of 0.0001 (-cc 0.0001).

To run the SCF cycle, click on “Run!”

Since this might take a long time for larger systems; you can specify the “Execution type” to be *batch* or *submit* (if your system is configured with a queuing system and **w2web** has been properly set up, see section 11.3).

While the calculation is running (as indicated by the status frame in the top right corner of the window), you can monitor several quantities (see section 3.9).

Once the calculation is finished (11 iterations), view `case.dayfile` for timing and errors and compare your results with the files in the provided example (**TiC/case.scf**).

For magnetic systems you would run a spin-polarized calculation with the script `runsp_lapw`. The program flow of such a calculation is described in section 4.5.2 and the script itself in section 5.1.4.

3.9 The “history” file case.scf

During the SCF cycle the essential data of each iteration are appended to the file `case.scf`, in our example `TiC.scf`. For an easier retrieval of certain quantities, the essential lines carry a label of the form `:LABEL:` which can be used to monitor these quantities during a SCF run.

The information is retrieved using the UNIX `grep` command or using the “Utils. `analyze`” menu.

While the SCF cycle of TiC is running try to monitor e.g. the total energy (label `:ENE`) or the charge distance (label `:DIS`). The calculation has converged, when the convergence criterion is met for three subsequent iterations (compare the charge distance in the example).

For a detailed description of the various labels consult section 4.4.

3.10 Saving a calculation

Before you proceed to another calculation, you should save the results of the SCF-cycle with the `save_lapw` command, which is also described in detail in section 5.2.1. This can also be done from the graphical user interface by choosing the “Utils. `save_lapw`” menu.

Save the result to this example under the name “`TiC.scf`”.

You can now improve your calculation and check the convergence of the most important parameters:

- ▶ increase RKMAX and GMAX in `case.in1` and `case.in2`
- ▶ increase the k-mesh with `x kgen`
- ▶ choose a different exchange-correlation potential in `case.in0`

Then just execute another `run_lapw` using “Execution `run SCF`”.

3.11 Calculating properties

Once the SCF cycle has converged one can calculate various properties like Density of States (DOS), band structure, Optical properties or X-ray spectra.

For the calculation of properties (which from now on will be called “Tasks”). We strongly encourage the user to utilize the user interface, `w2web`. This user interface automatically supplies input file templates and shows how to calculate the named properties on a step by step basis.

3.11.1 Electron density plots

Select “El. Dens.” from the “Tasks” menu and click on the buttons one by one (see figure 3.6):

- ▶ The total charge density includes the Ti 3s and 3p states and the resulting density around Ti would be very large and dominated by these semicore states. To get a “meaningful” picture of the chemical bonding effects one must remove these states. Inspection of `TiC.scf1` and `TiC.scf2` should allow you to select an EMIN value to eliminate the Ti 3s and 3p semicore states.

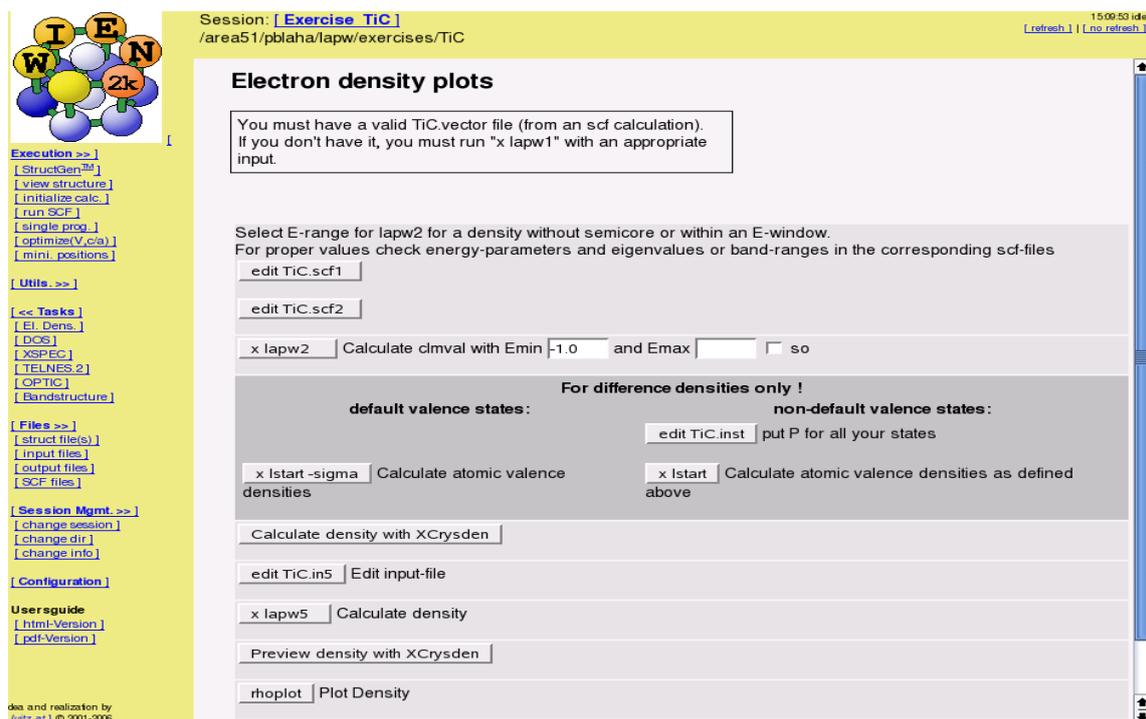


Figure 3.6: Task “Electron Density Plots”

- ▶ Recalculate the valence density with $E_{MIN}=-1.0$ to truncate Ti 3s and 3p (**x lapw2**). This is only possible, when you still have a valid **TiC.vector** file on a tetrahedral mesh.
- ▶ Select a plane and plot the density in the (100) plane of TiC. When XCRYSDEN is installed (for details see <http://www.xcrysden.org/doc/wien.html>), it will be offered automatically and provides a convenient way to specify a plane and create a colorful plot 3.7.
 - Select 2D-plot
 - Specify a resolution of 100 points (first line)
 - Select a plane by selecting 3 atoms and define these 3 atoms by clicking on them.
 - Choose rectangular parallelogram and enlarge the rectangular selection by 0.5 (for all 4 margins, then update the display)
 - calculate the density and produce a nice contour plot:
 - choose “rainbow”-colors, activate all display-option buttons, and choose in “Ranges” a smaller “highest rendered value”.
 - Finally, use smaller spheres (pipe+ball display model) and thinner bonds (Modify/Ball-Stick-ratio).
- ▶ Alternatively, without XCRYSDEN, edit **TiC.in5** and choose the offered template input file. To select the (100) plane for plotting specify the following input:


```

-1 -1 0 4      # origin of plot (x,y,z,denominator)
-1  3 0 4      # x-end of plot
 3 -1 0 4      # y-end of plot
 3 2 3         # x,y,z number of shells
100 100        # x, y plotting mesh, choose ratio similar to x,y length
RHO
ANG VAL NODEBUG
      
```

ORTHO

For a detailed description of input options consult section 8.13.3

- ▶ Calculate electron density (x lapw5)
- ▶ Plot output (using rhoplot), after the first preview select a range $z_{\min}=-0.5$ to $z_{\max}=2$

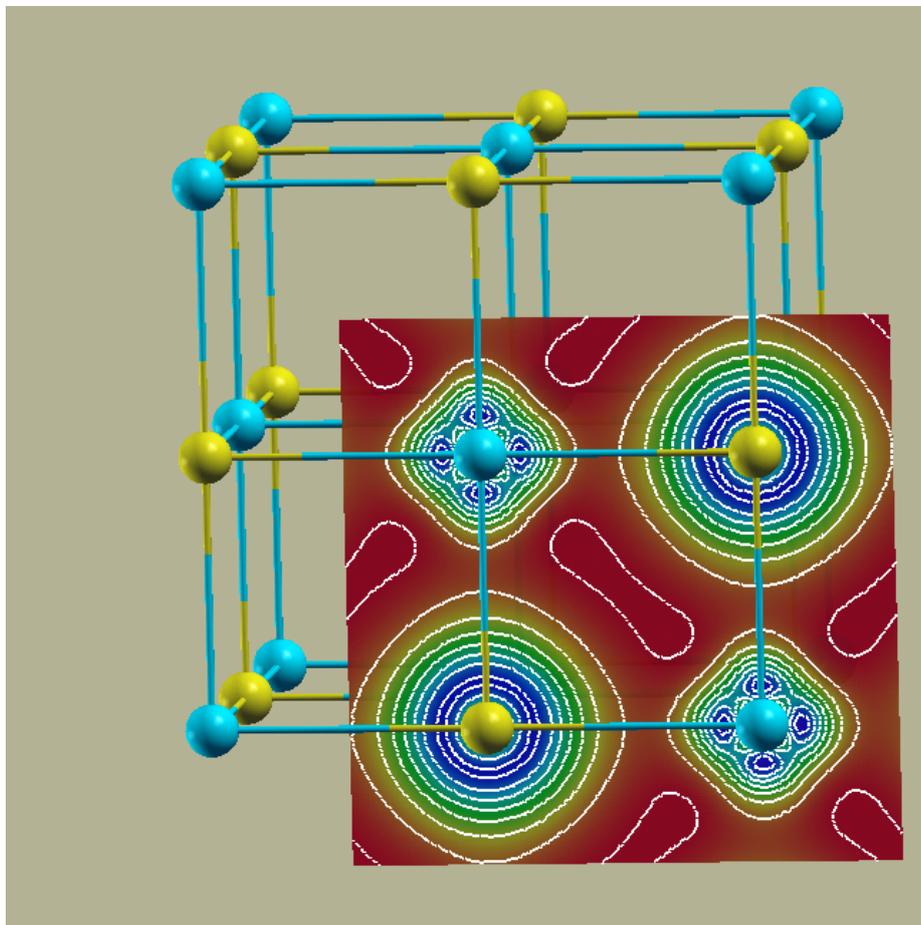


Figure 3.7: Electron density of TiC in (100) plane using Xcrysden

Compare the result with the electron density plotted in the (100) plane (see figure 3.8). The program **gnuplot** (public domain) must be installed on your computer. For more advanced graphics use your favorite plotting package or specify other options in **gnuplot** (see **rhoplot.lapw** how **gnuplot** is called).

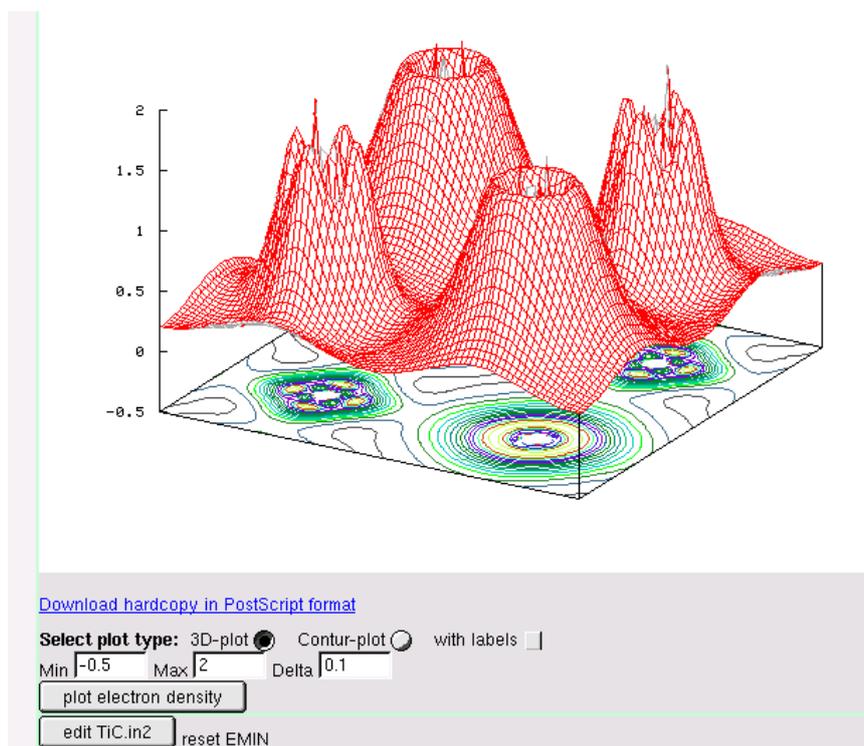


Figure 3.8: Electron density of TiC in (100) plane

3.11.2 Density of States (DOS)

Select “Density of States (DOS)” from the “Tasks” menu and click on the buttons one by one:

- ▶ Calculate partial charges (**x lapw2 -qt1**). (This is only possible, when you still have a valid **TiC.vector** file on a tetrahedral mesh.)
- ▶ Create **TiC.int**, either using “configure TiC.int” or/and by “editing” the offered template input file. Select: total DOS, Ti-d, Ti- d_{eg} , Ti- d_{t2g} , C-s and C-p-like DOS.

```
TiC
-0.50      0.00200   1.500 0.003   EMIN, DE, EMAX, Gauss-broadening
6                                     NUMBER OF DOS-CASES
0  1  tot                                     (atom,case,description)
1  4  Ti d
1  5  Ti eg
1  6  Ti t2g
2  2  C s
2  3  C p
```

For a detailed description of input options consult section 8.22.3

- ▶ Calculate DOS (**x tetra**).
- ▶ Preview output using “dosplot”

If you want to use the supplied plotting interface **dosplot2** to preview the results, the program **gnuplot** (public domain) must be installed on your computer.

The calculated DOS can be compared with figures 3.9 and 3.10. Together with the electron density the partial DOS allows you to analyse the chemical bonding (covalency between $Ti-d_{eg}$ and $C-p$, non-bonding $Ti-d_{t2g}$, charge transfer estimates,...)

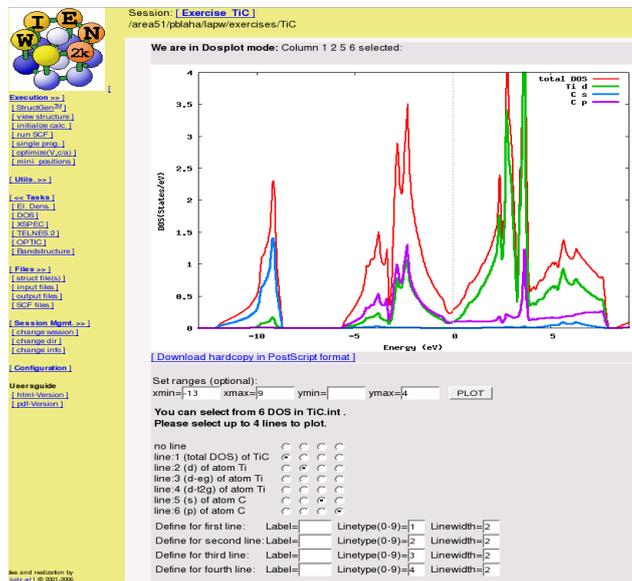


Figure 3.9: Density of states of TiC

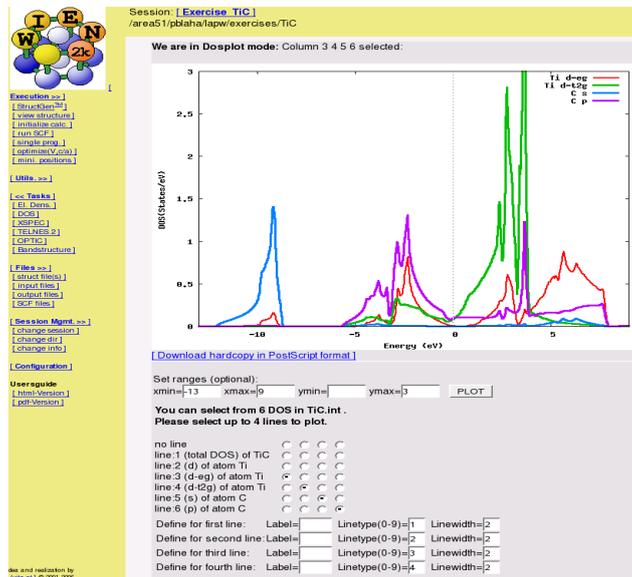


Figure 3.10: Density of states of TiC

3.11.3 X-ray spectra

Select “X-Ray Spectra” from the “Tasks menu” and click on the buttons one by one:

- ▶ Calculate partial charges (**x lapw2 -qt1**). This is only possible, when you still have a valid **TiC.vector** file on a tetrahedral mesh. *To reproduce this figure you will have to increase the EMAX value in your **TiC.in1** to 2.5 Ry and rerun **x lapw1***
- ▶ Edit **TiC.inxs**; choose the offered template. This template will calculate the L_{III} -spectrum of the first atom (Ti in this example) in the energy range between -2 and 15 eV. For a detailed description of the contents of this input file refer to section 8.23.3.
- ▶ Calculate spectra
- ▶ Preview spectra

If you want to use the supplied plotting interface **specplot** to preview the results, the public domain program **gnuplot** must be installed on your computer. The calculated TiC Ti- L_{III} -spectrum can be compared with figure 3.11.

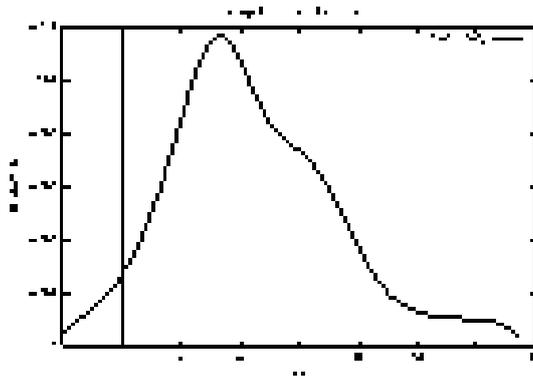


Figure 3.11: Ti L_{III} spectrum of TiC

3.11.4 Bandstructure

Select “Bandstructure” from the “Tasks” menu and click on the buttons one by one:

- ▶ Create the file **TiC.klist.band** from the template in **\$WIENROOT/SRC.templates/fcc.klist**. (To calculate a bandstructure a special k-mesh along high symmetry directions is necessary. For a few crystal structures template files are supplied in the **SRC**-directory, you can also use XCRYSDEN (save it as **xcrysden.klist**) to generate a k-mesh or type in your own mesh.
- ▶ Calculate Eigenvalues using the “-band” switch (which changes **lapw1.def** such that the k-mesh is read from **TiC.klist.band** and not from **TiC.klist**)
*Note: When you want to calculate DOS, charge densities or spectra after this bandstructure, you must first recalculate the **TiC.vector** file using the “tetrahedral” k-mesh, because the k-mesh for the band structure plots is **not** suitable for calculations of such properties.*

- ▶ Edit **TiC.insp**: insert the correct Fermi energy (which can be found in the saved **scf**-file) and specify plotting parameters. For comparison with figure 3.12 select an energy-range from -13 to 8 eV.
- ▶ Calculate Bandstructure (**x spaghetti**).
- ▶ Preview Bandstructure (needs **ghostscript** installed).

If you want to preview the bandstructure, the program **ghostview** (public domain) must be installed on your computer. You can compare your calculated bandstructure with figure 3.12.

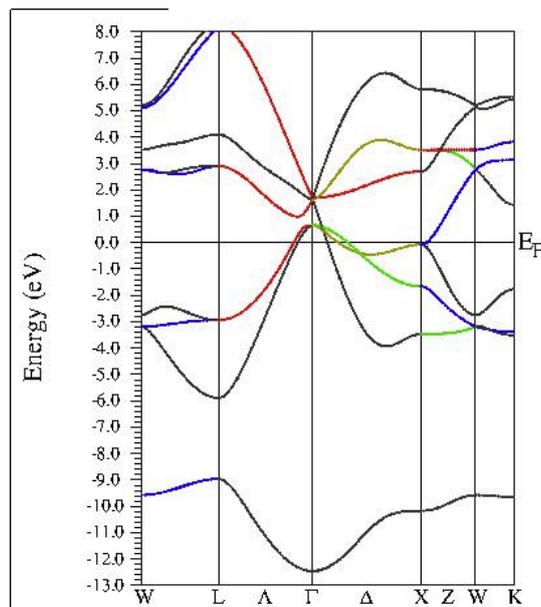


Figure 3.12: Bandstructure of TiC

3.11.5 Bandstructure with band character plotting / full lines

Select again "Bandstructure" from the "Tasks" menu. We assume that you have already done the steps described in the previous section (generate **TiC.klist_band** and **x lapw1 -band**).

- ▶ Calculate partial charges (**x lapw2 -qt1 -band**)
Note: You have to calculate the partial charges for the new special k-mesh specified above and cannot use the partial charges from the DOS calculation.
- ▶ Edit **TiC.insp**: insert the correct Fermi energy (same as before) and specify plotting parameters. For "band character plotting" (see figure 3.13) select "line type = dots" and **jatom=1**, **jtype=6** and **jsize=0.2** (in the last input line) to produce a character plot of the Ti t_{2g}-like character bands.
- ▶ Calculate Bandstructure (**x spaghetti**)
- ▶ Preview Bandstructure
- ▶ To plot the bandstructure with full lines, calculate the irreducible representations with "x irrep" and select "lines" in **case.insp**.

*If you have **case.irrep*** or **case.qt1*** files from previous runs which do not fit to the present **case.output1** file, you may get errors while running **spaghetti**. In this case remove all **case.irrep** or **case.qt1** files.*

You can compare your results with figure 3.13.

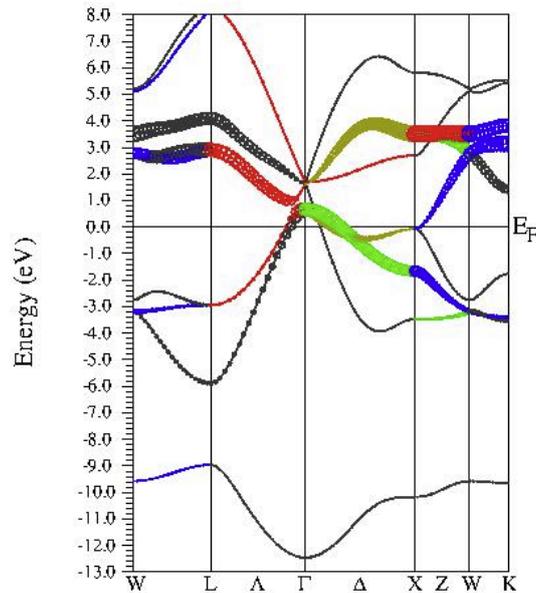


Figure 3.13: Bandstructure of TiC, showing t_{2g}-character bands of Ti in character plotting mode

3.11.6 Volume Optimization

Select “*Optimize (V,c/a)*” from the “*Execution*” menu. Setup the shell script **optimize.job** script using **x optimize** and volume variations of -10, -5, 0, +5 and +10%. Then run the **optimize.job**. When the job has finished, you should click on *Plot* and then preview the energy curve.

You should get an energy curve as in figure 3.14. On the screen you will find the fitting parameters for the “equation of states” (Murnaghan, Birch-Murnaghan and the EOS2 equation, see sec. 9.13). This information is also written to **TiC.outputeos**.

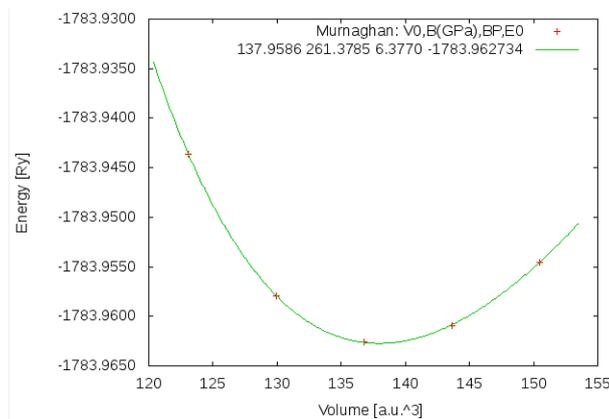


Figure 3.14: Energy vs. volume curve for TiC

3.12 Setting up a new case

In order to setup a new case you need at least the following information:

- ▶ The lattice parameters (in Bohr or Ångstroms) and angles,
- ▶ the lattice type (primitive, face-centered, hexagonal,...) or spacegroup,
- ▶ the position of all equivalent and inequivalent atoms in fractions of the unit cell.
- ▶ Alternatively with the new **StructGen** you can specify the spacegroup and only the inequivalent positions. The equivalent ones will be generated automatically.

Usually this information can be collected from the “International Tables of Crystallography” once you know the space group, the Wyckoff position and the internal free coordinates.

3.12.1 Manually setting up a new case

Usually for a new “case” the input is not created by hand, but using some utilities. We recommend the script **makestruct.lapw** which will ask for the required input and create **init.struct**, which you should copy to **case.struct**. Alternatively, you can use **cif2struct** or **xyz2struct** to convert a “**cif**”, “**txt**” or “**xyz**” file into the WIEN2k **case.struct** file. Check page 209 for more info on the specific file formats.

You can also use the **struct** file from a similar case as pattern, but note, that the automatic setting of proper R0-values is not guaranteed by that procedure and you should use it only for VERY SIMILAR cases (elements). Change into the **lapw** subdirectory and proceed as follows:

```
mkdir case_new
cd case_new
cp ../case_old/case_old.struct case_new.struct
```

Now edit **case_new.struct** (see section 4.3) as necessary (Note: this is a fixed formatted file, so all values must remain at their proper columns). Afterwards generate **case_new.inst** using **instgen.lapw**.

3.12.2 Setting up a new case using w2web

Use the menu *Session Mgmt.* *change session* of **w2web** to create a new session (enter the name of the new session and click on “Create”). Then you should also create a new directory and “select” it..

When you select “Execution **StructGen**”, you have several choices:

You can just specify the number of non-equivalent atoms and a template file will be created. In **StructGen** you simply specify the lattice (type or spacegroup), cell parameters and name and positions of atoms. When you “save file and clean up” the new **case.struct** file and the **case.inst** file are created automatically.

Alternatively, you can use **cif2struct** or **xyz2struct** to convert a “**cif**”, “**txt**” or “**xyz**” file into the WIEN2k **case.struct** file. Check page 209 for more info on the specific file formats.

For more information on the **StructGen** refer to page 211.

Part II

Detailed description of the files and programs of the WIEN2k package

4 File structure and program flow

Contents

4.1	Flow of input and output files	33
4.2	Input/Output files	37
4.3	The case.struct.file	38
4.4	The case.scf file	42
4.5	Flow of programs	43

(for naming conventions see section 3.1)

4.1 Flow of input and output files

Each program is started with (at least) one command line argument, e.g.

```
programX programX.def
```

in which the arguments specifies a filename, in which FORTRAN I/O units are connected to unix filenames. (See examples at specific programs). These “def“-files are generated automatically when the standard **WIEN2k** scripts **x**, **init_lapw** or **run_lapw** are used, but may be tailored by hand for special applications. Using the option

```
x program -d
```

a def-file can be created without running the program. In addition each program reads/writes the following files:

case.struct a “master“ input file, which is described below (Section 4.3)

case.inX a specific input file, where X labels the program (see def-files for each program in chapter 6).

case.outputX an output file

The programs of the SCF cycle (see figure 4.1) write the following files:

case.scfX a file containing only the most significant output (see description below).

program.error error report file, should be empty after successful completion of a program (see chapter 6)

The following tables describe input and output files for the initialization programs **nn**, **sgroup**, **symmetry**, **lstart**, **kgen**, **dstart** (table 4.1), the utility programs **tetra**, **irrep**, **spaghetti**, **aim**, **lapw7**, **elnes**, **lapw3**, **lapw5**, **xspec**, **optic**, **joint**, **kram**, **optimize** and **mini** (table 4.2) as well as for a SCF cycle of a non-spin-polarized case (table 4.2). Optional input and output files are used only if present in the respective case subdirectory or requested/generated by an input switch. The connection between FORTRAN units and filenames are defined in the respective **programX.def** files. The data flow is illustrated in Fig. 4.1.

program	needs		generates	
	necessary	optional	necessary	optional
NN	nn.def case.struct		case.outputnn	case.struct_nn
SGROUP	case.struct		case.outputsgroup	case.struct_sgroup
SYMMETRY	symmetry.def case.struct	case.in2.st	case.outputs case.in2_st	case.struct.st
LSTART	lstart.def case.struct case.inst		case.outputst case.rsp case.in0_st case.in1_st case.in2_st case.inc_st case.inm_st case.inm_restart	case.rspup case.rspdn case.vsp_st case.vspdn_st case.sigma
KGEN	kgen.def case.struct		case.outputkgen case.klist case.kgen	
DSTART	dstart.def case.struct case.rsp(up) case.in0 case.in1 case.in2		case.outputd case.clmsum(up) dstart.error case.in0_std	

Table 4.1: Input and output files of init programs

program	needs		generates	
	necessary	optional	necessary	optional
SPAGHETTI	spaghetti.def case.insp case.struct case.output1	case.qtl case.outputso case.irrep	case.spaghetti_ps case.outputsp case.band.agr	case.spaghetti_ene
TETRA	tetra.def case.int case.kgen	case.qtl case.energy case.scf2	case.outputt case.dos1(2,3) case.dos1ev(1,2,3)	
LAPW3	lapw3.def case.struct case.in2 case.clmsum		case.output3 case.rho case.clmsum	
LAPW5	lapw5.def case.struct case.in5 case.clmval	case.sigma	case.output5 case.rho	case.rho.oned
XSPEC	xspec.def case.inc case.int case.vsp case.struct case.qtl		case.outputx case.dos1ev case.xspec case.txspec case.m1 case.m2	case.coredens
OPTIC	optic.def case.struct case.mat_diag case.inop case.vsp case.vector		case.outputop case.symmat	case.symmat1 case.symmat2
JOINT	joint.def case.injoint		case.outputjoint case.joint	case.sigma_intra case.intra

continued on next page

	case.struct case.kgen case.weight case.symmat case.mat_diag			
KRAM	kram.def case.inkram case.joint		case.epsilon case.sigmak	case.eloss case.sumrules
OPTIMIZE	case.struct	case.initial.struct	optimize.job	case.vol_xxxx.struct case_c/a_xxxx.struct
MINI	mini.def case.inM case.finM case.scf case.struct	case.scf_mini case.tmpM case.constraint case.clmhist .min_hess	case.outputM case.tmpM1 case.struct1 case.scf_mini1 .minrestart	case.clmsum_inter
IRREP	case.struct case.vector		case.outputirrep case.irrep	
AIM	case.struct case.clmsum case.inaim		case.outputaim case.surf	case.crit
LAPW7	case.struct case.vector case.in7 case.vsp		case.output7 case.grid case.psink	case.abc
QTL	case.struct case.vector case.inq case.vsp		case.outputq case.qtl	

Table 4.2: Input and output files of utility programs

program	needs		generates	
	necessary	optional	necessary	optional
LAPW0	lapw0.def case.struct case.in0 case.clmsum	case.clmup/dn case.vrespsum/up/dn case.inm	case.output0 case.scf0 case.vsp(up/dn) case.vns(up/dn)	case.r2v case.vcoul case.vtotal
ORB	orb.def case.struct case.inorb case.dmat case.vsp	case.energy case.vorb_old	case.outputorb case.scforb case.vorb orb.error	case.br1orb case.br2orb
LAPW1	lapw1.def case.struct case.in1 case.vsp case.klist	case.vns case.vorb case.vector.old	case.output1 case.scf1 case.vector case.energy	case.nsh(s) case.nmat_only
LAPW50	lapwso.def case.struct case.inso case.in1 case.vector case.vsp case.vns case.energy	case.vorb case.normso	case.vectorso case.outputso case.scfso case.energyso	
LAPW2	lapw2.def case.struct case.in2 case.vector case.vsp case.energy	case.kgen case.nsh case.weight case.recprlist	case.output2 case.scf2 case.clmval	case.qtl case.weight case.help03* case.vrespval case.almbml case.radwf case.dmat
LAPWDM	lapwdm.def case.struct case.indm case.vector case.vsp case.weight case.energy	case.inso	case.outputdm case.scfdm case.dmat lapwdm.error	

continued on next page

SUMPARA	case.struct case.clmval	case.scf2p	case.outputsum case.clmval case.scf2	
LCORE	lcore.def case.struct case.inc case.vsp	case.vns	case.outputc case.scfc case.clmcor lcore.error	case.corewf
After LCORE the case.scfX files are appended to case.scf and the case.clmsum file is renamed to case.clmsum_old (see run_lapw)				
MIXER	mixer.def case.struct case.inm case.clmval case.inc	case.clmsum_old case.clmsc case.clmcor case.scf case.broyd1 case.broyd2 case.dmat	case.outputm case.scfm case.clmsum mixer.error	case.broyd*
After MIXER the file case.scfm is appended to case.scf , so that after an iteration is completed, the two essential files are case.clmsum and case.scf .				

Table 4.3: Input and output files of main programs in an SCF cycle

4.2 Description of general input/output files

In the following section the content of the (non-trivial) output files is described:

case.almb1m Contains the A_{lm}, B_{lm}, C_{lm} coefficients of the wavefunctions (generated optional by **lapw2**).

case.band.agr A xmgrace file with the energy bandstructure plot generated by **spaghetti**.

case.broydX Contains the charge density of previous iterations if you use Broyden's method for mixing. They are removed when using **save_lapw**. They should be removed by hand when calculational parameters (RKMAX, kmesh, ...) have been changed, or the calculation crashed due to a too large mixing and are restarted by using a new density generated by **dstart**.

case.clmcor Contains the core charge density (as $\sigma(r) = 4\pi r^2 \rho(r)$) and has only a spherical part). In spin-polarized calculations two files **case.clmcorup** and **case.clmcordn** are used instead.

case.clmsc Contains the semi-core charge density in a 2-window calculation, which is no longer recommended. In spin-polarized calculations two files are used instead: **case.clmscup** and **case.clmscdn**.

case.clmsum Contains the total charge density in the lattice harmonics representation and as Fourier coefficients. (The LM=0,0 term is given as $\sigma(r) = 4\pi r^2 \rho(r)$, the others as $r^2 \rho_{LM}(r)$; suitable for generating electron density plots using **lapw5** when the TOT-switch is set, (see section 8.13). In spin-polarized calculations two additional files **case.clmup** and **case.clmdn** contain the spin densities. Generated by **dstart** or **mixer**.

case.clmval Contains the valence charge density as $r^2 \rho_{LM}(r)$; suitable for generating valence electron density plots using **lapw5** when the VAL-switch is set, (see 8.13). In spin-polarized calculations two files **case.clmvalup** and **case.clmvaldn** are used instead.

case.dmatup/dn Contains the density matrix generated by **lapw2** or **lapwdm** for LDA+U, OP or onsite-Hybrid-DFT calculations.

case.dosX Contains the density of states (states/Ry) and corresponding energy (in Ry at the internal energy scale) generated by **tetra**. X can be 1-3. Additional files **case.dosXev** contain the DOS in (states/eV) and the energy in eV with respect to EF.

case.energy Contains the eigenvalues of all k-points calculated in **lapw1**. In spin-polarized calculations two files **case.energyup** and **case.energydn** are used instead. **lapwso** generates **case.energyso**.

case.help03X Contains eigenvalues and partial charges for atom number X.

case.kgen This file contains the indices of the tetrahedra in terms of the list of k-points. It is used in **lapw2** (if EFMOD switch in **case.in2** is set to TETRA, see 7.8.3) and in **tetra**.

case.klist This file contains a list of k-points in the BZ on a (special k-point) tetrahedral mesh. It is generated in **kgen**.

- case.qtl** Contains eigenvalues and corresponding partial charges (bandwise) in a form suitable for **tetra** and band structure plots with “band character”. The decomposition of these charges is controlled by **ISPLIT** in **case.struct**.
- case.radwf** Contains the radial basis functions inside spheres (generated optional by **lapw2**).
- case.rho** Contains the electron densities on a grid in a specified plane generated by **lapw5**. This file can be used as input for your favorite contour or 3D plotting program.
- case.rsp** Contains the atomic densities generated by **lstart**. They are used by **dstart** to generate a first crystalline density (**case.clmsum**).
- case.r2v** Contains the exchange potential (in the lattice harmonics representation as $r^2 * V_{LM}(r)$ and as Fourier coefficients) in a form suitable for plotting with **lapw5**.
- case.scf_mini** Contains the last scf-iteration of each individual time (geometry) step during a structural minimization using **mini**. Thus this file contains a complete history of properties (energy, forces, positions) during a structural minimization.
- case.sigma** Contains the atomic densities for those states with a “P” in **case.inst**. Generated in **lstart** and used for difference densities in **lapw5**.
- case.spaghetti_ps** A ps file with the energy bandstructure plot generated by **spaghetti**.
- case.symmat** Contains the momentum matrix elements between bands i,j . Created by **optic** and used in **joint**.
- case.vcoul** Contains the Coulomb potential (in the lattice harmonics representation as $r^2 * V_{LM}(r)$ and as Fourier coefficients) in a form suitable for plotting with **lapw5**.
- case.vorb** Contains the orbital potential (in Ry) generated by **orb** for LDA+U or onsite-hybrid-DFT calculations in form of a $(2l+1, 2l+1)$ matrix.
- case.vtotal** Contains the total potential (in the lattice harmonics representation as $r^2 * V_{LM}(r)$ and as Fourier coefficients) in a form suitable for plotting with **lapw5**.
- case.vector** Binary file, contains the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of all k-points calculated in **lapw1**. In spin-polarized calculations two files **case.vectorup** and **case.vectordn** are used instead. **lapwso** generates **case.vectorso**.
- case.vns** Contains the non-spherical part of the total potential V . Inside the sphere the radial coefficients of the lattice harmonics representation are listed (for L greater than 0), while for the interstitial region the reanalyzed Fourier coefficients are given (see equ. (2.10)). In spin-polarized calculations two files **case.vnsup** and **case.vnsdn** are used instead.
- case.vorbup/dn** Contains the orbital dependent part of the potential in LDA+U, OP or Hybrid-DFT calculations. Generated in **orb**, used in **lapw1**.
- case.vsp** Contains the spherical part of the total potential V stored as $r * V$ (thus the first values should be close to $-2 * Z$). In spin-polarized calculations two files **case.vspup** and **case.vspdn** are used instead.

4.3 The “master input” file case.struct

The file **case.struct** defines the structure and is the main input file used in all programs. We provide several examples in the subdirectory

example.struct_file

If you are using the “*Struct Generator*” from the graphical user interface **w2web**, or the **makestruct.lapw** utility, you don’t have to bother with this file directly, but generate it by specifying the relevant data in a mask. Alternatively, the utilities **cif2struct** or **xyz2struct** convert the corresponding cif or xyz files to the WIEN2k-format.

However, the description of the fields of this master input file can be found here.

Note: If you are changing this file manually, please note that this is a formatted file and the proper column positions of the characters are important! Use REPLACE instead of DELETE and INSERT during edit! Also some parameters are usually element-specifically chosen (R0)

We start the description of this file with an abridged example for rutile TiO₂ (adding line numbers):

```

----- top of file -----line #
Titaniumdioxide TiO2 (rutile): u=0.305      1
P LATTICE,NONEQUIV. ATOMS 2                2
MODE OF CALC=RELA                          3
 8.6817500 8.6817500 5.5916100 90.          90. 90. 4
ATOM -1: X= 0.0000000 Y= 0.0000000 Z= 0.0000000 5
      MULT= 2 ISPLIT= 8                    6
ATOM -1: X= 0.5000000 Y= 0.5000000 Z= 0.5000000
Titanium NPT= 781 R0=.000022391 RMT=2.00000000 Z:22.0 7
LOCAL ROT MATRIX:  -.7071068 0.7071068 0.0000000 8
                  0.7071068 0.7071068 0.0000000 9
                  0.0000000 0.0000000 1.0000000 10
ATOM -2: X= 0.3050000 Y= 0.3050000 Z= 0.0000000
      MULT= 4 ISPLIT= 8
ATOM -2: X= 0.6950000 Y= 0.6950000 Z= 0.0000000
ATOM -2: X= 0.8050000 Y= 0.1950000 Z= 0.5000000
ATOM -2: X= 0.1950000 Y= 0.8050000 Z= 0.5000000
Oxygen NPT= 781 R0=.000017913 RMT=1.60000000 Z: 8.0
LOCAL ROT MATRIX:  0.0000000 -.7071068 0.7071068
                  0.0000000 0.7071068 0.7071068
                  1.0000000 0.0000000 0.0000000

 16 SYMMETRY OPERATIONS:                    11
 1 0 0 0.00                                  12
 0 1 0 0.00                                  13
 0 0 1 0.00                                  14
 1                                           15
 1 0 0 0.00
 0 1 0 0.00
 0 0-1 0.00
 2
.....
 15
 0 1 0 0.50
-1 0 0 0.50
 0 0 1 0.50
 16
----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows.

P	all primitive lattices except hexagonal	$[a \sin(\gamma') \sin(\beta), a \cos(\gamma') \sin(\beta), (a \cos(\beta))], [0, b \sin(\alpha), b \cos(\alpha)], [0, 0, c]$
F	face-centered	$[a/2, b/2, 0], [a/2, 0, c/2], [0, b/2, c/2]$
B	body-centered	$[a/2, -b/2, c/2], [a/2, b/2, -c/2], [-a/2, b/2, c/2]$
CXY	C-base-centered (orthorhombic only)	$[a/2, -b/2, 0], [a/2, b/2, 0], [0, 0, c]$
CYZ	A-base-centered (orthorhombic only)	$[a, 0, 0], [0, -b/2, c/2], [0, b/2, c/2]$
CXZ	B-base-centered (orthorh. and monoclinic symmetry)	$[a \sin(\gamma)/2, a \cos(\gamma)/2, -c/2], [0, b, 0], [a \sin(\gamma)/2, a \cos(\gamma)/2, c/2]$
R	rhombohedral	$[a/\sqrt{3}/2, -a/2, c/3], [a/\sqrt{3}/2, a/2, c/3], [-a/\sqrt{3}, 0, c/3]$
H	hexagonal	$[\sqrt{3}a/2, -a/2, 0], [0, a, 0], [0, 0, c]$

Table 4.4: Lattice type, description and bravais matrix used in **WIEN2k**. The angle γ' is defined via $\cos(\gamma) = \cos(\gamma') \sin(\alpha) \sin(\beta) + \cos(\beta) \cos(\alpha)$

line 1: format (A80)

title (compound)

line 2: format (A4,23X,I3)

lattice type, NAT

lattice type

as defined in table 4.4. For centered monoclinic lattices only the CXZ setting is supported and the monoclinic angle must be gamma. Eventually you have to transform a given spacegroup setting into one supported in WIEN2k (for instance for SG #12 we need (B112/m) or (B2/m11) setting and not (C122/m1) or (C2/m11) (it depends on your starting setting, but the final setting must have a monoclinic angle gamma); for SG #15 we need (B2/b) or one of the alternative B settings, but not one of the many others) using the Bilbao crystallographic server (<http://www.cryst.ehu.es/>; "structure utilities"; SETSTRU)

NAT

number of inequivalent atoms in the unit cell

line 3: format (13X,A4)

mode

RELA fully relativistic core and scalar relativistic valence
 NREL non-relativistic calculation

line 4: format (6F10.6)a, b, c, α , β , γ

a, b, c unit cell parameters (in a.u., 1 a.u. = 0.529177 Å). In face- or body-centered structures the non-primitive (cubic) lattice constant, for rhombohedral (R) lattices the hexagonal lattice constants must be specified. (The following may help you to convert between hexagonal and rhombohedral specifications:

$$a_{hex} = 2\cos\left(\frac{\pi - \alpha_{rhom}}{2}\right)a_{rhom}$$

$$c_{hex} = 3\sqrt{a_{rhom}^2 - \frac{1}{3}a_{hex}^2}$$

and (for fcc-like lattices) $a_{rhom} = a_{cubic}/\sqrt{2}$

α, β, γ angles between unit axis (if omitted, 90° is set as default). Set it only for P and CXZ lattices

line 5: format (4X,I4,4X,F10.8,3X,F10.8,3X,F10.8)

atom-index, x, y, z

atom-index running index for inequivalent atoms

positive in case of cubic symmetry
 negative for non-cubic symmetry
 this is set automatically using **symmetry**

x,y,z position of atom in internal units, i.e. as **positive** fractions of unit cell parameters. ($0 \leq x \leq 1$; the positions in the unit cell are consistent with the convention used in the International Tables of Crystallography [Tab, 1964]. In face- (body-) centered structures only one of four (two) atoms must be given, eg. in Fm3m position 8c is specified with 0.25, 0.25, 0.25 and .75, 0.75, 0.75). For R lattice use rhombohedral coordinates. (To convert from hexagonal into rhombohedral coordinates use the auxiliary program **hex2rhom**, which can be called at a command-line:

$$\vec{X}_{ortho} = \vec{X}_{hex} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & \frac{-1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\vec{X}_{rhom} = \vec{X}_{ortho} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} & \frac{-2}{\sqrt{3}} \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

line 6: format (15X,I2,17X,I2)

multiplicity, isplit

multiplicity number of equivalent atoms of this kind
 isplit this is just an output-option and is used to specify the decomposition of the lm-like charges into irreducible representations, useful for interpretation in case.qtl). This parameter is automatically set by **symmetry**:

- 0 no split of l-like charge
- 1 p-z, (p-x, p-y) e.g.:hcp
- 2 e-g, t-2g of d-electrons e.g.:cubic
- 3 d-z², (d-xy,d-x²y²), (d-xz,dyz) e.g.:hcp
- 4 combining option 1 and 3 e.g.:hcp
- 5 all d symmetries separate
- 6 all p symmetries separate
- 8 combining option 5 and 6

-2	d-z2, d-x2y2, d-xy, (d-xz,d-yz)
88	split <i>lm</i> like charges (for old telnes , not necessary anymore)
99	calculate cross-terms (for old telnes , not necessary anymore)

>>>: **line 5** must now be repeated MULT-1 times for the other positions of each equivalent atom according to the Wyckoff position in [Tab, 1964].

line 7: format (A10,5X,I5,5X,F10.8,5X,F10.5,5X,F10.5)
name of atom, NPT, R0, RMT, Z

name of atom	Use the chemical symbol. Positions 3-10 for further labeling of nonequivalent atoms (use a number in position 3)
NPT	number of radial mesh points (381 gives a good mesh for LDA calculations, but for GGA twice as many points are recommended; <i>always use an odd number of mesh points!</i>) the radial mesh is given on a logarithmic scale: $r(n) = R_0 * e^{[(n-1)*DX]}$
R0	first radial mesh point (typically between 0.0005 and 0.00005, smaller for heavy elements, bigger for light ones; a struct-file generated by w2web will have proper R0 values.)
RMT	atomic sphere radius (muffin-tin radius), can easily be estimated after running nn (see 6.1) and are set automatically with set rmt_lapw see 5.2.7). The following guidelines will be given here: Choose spheres as large as possible as this will save MUCH computer time. But: Use identical radii within a series of calculations (i.e. when you want to compare total energies) — therefore consider first how close the atoms may possibly come later on (volume or geometry optimization); do NOT make the spheres too different (even when the geometry would permit it), instead use the largest spheres for f-electron atoms, 10-20 % smaller ones for d-elements and again 10-20 % smaller for sp-elements; H is a special case, you may choose it much smaller (e.g. 0.6 and 1.2 for H and C) and systems containing H need a much smaller RKMAX value (3-5) in case.in1 .
Z	atomic number

line 8-10: format (20X,3F10.7)

ROTLOC	local rotation matrix (always in an orthogonal coordinate system). Transforms the global coordinate system (of the unit cell) into the local at the given atomic site as required by point group symmetry (see in the INPUT-Section 7.8.3 of LAPW2). SYMMETRY calculates the point group symmetry and determines ROTLOC automatically. Note, that a proper ROTLOC is required, if the LM values generated by SYMMETRY are used. A more detailed description with several examples is given in the appendix A and sec. 10.3
--------	--

>>>: **lines 5 thru 10** must be repeated for each inequivalent atom

line 11: format (I4)

nsym	number of symmetry operations of space group (see [Tab, 1964]) If nsym is set to zero, the symmetry operations will be generated automatically by SYMMETRY.
------	--

line 12-14: format (3I2,F10.7)

matrix, tau (as listed in [Tab, 1964])

matrix	matrix representation of (space group) symmetry operation
tau	non-primitive translation vector

line 15: format (I8)

index of symmetry operation specified above

>>>: **lines 12 thru 15** must be repeated for all other symmetry operations

line 16: free format (optional)

after a line "Precise positions", a list of all atomic positions can follow with full machine precision. These coordinates are written by **mixer** if one performs a "MSR1a" structure optimization and they will be used instead of the truncated numbers read above (only if they "agree", but not if one modifies them by hand such that they differ more significantly).

4.4 The "history" file case.scf

During the self-consistent field (SCF) cycle the essential data are appended to the file **case.scf** in order to generate a summary of previous iterations. For an easier retrieval of certain quantities the essential lines are labeled with **:LABEL;**, which can be used to monitor these quantities during self-consistency as explained below. The most important **:LABELs** are

:ENE	total energy (Ry). If there is a "WARNING" mentioned, check :WAR
:WAR	contains some warnings indicating that there might be a problem with your calculations. Usually these problems are not fatal, but may influence the accuracy.
:DIS	charge distance between last 2 iterations ($\int \rho_n - \rho_{n-1} dr$). Good convergence criterium.
:FER	Fermi energy (and Fermi-method)
:GAP	energy gap (for insulators). Please note, this value will only be correct, if the VBM/CBM are in your k-mesh. ("Shifted" k-meshes do not contain the Gamma-point and often gaps are at Gamma !!)
:FORxx	force on atom xx in mRy/bohr (in the local (for each atom) cartesian coordinate system)
:FGLxx	force on atom xx in mRy/bohr (in the global coordinate system of the unit cell (in the same way as the atomic positions are specified))
:FR	in MSR1a mode prints information about the remaining size of the forces and whether it will/has switched to MSR1 mode.
:DToxx	total difference charge density for atom xx between last 2 iterations
:CTOxx	total charge in sphere xx (mixed after MIXER)
:NTOxx	total charge in sphere xx (new (not mixed) from LAPW2+LCORE)
:QTLxx	partial charges in sphere xx
:EPLxx	l-like partial charges and "mean energies" in lower (semicore) energy window for atom xx. Used as energy parameters in case.in1 for next iteration
:EPHxx	l-like partial charges and "mean energies" in higher (valence) energy window for atom xx. Used as energy parameters in case.in1 for next iteration
:EFGxx	Electric field gradient (EFG) V_{zz} for atom xx
:ETAx	Asymmetry parameter of EFG for atom xx
:RTOxx	Density for atom xx at the nucleus (first radial mesh point)
:VZERO	Gives the total, Coulomb and xc-potential at z=0 and z=0.5 (meaningfull only for slab calculations)

To check to which type of calculation a scf file corresponds use:

:POT	Exchange-correlation potential used in this calculation
:LAT	Lattice parameters in this calculation
:VOL	Volume of the unit cell
:POSxx	Atomic positions for atom xx (as in case.struct)
:RKM	Actual matrix size and resulting RKmax
:NEC	normalization check of electronic charge densities. If a significant amount of electrons is missing, one might have core states, whose charge density is not completely confined within the respective atomic sphere. In such a case the corresponding states should be treated as band states (using LOs).

For spin-polarized calculations:

:MMTOT	Total spin magnetic moment/cell
--------	---------------------------------

:MMIxx	Spin magnetic moment of atom xx. Note, that this value depends on RMT.
:CUPxx	spin-up charge (mixed) in sphere xx
:CDNxx	spin-dn charge (mixed) in sphere xx
:NUPxx	spin-up charge (new, from lapw2+lcore) in sphere xx
:NDNxx	spin-dn charge (new, from lapw2+lcore) in sphere xx
:ORBxx	Orbital magnetic moment of atom xx (needs SO calculations and LAPWDM).
:HFFxx	Hyperfine field of atom xx (in kGauss).

One can monitor the energy eigenvalues (listed for the first k-point only), the Fermi-energy or the total energy. Often the electronic charges per atom reflect the convergence. Charge transfer between the various atomic spheres is a typical process during the SCF cycles: large oscillations should be avoided by using a smaller mixing parameter; monotonic changes in one direction suggest a larger mixing parameter.

In spin-polarized calculations the magnetic moment per atomic site is an additional crucial quantity which could be used as convergence criterion.

If a system has electric field gradients and one is interested in that quantity, one should monitor the EFGs, because these are very sensitive quantities.

It is best to monitor several quantities, because often one quantity is converged, while another still changes from iteration to iteration. The script `run.lapw` has three different convergence criteria built in, namely the total energy, the atomic forces and the charge distance (see 5.1.3, 5.1.4).

We recommend the use of UNIX commands like :

```
grep :ENE case.scf or use "Analysis" from w2web
```

for monitoring such quantities.

You may define an **alias** for this (see sec. 11.2), and a csh-script `grepline.lapw` is also available to get a quantity from several scf-files simultaneously (sec. 5.2.18 and 5.3).

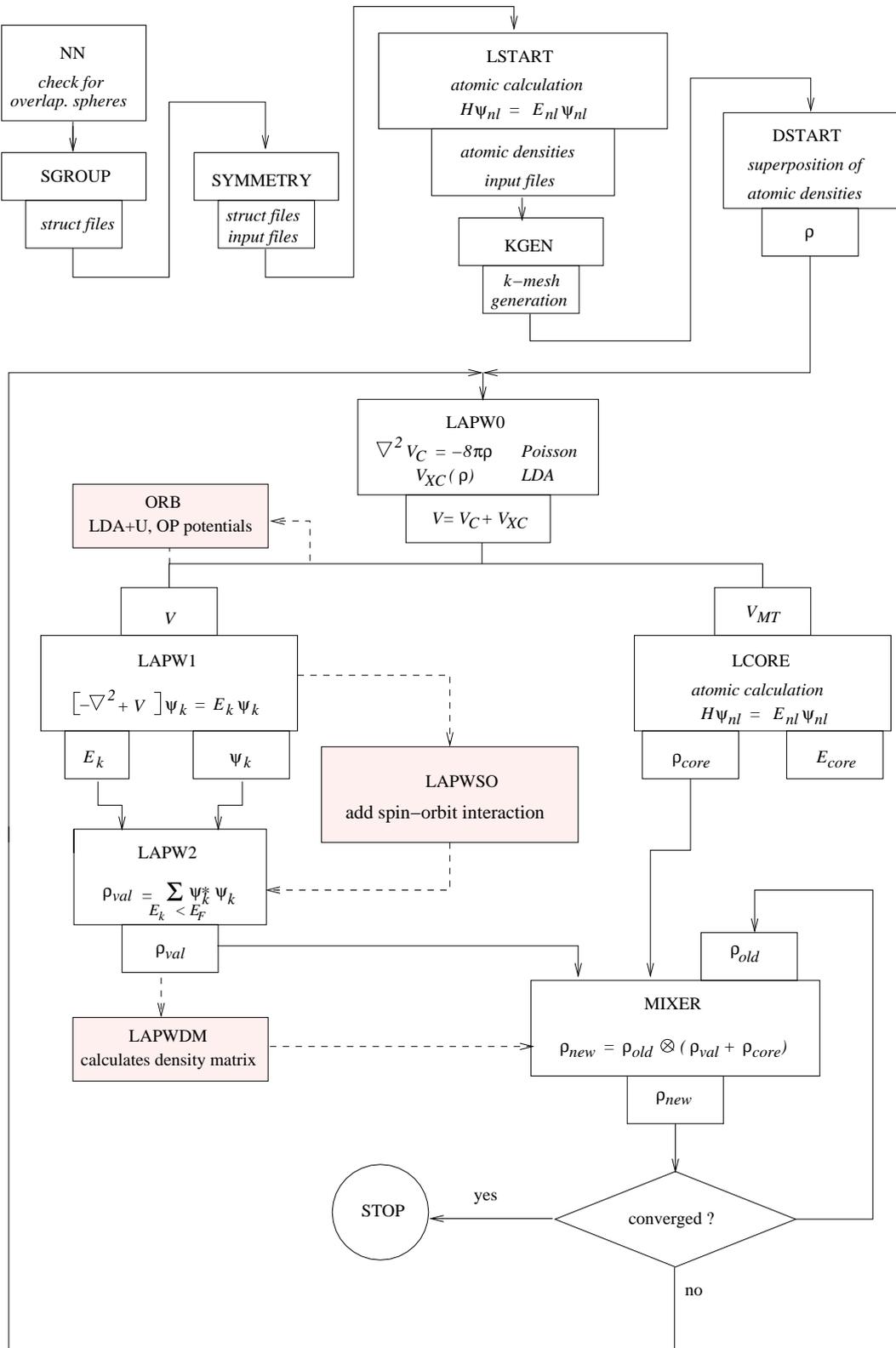
4.5 Flow of programs

The **WIEN2k** package consists of several independent programs which are linked via C-SHELL SCRIPTS described below.

The flow and usage of the different programs is illustrated in the following diagram (Fig. 4.2):

The initialization consists of running a series of small auxiliary programs, which generates the inputs for the main programs. One starts in the respective **case/** subdirectory and defines the structure in **case.struct** (see 4.3). The initialization can be invoked by the script **init.lapw** (see sec. 3.7 and 5.1.3), and consists of running:

- SETRMT** a perl-program which helps to select proper RMT values
- NN** a program which lists the nearest neighbor distances up to a specified limit (defined by a distance factor *f*) and thus helps to determine the atomic sphere radii. In addition it is a very useful additional check of your **case.struct** file (equivalency of atoms)
- SGROUP** determines the spacegroup of the structure defined in your **case.struct** file.
- SYMMETRY** generates from a raw case.struct file the space group symmetry operations, determines the point group of the individual atomic sites, generates the LM expansion for the lattice harmonics and determines the local rotation matrices.
- LSTART** generates free atomic densities and determines how the different orbitals are treated in the band structure calculations (i.e. as core or band states, with or without local orbitals,...).
- KGEN** generates a k-mesh in the irreducible part of the BZ.
- DSTART** generates a starting density for the scf cycle by a superposition of atomic densities generated in LSTART.

Figure 4.2: Program flow in **WIEN2k**

Then a self-consistency cycle is initiated and repeated until convergence criteria are met (see 3.8 and 5.1.4). This cycle can be invoked with a script `run_lapw`, and consists of the following steps:

LAPW0 (POTENTIAL) generates potential from density
LAPW1 (BANDS) calculates valence bands (eigenvalues and eigenvectors)
LAPW2 (RHO) computes valence densities from eigenvectors
LCORE computes core states and densities
MIXER mixes input and output densities

4.5.1 Core, semi-core and valence states

In many cases it is desirable to distinguish three types of electronic states, namely core, semi-core and valence states. For example titanium has core ($1s, 2s, 2p$), semi-core ($3s, 3p$) and valence ($3d, 4s, 4p$) states. In our definition **core states** are only those whose charge is entirely confined inside the corresponding atomic sphere. They are deep in energy, e.g., more than 7-10 Ry below the Fermi energy. **Semi-core states** lie high enough in energy (between about 1 and 7 Ry below the Fermi energy), so that their charge is no longer completely confined inside the atomic sphere, but has a few percent outside the sphere. **Valence states** are energetically the highest (occupied) states and always have a significant amount of charge outside the spheres.

The energy cut-off specified in `lstart` during `init_lapw` (usually -6.0 Ry) defines the separation into core- and band-states (the latter contain both, semicore and valence). If a system has atoms with semi-core states, then the best way to treat them is with "local orbitals", an extension of the usual LAPW basis. An input for such a basis set will be generated automatically. (Additional LOs can also be used for valence states which have a strong variation of their radial wavefunctions with energy (e.g. d states in TM compounds) to improve the quality of the basis set, i.e. to go beyond the simple linearization).

4.5.2 Spin-polarized calculation

For magnetic systems spin-polarized calculations can be performed. In such a case some steps are done for spin-up and spin-down electrons separately and the script `runsp_lapw` consists of the following steps:

LAPW0 (POTENTIAL) generates potential from density
LAPW1 -up (BANDS) calculates valence bands for spin-up electrons
LAPW1 -dn (BANDS) calculates valence bands for spin-down electrons
LAPW2 -up (RHO) computes valence densities for spin-up electrons
LAPW2 -dn (RHO) computes valence densities for spin-down electrons
LCORE -up computes core states and densities for spin-up electrons
LCORE -dn computes core states and densities for spin-down electrons
MIXER mixes input and output densities

The use of spin-polarized calculations is illustrated for fcc Ni (section 10.2), one of the test cases provided in the **WIEN2k** package.

4.5.3 Fixed-spin-moment (FSM) calculations

Using the script `runfsm_lapw -m XX` it is possible to constrain the total spin magnetic moment per unit cell to a fixed value `XX` and thus force a particular ferromagnetic solution (which may not correspond to the equilibrium). This is particularly useful for systems with several metastable

(non-) magnetic solutions, where conventional spin-polarized calculation would not converge or the solution may depend on the starting density. Additional SO-interaction is not supported.

Please note, that once `runfsm.lapw` has finished, only `case.vectordn` is ok, but `case.vectorup` is NOT the proper up-spin vector and MUST NOT be used for the calculations of QTLs (and DOS). It must be regenerated by `x lapw1 -up` (see also the comments for iterative diagonalization in section 5.2.22).

4.5.4 Antiferromagnetic (AFM) calculations

Several considerations are necessary, when you want to perform an AFM calculation. Please have also a look into `$WIENROOT/SRC_afminput/afminput.test`.

- ▶ You must construct a unit cell which allows for the desired AF ordering. For example for bcc Cr you must select a "P" lattice and specify both atoms, Cr1 at (0,0,0) and Cr2 at (.5,.5,.5), corresponding to a CsCl structure. Note, that it is important to label the two Cr atoms with "Cr1" and "Cr2", since only then the symmetry programs can detect that those atoms should be different (although they have the same Z). *If sgroup has interchanged some axis, try to undo these changes, since afminput may not properly find the correct symmetry operations in such a case.*
- ▶ When you generate `case.inst` you must specify the correct magnetic order and flip the spin of the AF atoms (i.e. invert the spin up and dn occupation numbers). In addition you should set a zero moment (identical spin up and dn occupations) for all "non-magnetic" atoms. This can be done conveniently using `instgen.lapw -ask` or during "initialization" using `w2web`.
- ▶ Now you can run either a "normal" spinpolarized initialization (without AFM option) and `runsp.lapw` or:
- ▶ Create a struct file of the non-magnetic (or ferro-magnetic) supergroup (run `init.lapw` up to `lstart`). Name it `case.struct.supergroup`. (For example for bcc Cr, this would be a struct file with the ordinary cubic lattice parameters, "B" type lattice and just one Cr at (0,0,0).)
- ▶ Run `init.lapw`. At the end AFMINPUT creates an input file for the program CLMCOPY. Depending on the presence of `case.struct.supergroup` and the specific symmetry it may/may not ask you to supply a symmetry operation/nonprimitive translation (see Sect. 9.5).
- ▶ Run `runafm.lapw`. This script calls LAPW1 and LAPW2 only for spin-up but the corresponding spin-dn density is created by CLMCOPY according to the rules defined during initialization. This reduces the required cpu time by a factor of 2 (and in addition the scf cycle is much more stable).
- ▶ It is highly recommended that you save your work (`save.lapw`) and check the results by continuing with a regular `runsp.lapw`. If nothing changes (E-tot and other properties), then you are ok, otherwise make sure the scf calculation is well converged (-cc 0.0001 or better). Eventually the system may not want to be antiferromagnetic (but for instance it is ferrimagnetic!).

`runafm.lapw` saves you more than a factor of 2 in in computer time, since only spin-up is calculated and in addition the scf-convergence may be MUCH faster. It works also with LDA+U (`case.dmatup/dn` are also copied), but does NOT work with Hybrid-DFT nor spin-orbit coupling, since this requires the presence of both vector files in the LAPWSO step.

4.5.5 Spin-orbit interaction

You can add spin-orbit interaction in LAPWSO (called directly after LAPW1) using a second-variational method with the scalar-relativistic orbitals (from LAPW1) as basis. The number of

eigenvalues will double since SO couples spin-up and dn states, so they are no longer separable. In addition, LOs with a “ $p_{1/2}$ ” radial basis can be added [Kuneš et al., 2001].

To assist with the generation of the necessary input files and possible changes in symmetry, a script **initso_lapw** exists. For non-spinpolarized cases nothing particular must be taken into account and SO can be easily applied by running **run_lapw -so**. It will automatically use the complex version of LAPW2.

However, for spin-polarized cases, the SO interaction may change (lower) the symmetry depending on how you choose the direction of magnetization and care must be taken to get a proper setup. **initso_lapw** together with **symmetso** generates the proper symmetry.

Just a few hints what can happen:

- ▶ Suppose you have a cubic system and put the magnetization along [001]. This will create a tetragonal symmetry (and you can temporarily tell this to the initialization programs by changing the respective lattice parameter c to a tetragonal system).
- ▶ If you put the magnetization along [111], this creates most likely a rhombohedral (or hexagonal) symmetry. (Try to visualize this for a fcc lattice, XCRYSDEN is very useful for this purpose).
- ▶ Symmetry operations can be classified into operations which invert the magnetization, others which leave it unchanged and some which do some arbitrary rotation. The program **symmetso** (part of **initso_lapw**) sorts these operations in the proper way.
- ▶ If you don't have inversion symmetry in the original structure, you must not “add inversion” in KGEN.

The recommended way to include SO in the calculations is to run a regular scf calculation first, save the results, initialize SO and run another scf cycle including SO:

- ▶ `run[sp].lapw`
- ▶ `save_lapw case.nrel`
- ▶ `initso_lapw`
- ▶ `run[sp].lapw -so`

For spin-polarized systems you may want to add the “-dm” switch to calculate also the orbital magnetic moment.

4.5.6 Orbital potentials

In **WIEN2kit** it is possible to go beyond standard LDA (GGA) and include orbital dependent potentials in methods like LDA+U or the “Orbital-Polarization”, which are very useful for strongly correlated systems.

To use these features you need to create input-files for LAPWDM and ORB (**case.indm**, **case.inorb**). You may copy a template from **SRC.templates**, but must modify it according to your needs. In particular you must select for which atoms and which orbitals (usually d-Orbitals of late transition metal atoms or f-orbitals for 4f/5f atoms) you want to add such a potential and also choose the proper U and J values for them. Once this is done, you can include this using the **-orb** switch. The density matrix (**case.dmatup/dn**) will be calculated in **lapw2** (or in **lapwdm** when spin-orbit is also used), it will be mixed in **mixer** (consistently with the “regular” charge density) and the orbital dependent potentials will be calculated on **orb** (after **lapw0**). Note, you must run spin-polarized in order to use orbital potentials.

- ▶ `runsp_lapw -orb [-so]`

If you want to force a non-magnetic solution you can constrain the spin-polarization to zero using `runsp_c_lapw`.

Without SO, `case.vorbup/dn` will be considered in LAPW1(c). With SO, it will be applied in LAPWSO (and allows coupling of nondiagonal spin-terms).

4.5.7 Onsite-exact-exchange and hybrid functionals for correlated electrons

In **WIEN2k**, it is also possible to go beyond standard LDA (GGA) and include **onsite**-exact-exchange (i.e., Hartree-Fock), which is very useful for strongly correlated systems, since such calculations are computationally nearly as cheap as standard DFT (or LDA+U). The onsite-exact-exchange/hybrid methods apply HF only inside the atomic spheres and only to one particular orbital. Thus you can use it only for localized electrons (see [Tran et al., 2006] for details). **Onsite**-exact-exchange will NOT improve gaps in sp-semiconductors. For these systems you have to use full hybrid-DFT (see Sec.4.5.8) or the mBJ potential (see Sec.4.5.10)

Onsite hybrid functionals for correlated electrons:

The one-parameter onsite hybrid functionals have the general following form:

$$E_{xc}^{\text{onsite-hybrid}}[\rho] = E_{xc}^{\text{SL}}[\rho] + \alpha (E_x^{\text{HF}}[\Psi_{\text{corr}}] - E_x^{\text{SL}}[\rho_{\text{corr}}])$$

where E_{xc}^{SL} is the underlying semilocal (SL) functional. The following semilocal functionals can be used in $E_{xc}^{\text{onsite-hybrid}}$:

- ▶ **LDA**: XC_LDA in `case.in0`. mode=HYBR and fraction= α in `case.inece`
- ▶ **PBE**: XC_PBE in `case.in0`. mode=HYBR and fraction= α in `case.inece`
- ▶ **WC**: XC_WC in `case.in0`. mode=HYBR and fraction= α in `case.inece`
- ▶ **PBEsol**: XC_PBESOL in `case.in0`. mode=HYBR and fraction= α in `case.inece`
- ▶ **TPSS**: XC_TPSS in `case.in0`. mode=HYBR and fraction= α in `case.inece`
- ▶ **REVTPSS**: XC_REVTPSS in `case.in0`. mode=HYBR and fraction= α in `case.inece`
- ▶ **MBJ**: XC_MBJ in `case.in0`. mode=HYBR and fraction= α in `case.inece`. Please note, that the double counting correction will utilize LDA (instead of MBJ).

The three-parameter onsite hybrid functionals B3PW91 and B3LYP are also available. These two functionals were proposed with the fraction of exact exchange $\alpha = 0.2$, however other values for α can be chosen as well.

- ▶ **B3PW91**: EX_B3PW91 EC_B3PW91 VX_B3PW91 VC_B3PW91 in `case.in0`. mode = HYBR and fraction = 0.2 in `case.inece`.

$$\begin{aligned} E_{xc}^{\text{onsite-B3PW91}}[\rho] &= E_{xc}^{\text{LDA}}[\rho] + 0.2 (E_x^{\text{HF}}[\Psi_{\text{corr}}] - E_x^{\text{LDA}}[\rho_{\text{corr}}]) \\ &\quad + 0.72 (E_x^{\text{B88}}[\rho] - E_x^{\text{LDA}}[\rho]) \\ &\quad + 0.81 (E_c^{\text{PW91}}[\rho] - E_c^{\text{LDA}}[\rho]) \end{aligned}$$

where $E_c^{\text{LDA}} = E_c^{\text{PW92}}$.

- ▶ **B3LYP**: XC_B3LYP in `case.in0`. mode = HYBR and fraction = 0.2 in `case.inece`.

$$\begin{aligned} E_{xc}^{\text{onsite-B3LYP}}[\rho] &= E_{xc}^{\text{LDA}}[\rho] + 0.2 (E_x^{\text{HF}}[\Psi_{\text{corr}}] - E_x^{\text{LDA}}[\rho_{\text{corr}}]) \\ &\quad + 0.72 (E_x^{\text{B88}}[\rho] - E_x^{\text{LDA}}[\rho]) \\ &\quad + 0.81 (E_c^{\text{LYP}}[\rho] - E_c^{\text{LDA}}[\rho]) \end{aligned}$$

where $E_c^{\text{LDA}} = E_c^{\text{VWN5}}$.

Onsite exact-exchange functionals for correlated electrons:

Onsite Hartree-Fock calculations, i.e.,

$$E_{xc}^{\text{onsite-HF}}[\rho] = E_{xc}^{\text{SL}}[\rho] + E_x^{\text{HF}}[\Psi_{\text{corr}}] - E_{xc}^{\text{SL}}[\rho_{\text{corr}}]$$

are also possible with the following semilocal functionals.

- ▶ **LDA:** XC_LDA in **case.in0**. mode=EECE and fraction=1 in **case.ineece**
- ▶ **PBE:** XC_PBE in **case.in0**. mode=EECE and fraction=1 in **case.ineece**
- ▶ **WC:** XC_WC in **case.in0**. mode=EECE and fraction=1 in **case.ineece**
- ▶ **PBESol:** XC_PBESOL in **case.in0**. mode=EECE and fraction=1 in **case.ineece**
- ▶ **TPSS:** XC_TPSS in **case.in0**. mode=EECE and fraction=1 in **case.ineece**
- ▶ **REVTPSS:** XC_REVTPSS in **case.in0**. mode=EECE and fraction=1 in **case.ineece**
- ▶ **MBJ:** XC_MBJ in **case.in0**. mode=EECE and fraction= α in **case.ineece**. Please note, that the double counting correction will utilize LDA (instead of MBJ).

Input and execution:

In addition to the input files which are necessary for an usual LDA or GGA calculation, the input file **case.ineece** is necessary to start a calculation. You may copy a template from **SRC_templates**, but must modify it according to your needs. In particular you must select for which atoms and which orbitals (usually d-Orbitals of late transition metal atoms or f-orbitals for 4f/5f atoms) you want to add such a potential and which type of functional you want to use.

A sample input for calculations with exact exchange is given below.

```
----- top of file: case.ineece -----
-9.0  2      emin, natorb
 1  1  2      1st atom index, nlorb, lorb
 2  1  2      2nd atom index, nlorb, lorb
HYBR      HYBR / EECE mode
0.25      fraction of exact exchange
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

line 1: free format

emin, natorb

- | | |
|--------|---|
| emin | lower energy cutoff, to be selected so that the energy of correlated states is larger than emin |
| natorb | number of atoms for which the exact exchange is calculated |

line 2: free format

iatom(i), nlorb(i), (lorb(li,i), li=1,nlorb(i))

- | | |
|-------|--|
| iatom | index of atom in struct file |
| nlorb | number of orbital moments for which exact exchange shall be calculated |
| lorb | orbital numbers (repeated nlorb-times) |

2nd line repeated natorb-times

line 3: free format

mode

- | | |
|------|--|
| HYBR | means that LDA/GGA exchange will be replaced by exact exchange |
|------|--|

EECE means that LDA/GGA exchange-correlation will be replaced by exact exchange

line 4: free format

alpha This is the fraction of Hartree-Fock exchange (between 0 and 1)

The electron density of the correlated electrons (4f or 3d) could have a very sharp angular nodal structure and common GGAs behave very badly for such densities (check :FIT in `case.scf` or look up $V_{xc}(R_{mt})$ in `case.output0`). It is therefore often recommended to use LDA instead of a GGA for the double counting correction of the exchange term for the correlated electrons. This is possible by copying `case.in0` to `case.in0eece_lda` and specify VX_LDA (see 7.1 in the first line. Please note, for MBJ this will be done automatically and a warning will be issued.

► `runsp_lapw -eece [-so]` (or `runsp_c.lapw -eece`)

As with LDA+U, hybrid functionals can be used only for spin-polarized calculations and the switch `-eece` activates it. `runsp_lapw` will internally call `runeece_lapw`, which will create all necessary additional input files (it requires a `case.in0` file including the optional IFFT line as generated by `init_lapw`): `case.indm` (`case.indmc`), `case.inorb`, `case.in0eece`, `case.in2eece` (`case.in2cece`) and once this is done, calculates in a series of `lapw2/lapwdm/lapw0/orb` calculations the corresponding orbital dependent potentials.

4.5.8 Unscreened and screened hybrid functionals (“hf”-module)

The onsite exact-exchange/hybrid functionals from 4.5.7 can be applied only to localized electrons (typically 3d or 4f), but lead to cheap calculations. In **WIEN2k**, it is also possible to apply hybrid (and Hartree-Fock) functionals to all electrons, however this leads to calculations which are one or two orders of magnitude more expensive. Hybrid functionals are usually more accurate than the semilocal functionals for the electronic properties of semiconductors and insulators. They also give accurate results for strongly correlated systems like NiO. In hybrid functionals a fraction α of semilocal (SL) exchange is replaced by Hartree-Fock (HF) exchange:

$$E_{xc}^{\text{hybrid}} = E_{xc}^{\text{SL}} + \alpha (E_x^{\text{HF}} - E_x^{\text{SL}})$$

Hybrid functionals can also be constructed by considering only the short-range part of E_x^{HF} and E_x^{SL} , which leads to the so-called “screened” hybrid functionals. In **WIEN2k**, the unscreened and screened hybrid functionals are implemented using the second-variational procedure [Tran and Blaha, 2011]. A few important points should be noted:

► Both the k-point and MPI parallelizations can be used (simultaneously or only one of them). As usual, the k-point parallelization is over the k-points in the irreducible Brillouin zone and is managed by c-shell scripts. There are two modes of MPI parallelization that can be used. In the first one (`-mode1`), which is the default, these are the loops over the occupied bands in the main subroutine that are parallelized, and this should be the most efficient mode in terms of speed. However, if your system is too large in terms of memory requirement for your nodes, then you can try the second mode (`-mode2`), which is much more efficient in terms of memory, but may eventually lead to slower calculations. With `-mode2`, the first part of the main subroutine is parallelized over the matrix elements of the second variational Hamiltonian (roughly `nband*nband/2` where `nband` is specified in `case.inhf`, see 7.6.1), while in the second part this is done for the loops over the occupied bands.

- ▶ Due to the orbital-dependency of the HF potential, the files **case.vectorhf**, **case.energyhf** and **case.weighthf** are also saved when **save_lapw** is executed. If you restart a calculation without **case.vectorhf**, then, for the first iteration, it will be generated from the semilocal potential (**lapw1**), and therefore the number of scf iterations to reach convergence will be larger.
- ▶ It is not possible to use spin-orbit coupling (**-so**) with hybrid functionals.

The available functionals

Among the semilocal functionals E_{xc}^{SL} available in **WIEN2k**, only a few of them can be used in E_{xc}^{hybrid} (both in unscreened and screened modes). The functionals are the following (**case.in0.grr** is for the exchange part E_x^{SL}):

- ▶ **LDA**: XC_LDA in **case.in0** and EX_SLDA VX_SLDA in **case.in0.grr**
- ▶ **PBE**: XC_PBE in **case.in0** and EX_SPBE VX_SPBE in **case.in0.grr**. The functionals PBE0 and YS-PBE0 (similar to HSE06 [Heyd et al., 2003, Krukau et al., 2006]) correspond to $\alpha = 0.25$ in **case.inhf** (see 7.6).
- ▶ **WC**: XC_WC in **case.in0** and EX_SWC VX_SWC in **case.in0.grr**
- ▶ **PBEsol**: XC_PBESOL in **case.in0** and EX_SPBESOL VX_SPBESOL in **case.in0.grr**
- ▶ **BPW91** (this is not B3PW91): EX_B88 VX_B88 EC_PW91 VC_PW91 in **case.in0** and EX_SB88 VX_SB88 in **case.in0.grr**.
- ▶ **BLYP** (this is not B3LYP): EX_B88 VX_B88 EC_LYP VC_LYP in **case.in0** and EX_SB88 VX_SB88 in **case.in0.grr**.

For the screened hybrid functionals using PBE, PBEsol or B88 for exchange, an alternative for the screened exchange specified in **case.in0.grr** is to use the one proposed in [Henderson et al., 2008, Weintraub et al., 2009], HJS, which is based on the error function (instead of the Yukawa function) for the screening:

- ▶ EX_SHJSPBE VX_SHJSPBE
- ▶ EX_SHJSPBESOL VX_SHJSPBESOL
- ▶ EX_SHJSB88 VX_SHJSB88

Note that the screening parameter ω in HJS is set to $(2/3)\lambda$ of the value specified in **case.inhf** (see [Tran and Blaha, 2011]). Note also that the screening in the HF exchange is still done with the Yukawa function (with λ for the screening) since the error-function-based screening in HF is not implemented.

In addition, calculations with the well-known B3PW91 and B3LYP (with VWN5) unscreened hybrid functionals (see 4.5.7 for the functionals form) can also be done:

- ▶ **B3PW91**: XC_B3PW91 in **case.in0**, EX_SLDA VX_SLDA in **case.in0.grr**, and select no screening and $\alpha = 0.2$ in **case.inhf**
- ▶ **B3LYP**: XC_B3LYP in **case.in0**, EX_SLDA VX_SLDA in **case.in0.grr**, and select no screening and $\alpha = 0.2$ in **case.inhf**

Hartree-Fock calculations (without correlation) are also possible:

- ▶ **HF**: EX_LDA VX_LDA in **case.in0**, EX_SLDA VX_SLDA in **case.in0.grr**, and select no screening and $\alpha = 1$ in **case.inhf**

Flow in `run_lapw -hf`

The flow of programs during a scf iteration when executing `run_lapw -hf` is the following (non-spin-polarized and real case):

- ▶ `x lapw0 -grr` (semilocal exchange)
- ▶ `x lapw0` (semilocal exchange-correlation)
- ▶ `x lapw1` (semilocal orbitals)
- ▶ `x lapw2` (semilocal bands)
- ▶ `mv case.vectorhf case.vectorhf_old`
- ▶ `x hf` (hybrid orbitals)
- ▶ `x lapw2 -hf` (hybrid electron density and bands)
- ▶ `x lcore`
- ▶ `x mixer`

Self-consistent calculation

The steps to perform a calculation with hybrid functionals are the following:

- ▶ Do a calculation with the underlying semilocal functional E_{xc}^{SL} (recommended but not mandatory).
- ▶ "save" the semilocal calculation.

The next steps can be done conveniently using `init_hf_lapw [-up]`:

- ▶ create `case.inhf` (`cp $WIENROOT/SRC/templates/template.inhf case.inhf`). While there are (more or less) reasonable default values for most parameters, you must set `nband` manually. Set `nband` to at least the number of occupied bands plus one. Larger values are more accurate, but be aware that computing time scales as `nband`². The value of `nband` which leads to a converged result will strongly depend on the studied system and property (e.g., much higher for EFG than for band gap or lattice constant).
- ▶ create `case.in0_grr` (`cp case.in0 case.in0_grr`), this file contains:
 - a screened exchange functional (e.g., EX_SPBE VX_SPBE) for the exchange functional (see above)
 - "R2V" option (instead of "NR2V") such that the exchange potential is written to `case.r2v_grr`
 - "KXC" (instead of "TOT") such that αE_x^{SL} is printed in `case.scf0_grr` (and `case.scf`) under the label :AEXSL
- ▶ In `case.inc` the print switch has to be "1" for all atoms such that the core orbitals are printed in `case.corewf` (you don't have to set this manually, the script `run_lapw` will do it automatically when `-hf` is specified).
- ▶ if `nband` is large, you may have to edit `case.in1` and set EMAX to a higher value (e.g., 5 Ry).
- ▶ Execute `run_kgenhf_lapw`. This generates `case.klist_fbz`, `case.klist_ibz`, `case.kgen_ibz` and `case.outputkgenhf`. One must use identical k-meshes and shifts for IBZ and FBZ. Note that the k-parallelization is done over the k-points specified in `case.klist_ibz` (irreducible Brillouin zone).

All these steps above can be conveniently performed using the script `init_hf_lapw`.

Once the initializations has been done, execute `run_lapw` (or `runsp_lapw`) with the switch `-hf`:

```
run(sp)_lapw -hf ...
```

Neglect of the nondiagonal terms

If only the eigenvalues are wanted, you may use the switch **-diaghf**. By using this switch, only the diagonal elements of the 2nd variational Hamiltonian matrix are calculated (the non-diagonal elements are set to zero). This leads to a much faster calculation of the eigenvalues, while keeping a very good accuracy [Tran, 2012]. However, the orbitals will not be modified, therefore running the calculation for more than one iteration is useless (the result will not change except for metallic systems). This option is not recommended for systems which are described as metallic with the semilocal functional or for difficult systems (e.g., NiO, see [Tran, 2012]). It is important to be aware that with this option, the total energy (:ENE in **case.scf**) is wrong unless the option **-nonself** (see below) is also used. After having done and saved a well converged calculation with the semilocal functional, the setting up of such a calculation is the same as for a self-consistent calculation (see above), but then **run(sp)_lapw** is executed with **-diaghf** (**-hf** and **-i 1** will be set automatically):

```
run(sp)_lapw -diaghf ...
```

The option **-diaghf** can be used simultaneously with the options **-nonself** and **-redklist**.

Reduced k-mesh for the HF potential

In order to reduce the computational time for the calculation of the HF potential, the internal loop over the k-points can be reduced to a subset of k-points. For instance, for a calculation with a $12 \times 12 \times 12$ k-mesh, the reduced k-mesh for the HF potential can be one of the following: $6 \times 6 \times 6$, $4 \times 4 \times 4$, $3 \times 3 \times 3$, $2 \times 2 \times 2$ or $1 \times 1 \times 1$. This option, which should be used only in the case of screened exchange (see [Paier et al., 2006]), is particularly interesting for total energy calculations. Obviously, choosing such a reduced k-mesh is an approximation which needs to be tested. The setting up of such a calculation is the same as for a self-consistent calculation (see above), but with the switch **-redklist** when executing **run_kgenhf_lapw** (to create also **case.klist_rfbz**, **case.klist_ribz** and **case.kgen_ribz**):

```
run_kgenhf_lapw -redklist
```

and **run(sp)_lapw**:

```
run(sp)_lapw -hf -redklist ...
```

The option **-redklist** can be used simultaneously with the options **-nonself** and **-diaghf**.

Non-self-consistent calculation of the total energy for hybrid functionals

It is possible to calculate the total energy non-self-consistently, i.e., by plugging the orbitals obtained from a calculation with the underlying semilocal functional E_{xc}^{SL} into the total-energy hybrid functional. By doing so, the 2nd variational Hamiltonian is not calculated and therefore the computational time will be reduced significantly. After having done and saved a well converged calculation with the semilocal functional, the setting up of a non-self-consistent calculation is the same as for a self-consistent calculation (see above), but with the additional switch **-nonself** (**-hf** and **-i 1** will be set automatically) that has to be used in **run(sp)_lapw**:

```
run(sp)_lapw -nonself ...
```

This option can be particularly interesting for the calculation of the lattice constant, which depends mainly on the functional, but very little on the orbitals plugged into the functional. It can be used simultaneously with the option **-diaghf** and **-redklist**.

Starting a calculation from another k-mesh

Due to the orbital-dependence of the HF potential, it is not straightforward to start directly a calculation with a potential generated from a previous calculation with another k-mesh. However, due to the high cost of a hybrid calculation, it is desirable to have this possibility in order to reduce the number of iterations during the scf procedure.

This option is also useful if a vector file on a very dense k-mesh is needed, e.g. for optics or transport properties (BoltzTraP), while using such a k-mesh for a full self-consistent calculation would not be necessary (and would be too expensive). In this case you want to do only one iteration (`-i 1`).

The procedure is the following:

- ▶ Do the calculation with the first k-mesh and "save" it when it is finished (do not execute `clean_lapw` since `case.vectorhf` should be present).
- ▶ `mv case.klist_fbz case.klist_fbz_old`
- ▶ `mv case.klist_ibz case.klist_ibz_old`
- ▶ `mv case.outputkgenhf case.outputkgenhf_old`
- ▶ `mv case.klist_rfbz case.klist_rfbz_old` (if the option `-redklist` is also used)
- ▶ `mv case.klist_ribz case.klist_ribz_old` (if the option `-redklist` is also used)
- ▶ Execute `run_kgenhf_lapw` to create the files for the new k-mesh.
- ▶ Run the HF calculation with `-newklist`:


```
run(sp)_lapw -hf -newklist (-i 1) ...
```

This option can be used simultaneously with `-redklist`, but not with `-diaghf` and `-nonself`. Note that when `-newklist` is used, the total energy (:ENE in `case.scf`) at the 1st iteration is wrong.

Band structure plotting

In order to make a plot of the band structure with hybrid functionals, it is more convenient to use the program `run_bandplothf_lapw`. After the self-consistent calculation is finished and saved (do not execute `clean_lapw` since `case.vectorhf` must be present), do the following steps:

- ▶ Create `case.klist_band`.
- ▶ Execute `run_bandplothf_lapw` with one or several of the following flags that were also used during the self-consistent calculation: `-up/dn`, `-diaghf`, `-redklist`, `-model/mode2`, `-inlorig`. Note that a parallel calculation of the band structure (with `-p`) can be done even if the scf calculation was not done in parallel (but you still need a file `.machines`) and vice-versa. You can also use `-qt1` to calculate the partial charges for band character plotting.
- ▶ Create `case.insp`.
- ▶ Execute `x spaghetti` with the switch `-hf`.

First, `run_bandplothf_lapw` calculates the semilocal orbitals (`x lapw1 -band`) for the k-points in `case.klist_band`. Then, the hybrid eigenvalues at these k-points are calculated (`x hf -band`). If `-qt1` is used, then the partial charges will be calculated (`x lapw2 -band -qt1`).

Density of states

The calculation of the DOS is the same as for the semilocal functionals, but using the additional flag `-hf` when executing `lapw2` for the partial charges (`x lapw2 -qt1 -hf`) and `tetra` for the DOS (`x tetra -hf`).

4.5.9 Slater, SmBJ and KLI potentials (“hf”-module)

The hf-module can also calculate the Slater [Slater, 1951], SmBJ [Becke and Johnson, 2006, Tran and Blaha, 2009] and KLI [Krieger et al., 1990] exchange potentials. The Slater potential (not to be confused with the LDA exchange potential of the homogeneous electron gas) is an average of the non-multiplicative HF potential. SmBJ is the mBJ potential (see Sec. 4.5.10) but using the Slater potential instead of the MGGA Becke-Roussel potential. The KLI potential consists of the Slater potential plus an additional term. These potentials are multiplicative, but nonlocal in the sense that they depend on the orbitals and require an integration at each point of space, therefore their calculations is rather expensive (same order of magnitude as for an HF calculation).

The steps to do a calculation with the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential are the following:

- ▶ As for a standard LDA/GGA calculation, execute `init_lapw` to prepare the input files.
- ▶ Execute `init_hf_lapw` in order to prepare the input files for the hf-module.
- ▶ In `case.in0`, choose either the Slater (VX_SLATER), SmBJ (VX_SMBJ) or KLI (VX_KLI) exchange potential. If you do not want to add a correlation potential to the exchange one, then choose VC_NONE (this is mandatory with KLI). Since `lapw0 -grr` is not required you can delete `case.in0_grr`.
- ▶ If you have chosen SmBJ, then you need to follow the procedure explained in Sec. 4.5.10 to create the starting `case.r2v` and `case.vresp` files.
- ▶ In `case.inhf`, choose $\alpha = 1$ and do not use screening (replace T by F and remove the next line where λ is specified).
- ▶ To start the calculation, do not execute `run(sp)_lapw`, but the script `run_vnonloc_lapw` (see explanations below and Sec. 5.1.5) instead:


```
run_vnonloc_lapw (-sp) ...
```

About the input file `case.inhf` (see 7.6.2) for the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potentials:

- ▶ The Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential is multiplied by the parameter α , whose default value is 0.25 (appropriate for hybrid functionals). Therefore, α should be set to 1 in order to have the full Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential.
- ▶ The value of nband is not used for the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential. However, it is still necessary to replace “xx” by some integer.
- ▶ The meaning of gmax, lmaxe and lmaxv is the same as for hybrid functionals
- ▶ The tolerance tolu is not used for the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential.

A few important points:

- ▶ The hf-module generates the file `case.r2v_nonloc` which contains the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential multiplied by the electron density. This file is read by `lapw0` in order to include the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential into the total potential. If `case.r2v_nonloc` is not present for `lapw0` (if this happen this should be only at the first iteration), then `lapw0` will use the LDA exchange potential instead.
- ▶ The calculation of the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential by the hf-module can be done in parallel. Both the k-point and MPI parallelizations can be used (simultaneously or only one of them). As usual, the k-point parallelization is over the k-points in the irreducible Brillouin zone. The MPI parallelization is implemented in the main subroutines for one of the loop of the double loops which run over the occupied bands. This means that the largest number of cores which makes sense to use is the number of k-points in the IBZ times the number of occupied bands.
- ▶ The scf convergence with the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential can be extremely difficult to achieve. Therefore, it is more or less necessary to use the script `run_vnonloc_lapw` (instead of `run(sp)_lapw`) to run the calculation. The script `run_vnonloc_lapw` runs the calculation with an inner/outer loops procedure similar to the one described in [Betzing et al., 2010]

for the HF method. Within an inner scf loop, the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential is kept fixed (frozen), which leads to rather fast convergence (the files are saved under a name which contains "fixed"). The outer loop consists of updating the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential (the saved files are named with "updated") right after an inner scf loop. Note that with KLI, the number of iterations for the outer loop can be huge (e.g., 100). For spin-polarized calculations, the flag "-sp" has to be used. See Sec. 5.1.5 for the available options and flags with `run_vnonloc_lapw`.

4.5.10 modified Becke-Johnson potential (mBJ) for band gaps

The modified Becke-Johnson exchange potential + LDA-correlation ([Tran and Blaha, 2009]) allows the calculation of band gaps with an accuracy similar to very expensive *GW* calculations. It is a semilocal approximation to an atomic "exact-exchange" potential and a screening term. This is just a XC-potential, not a XC-energy functional, thus E_{xc} is taken from LSDA and the forces cannot be used with this option.

We recommend the following steps to perform a mBJ calculation (the purpose of the first five steps is just only to create the starting `case.r2v` and `case.vresp` files):

- ▶ run a regular initialization and SCF calculation using LDA or PBE (it does not matter at all which functional you choose).
- ▶ `init_mbj_lapw`. This performs automatically the following steps:
 - create `case.inm.vresp` (`cp $WIENROOT/SRC.templates/template.inm.vresp case.inm.vresp`).
 - edit `case.in0` and set "R2V" option (instead of "NR2V") such that the XC potential is written in `case.r2v`.
- ▶ run one more iteration (use `run_lapw -NI -i 1`) to generate the required `case.r2v` and `case.vresp` files.
- ▶ "save" the LDA (or PBE) calculation.
- ▶ run `init_mbj_lapw` again. The second call (once `case.inm.vresp` is present) will do the following steps:
 - edit `case.in0` and change the functional to option XC_MBJ (this is mBJ).
 - `cp case.in0 case.in0_grr` and choose EX_GRR VX_GRR in `case.in0_grr`. This option will calculate the average of $\nabla\rho/\rho$ over the unit cell. (The presence of `case.in0_grr` will be detected during the SCF procedure and `lapw0` will be called twice, first with the input file `case.in0_grr`, then with `case.in0`.)
 - select a specific mBJ parametrization (see below) and creates the corresponding file `case.in0abp`.
- ▶ Eventually, edit `case.inm` and choose the PRATT mixing scheme, although with recent `mixer` versions this should be hardly necessary.
- ▶ run the mBJ SCF calculation.

In rare cases it could be that the default mixing scheme leads to convergence problems. The reason is that the mBJ potential also depends on the kinetic energy density which is not mixed in `mixer`. If such a convergence problem appears, you may have to restart the MSR1 mixing by removing the broyden files (`rm *.broy*` or even use the PRATT mixing. The PRATT mixing with the required small mixing parameter will be very slow, (otherwise leading to oscillations or even divergence) and thus later switch back to MSR1 after some initial (typical 5-20) scf-cycles.

The mBJ potential uses an average of $\nabla\rho/\rho$ over the unit cell. This does not make sense for surfaces or molecules. In such cases, run a similar bulk structure first, then `cp case.bulk.grr case.grr` and remove `case.in0_grr`. This runs mBJ with a fixed value of "c".

If you want to use other mBJ parameters than those defined in ([Tran and Blaha, 2009]), eg. the optimized values of ([Koller et al., 2012]) you can define them during `init_mbj_lapw` or directly in `case.in0abp`. Put 3 values A, B, e (default=-0.012, 1.023, 0.5), which determines the parameter c in mBJ according to eq. 7 or Table II. in ([Koller et al., 2012]).

4.5.11 DFT-D3 for dispersion energy

`dftd3` calculates the dispersion energy and forces using the semi-empirical DFT-D3 method of [Grimme et al., 2010]. Since this method depends only on the positions of atoms (no dependence on the electron density) it is very fast and adds very little computer time. The `dftd3` package is not included by default in **WIEN2k**, but can be downloaded from the website of the group of S. Grimme <http://www.thch.uni-bonn.de/tc/index.php>. When compilation is done, the executable `dftd3` has to be copied in the `$WIENROOT` directory.

`run(sp)_lapw` has to be executed with the `-dftd3` switch:

► `run(sp)_lapw -dftd3 ...`

The user can either create the input file `case.indftd3` (described in Sec. 7.2.2) by hand or let `run(sp)_lapw` copy the default one from `$WIENROOT/SRC.templates/`.

The `dftd3` package requires the file `case.poscar` (or `case.xyz` if periodic boundary conditions are switched off) created by the utility program `struct2poscar`, which is run automatically by `run(sp)_lapw`.

The DFT-D3 method contains parameters which are specific to the exchange-correlation functional to which the dispersion energy is added. The functionals available in **WIEN2k** for which such parameters are available are the GGAs PBE, PBEsol, revPBE, RPBE, and BLYP, the MGGA TPSS, the GGA-hybrids PBE0, B3LYP, B3PW91 and HSE06 (corresponding to YS-PBE0 in WIEN2k) and the MGGA-hybrids TPSSh and TPSS0.

More detailed informations on the DFT-D3 method and available options are given in Sec. 7.2 and in the file `man.pdf` included in the `dftd3` TAR file.

4.5.12 Nonlocal van der Waals functionals

The `nlvdw` module calculates the dispersion energy and potential with nonlocal van der Waals (NL-vdW) functionals [Dion et al., 2004] using the FFT-based method of Román-Pérez and Soler [Román-Pérez and Soler, 2009]. Details specific to **WIEN2k** can be found in [Tran et al., 2017].

The user has to copy the template input file `case.innlvdw` (described in Sec. 7.3.2) from `$WIENROOT/SRC.templates/` and modify it if necessary.

`run(sp)_lapw` has to be executed with the `-nlvdw` switch:

► `run(sp)_lapw -nlvdw ...`

A few important points:

- The default values in `case.innlvdw` for the plane-wave expansion cutoff G_{\max} (20 bohr⁻¹) and density cutoff ρ_c (0.3 bohr⁻³) should be rather well converged in most cases. However, for very weakly bound van der Waals systems, it may eventually be safer to check the convergence by repeating the calculation with a larger ρ_c (e.g., 1 bohr⁻³). Be aware that with such a larger value for ρ_c it may be necessary to increase G_{\max} to a larger value (e.g., 30 bohr⁻¹). More details concerning the convergence with respect to ρ_c and G_{\max} can be found in [Tran et al., 2017].

- ▶ If the calculation of forces is not required (i.e., no optimization of atomic positions), then it is recommended to switch off the calculation of the NL-vdW potential in `case.innlvdw` in order to speed up the calculation. The NL-vdW potential affects only very little the density and electronic structure and is therefore essential only for the forces.
- ▶ `nlvdw` is parallelized with MPI which consists mainly of MPI FFTW (see Sec. 5.5).
- ▶ `nlvdw` needs the density on a grid in `case.xsf`. This file (and the necessary input `case.inxsf`) is prepared automatically by `prepare.xsf.lapw` called by the `run(sp).lapw` script.
- ▶ The script `run(sp).lapw` executes the module `lapw0` with the switch `-nlvdw (x lapw0 -nlvdw)` such that the NL-vdW potential (if required in `case.innlvdw`) is read from `case.r2v.nlvdw` and added to the semilocal potential.
- ▶ The NL-vdW energy is written in `case.scf` next to the label `:ENLVDW` and is added to the total energy by `mixer`.

About the kernel tables:

- ▶ The path of the kernel tables (specified in `x.lapw`) that are used for the calculations are `$WIENROOT/SRC.nlvdw/vdW_kernel_table` (for kernel type 1, generated with `Nr_points=2000`, `Nqs=30` and `q_cut=10`, which is more or less similar as in [Klimeš et al., 2011] and [Tran et al., 2017])
`$WIENROOT/SRC.nlvdw/rVV10_kernel_table` (for kernel type 2, generated with `Nr_points=1024`, `Nqs=20` and `q_cut=0.5`, which is the default in other codes).
- ▶ The kernel table of type 1 which is the default in most other codes is `$WIENROOT/SRC.nlvdw/vdW_kernel_table.Nr_points1024.Nqs20.q_cut5` (generated with `Nr_points=1024`, `Nqs=20` and `q_cut=5`). If the user wants to use this kernel, then it has to be copied as follows:
 - `cd $WIENROOT/SRC.nlvdw/`
 - `cp vdW_kernel_table.Nr_points1024.Nqs20.q_cut5 vdW_kernel_table`
- ▶ Kernel tables with other parameters can be generated by using the stand-alone programs `generate_vdW_kernel_table.f` and `generate_rVV10_kernel_table.f` that are in `$WIENROOT/SRC.nlvdw/`. First, compile with `ifort -FR generate_vdW_kernel_table.f`
or
`gfortran -ffree-form generate_vdW_kernel_table.f`
and then run the executable `a.out`.

The functionals:

The type of NL-vdW kernel and its parameter(s) are chosen in `case.innlvdw` (Sec. 7.3.2), however, as usual the semilocal part of the exchange-correlation functional has to be specified in `case.in0`. There is no restriction on the combination semilocal/NL-vdW. For well-known NL-vdW functionals, the keywords are shown below:

- ▶ vdW-DF [Dion et al., 2004]:
 - `case.in0` : EX_REVPBE EC_LDA VX_REVPBE VC_LDA
 - `case.innlvdw` : kernel type 1 and $Z_{ab} = -0.8491$
- ▶ vdW-DF2 [Lee et al., 2010]:
 - `case.in0` : XC_GGA_X_RPW86 EC_LDA VC_LDA
 - `case.innlvdw` : kernel type 1 with $Z_{ab} = -1.887$
- ▶ C09-vdW [Cooper, 2010]:
 - `case.in0` : XC_GGA_X_C09X EC_LDA VC_LDA
 - `case.innlvdw` : kernel type 1 with $Z_{ab} = -0.8491$

- ▶ optB88-vdW [Klimeš et al., 2010]:
 - **case.in0** : EX_OPTB88 EC.LDA VX_OPTB88 VC.LDA
 - **case.innlvdw** : kernel type 1 with $Z_{ab} = -0.8491$
- ▶ optPBE-vdW [Klimeš et al., 2010]:
 - **case.in0** : EX_OPTPBE EC.LDA VX_OPTPBE VC.LDA
 - **case.innlvdw** : kernel type 1 with $Z_{ab} = -0.8491$
- ▶ optB86b-vdW [Klimeš et al., 2011]:
 - **case.in0** : EX_OPTB86B EC.LDA VX_OPTB86B VC.LDA
 - **case.innlvdw** : kernel type 1 with $Z_{ab} = -0.8491$
- ▶ rVV10 [Vydrov and Van Voorhis, 2010, Sabatini et al., 2013]:
 - **case.in0** : XC_GGA_X_RPW86 EC_PBE VC_PBE
 - **case.innlvdw** : kernel type 2 with $b = 6.3$ and $C = 0.0093$
- ▶ vdW-DF-cx [Berland and Hyldgaard, 2014]:
 - **case.in0** : XC_GGA_X_LV_RPW86 EC.LDA VC.LDA
 - **case.innlvdw** : kernel type 1 with $Z_{ab} = -0.8491$
- ▶ rev-vdW-DF2 [Hamada, 2014]:
 - **case.in0** : XC_GGA_X_B86_R EC.LDA VC.LDA
 - **case.innlvdw** : kernel type 1 with $Z_{ab} = -1.887$

5 Shell scripts for running programs

Contents

5.1	Job control	61
5.2	Utility scripts	67
5.3	Structure optimization	74
5.4	Phonon calculations	79
5.5	Parallel Execution	80
5.6	NMR calculations: Chemical shift and Knight shift	87
5.7	Wannier functions (wien2wannier)	92
5.8	Spontaneous Polarization, Piezoelectricity and Born Charges (BerryPI)	94
5.9	Getting on-line help	97
5.10	Interface scripts	98

5.1 Job control (c-shell scripts)

In order to run **WIEN2k** several c-shell scripts are provided which link the individual programs to specific tasks.

All available (user-callable) commands have the ending **_lapw** so you can easily get a list of all commands using

```
ls $WIENROOT/*_lapw
```

in the directory of the **WIEN2k** executables. (*Note: all of the more important commands have a link to a short name omitting “_lapw”.*) All these commands have at least one option, **-h**, which will print a small help indicating purpose and usage of this command.

5.1.1 Main execution script (x_lapw)

The main **WIEN2k**script, **x_lapw** or **x**, executes a single **WIEN2k**program. First it creates the corresponding **program.def**-file, where the connection between Fortran I/O-units and filenames are defined. One can modify its functionality with several switches, modifying file definitions in case of spin-polarized or complex calculations or tailoring special behaviour. All options are listed with the help switch

```
x -h or x_lapw -h
```

With some of the options the corresponding input files may be changed temporarily, but are set back to the original state upon completion.

USAGE: x PROGRAMNAME [flags]

PURPOSE: runs WIEN executables: afminput, aim, arrows, broadening, cif2struct, clmaddsub, clmcopy, clminter, convham, conv2prim, dftd3, dipan, dmftproj, dstart, eosfit, eosfit6, filtvec, findbands, fleur2wien, hex2rhomb, hf, initxspec, irrep, joint, joinvec, kgen, kram, lapw0, lapw1, lapw2, lapw3, lapw5, lapw7, lapwdm, lapwso, lcore, lorentz, lstart, mini, mixer, nn, optimize, orb, pairhess, plane, rhomb_in5, sgroup, shifteig, spaghetti, struct2cif, struct2poscar, struct_afm_check, sumpara, supercell, symmetry, symmetso, telnes3, tetra, txspec, wannier90, w2w, w2waddsp, wplot, xspec

FLAGS:

-f FILEHEAD -> FILEHEAD for path of struct & input-files
 -t/-T -> suppress output of running time
 -h/-H -> help
 -d -> create only the def-file
 -up -> runs up-spin
 -dn -> runs dn-spin
 -ud -> runs up/dn-crossterm
 -sc -> runs semicore calculation
 -c -> complex calculation (no inversion symmetry present)
 -p -> run lapw0/l/2/hf/so/dm/optic/dstart in parallel (needs .machines or .processes file)
 -scratch dir/ -> defines (and makes) \$SCRATCH variable
 -grr -> lapw0 for mBJ or hf (using \$file.in0_grr)
 -eece -> for hybrid-functionals (lapw0, lapw2, mixer, orb, sumpara)
 -band -> for lapw1/2/hf bandstructures: uses *klist_band
 -orb -> runs lapw1 with LDA+U/OP or B-ext correction, mixer with dmat
 -it -> runs lapw1 with iterative diagonalization
 -noHinv -> runs lapw1 with iterative diag. without Hinv
 -noHinv0 -> runs lapw1 with iterative diag. writing new Hinv
 -nohns -> runs lapw1 without HNS
 -nmat_only -> runs lapw1 and yields only the matrixsize
 -nmr -> runs lapw1 in NMR mode
 -inlorig -> runs lapw2 but does not modify case.inl
 -emin X -> runs lapw2 with EMIN=X (in \$file.in2)
 -all X Y -> runs lapw2 with ALL and E-window X-Y (in \$file.in2)
 -qtl -> runs lapw2 and calculates QTL
 -alm -> runs lapw2 and calculates ALM, BLM
 -almd -> runs lapw2 and calculates ALM, BLM in lapw2 for DMFT (Aichhorn)
 -qdmft -> runs lapw2 and calculates charges including DMFT (Aichhorn)
 -help_files -> runs lapw2 and creates case.helpXX files
 -vresp -> runs lapw2/mixer and creates case.vrespval/sum (TAU/meta-GGA)
 -fermi -> runs lapw2 with FERMI switch
 -efg -> runs lapw2 with EFG switch
 -so -> runs lapw2/optic/spaghetti with def-file for spin-orbit calc.
 -hf -> runs lapw2 with Hartree-Fock/hybrid vectors
 -diaghf -> calculates only the diagonal elements of HF Hamiltonian
 -nonself -> calculates hf with Ex only (no eigenvalues/vectors)
 -model/2/3 -> modes 2 and 3 calculate hf with a better MPI scaling for memory
 -nonself -> calculates hf with Ex only (no eigenvalues/vectors)
 -newklist -> HF/hybrid-DFT calculation starting from a different k-mesh
 -redklist -> HF/hybrid-DFT calculation with reduced k-mesh for the potential
 -slater -> calculation of the Slater potential by the HF module
 -kli -> calculation of the KLI potential by the HF module
 -gw -> write in case.gw the diagonal matrix elements of the HF/hybrid Hamiltonian for GW
 -fbz -> runs kgen and generates a full mesh in the BZ
 -fft -> runs dstart only up to case.in0_std creation
 -super -> runs dstart and creates new_super.clmsum (and not \$file.clmsum)
 -lcore -> runs dstart with \$file.rsplcore (produces \$file.clmsc)
 -sel -> use reduced vector file in lapw7
 -settol 0.000x -> run sgroup with different tolerance
 -sigma -> run lstart with case.inst_sigma (autogenerated) for diff.dens.
 -dftd3 -> run mixer with dftd3 forces
 -rxes -> run tetra using case.rxes weight file for RXES-spectroscopy.
 -rxesw E1 E2 -> run tetra and create case.rxes file for RXES for energies E1-E2
 -enefile -> spaghetti+tetra with case.energy instead case.qtl (only tot-DOS)
 joinvec: only join case.energy_* files
 -delta -> run arrows program with difference between two structures
 -copy -> runs pairhess and copies .minpair to .minrestart and .minhess
 -telnes -> run qtl after generating case.inq based on case.innes
 -xspec -> run broadening with case.xspec instead of case.elnes
 -txt -> runs cif2struct using case.txt (see UG)
 -pp -> run wannier90 in "preprocessing mode"
 -wf N -> run wplot for Wannier function N
 -efermi EF -> run findbands (unit:Ryd) / shifteig (unit:eV) with Fermi energy EF
 -emax Y -> for findbands

USE: x -h PROGRAMNAME for valid flags for a specific program

*Note: To make use of a scratch file system (usually a "local" file system for reducing the network or central fileservers load), you may specify such a filesystem in the environment variable **SCRATCH** (it may already have been set by your system administrator and must exist on all your nodes) or using the **-scratch** switch (directory will be created automatically if it does not exist). However, you have to make sure that there is enough disk-space in the **SCRATCH** directory to hold your **case.vector*** and **case.help*** files.*

5.1.2 Create the master input file case.struct (makestruct_lapw)

The primary input file for a case is called **case.struct**. It can be created by the *Struct Generator* of **w2web**, by some utilities like **cif2struct** or **xyz2struct** or using an interactive script **makestruct_lapw**. This script asks for lattice-type or spacegroup, atoms and their positions, and produces an intermediate file **datastruct**. The auxiliary programs **Tmaker** and **setrmt_lapw** converts this into **init.struct**, which must be copied to the proper location/filename by the user.

makestruct_lapw was provided by Morteza Jamal (m.jamal57@yahoo.com) and Peter Blaha.

5.1.3 Job control for initialization (init_lapw)

In order to start a new calculation, one should make a new subdirectory and run all calculations from there. At the beginning one must provide at least one file (see quick-start 3 or the **makestruct_lapw** script 5.1.2), namely **case.struct** (see 4.3). (**case.inst** can be created automatically on the "fly" or using **instgen_lapw**, see 6.4.3), then one runs a series of programs using **init_lapw**. This script is described briefly in chapter 4.5) and in detail in "Getting started" for the example TiC (see chapter 3). You can get help with switch -h.

init_lapw -h

```
PROGRAM: /zeus/WIEN2k/init_lapw
PURPOSE: initialisation of the l/apw-package WIEN2k
to be called within the case-directory
has to be located in WIEN-executable directory
needs case.struct file
USAGE: init_lapw [OPTIONS] [FLAGS]
FLAGS:
-h/-H ->help
-b ->batch (non-interactive) mode (see possible options below, SGROUP is always ignored)
-sp ->in batch mode: select spin-polarized calculation
OPTIONS:
-red X ->in batch mode: RMT reduction by X % (default: RMT not changed)
-vxc X ->in batch mode: VXC option (default: 13 = PBE )
-ecut X ->in batch mode: energy separation between core/valence (default: -6.0 Ry)
-rkmax X ->in batch mode: RKMAX (default: 7.0, not changed)
-lvns L -> in batch mode: LVNS_max (default: 4)
-fermit X ->in batch mode: use TEMP with smearing by X Ry (default: TETRA)
-fermits X ->in batch mode: use TEMPS with smearing by X Ry (default: TETRA)
-mix X ->in batch mode: set mixing to X (default: 0.2, not changed)
-numk X ->in batch mode: use X k-points in full BZ (default: 1000)
-s PROGRAM -> start with PROGRAM ($next)
-e PROGRAM ->exit after PROGRAM ($stopafter)
```

All actions of this script are logged in short in **:log** and in detail in the file **case.dayfile**, which also gives you a "restart" option when problems occurred. In order to run **init_lapw** starting from a specific point on, specify -s PROGRAM.

init_lapw may produce various WARNING or ERROR messages, when the default initialization might be unsafe. Ignoring ERRORS and in many cases also WARNINGS during the execution of this script, will most likely lead to errors at a later stage. Neglecting warnings about core-leakage creates **.lcore**, which directs the scf-cycle to perform a superposition of core densities, but usually you should rerun with a lower **-ecut** option (or your RMT spheres are not set properly).

init_lapw supports switch **-b**, a “batch” mode (non-interactive) for trivial cases AND experienced users. You can supply various options and specify spin-polarization, XC-potential, RK-max, L-max for nonspherical matrix elements (large spheres), k-mesh or mixing. Changes to **case.struct** by **nn** will be accepted, but by **sgroup** will be neglected. *Please check the terminal output for ERRORS and WARNINGS !!!*

5.1.4 Job control for iteration (run_lapw or runsp_lapw)

In order to perform a complete SCF calculation or even perform both, a optimization of internal atomic positions and a SCF calculation simultaneously, several types of scripts are provided with the distribution. For the specific flow of programs see chapter 4.5. For more information on atomic position optimization see chapter 5.3.2.

- ▶ For non-spinpolarized calculations use: **run_lapw**,
- ▶ for spin-polarized calculations use: **runsp_lapw**.
- ▶ for antiferromagnetic calculations use: **runafm_lapw**
- ▶ for FSM (fixed-spin moment) calculations use: **runfsm_lapw**
- ▶ for a spin-polarized setup, where you want to constrain the moment to zero (e.g. for LDA+U calculations) use: **runsp_c_lapw**

Cases with/without inversion symmetry and with/without semicore or core states are handled automatically by these scripts. All activities of these scripts are logged in short in **:log** (appended) and in detail together with convergence information in **case.dayfile** (overwriting the old “dayfile”). You can always get help on its usage by invoking these scripts with the **-h** flag.

run_lapw -h

```
PROGRAM:          /zeus/lapw/WIEN2k/bin/run_lapw

PURPOSE:          running the nonmagnetic scf-cycle in WIEN
                  to be called within the case-subdirectory
                  has to be located in WIEN-executable directory

USAGE:            run_lapw [OPTIONS] [FLAGS]

OPTIONS:
-cc LIMIT ->     charge convergence LIMIT (0.0001 e)
-ec LIMIT ->     energy convergence LIMIT (0.0001 Ry)
-fc LIMIT ->     force convergence LIMIT (1.0 mRy/a.u.)
                  default is -ec 0.0001; multiple convergence tests possible
-e PROGRAM ->    exit after PROGRAM ()
-i NUMBER ->     max. NUMBER (40) of iterations
-s PROGRAM ->    start with PROGRAM ()
-r NUMBER ->     restart after NUMBER (99) iterations (rm *.broyd*)
-nohns NUMBER ->do not use HNS for NUMBER iterations
-inlnew N ->     create "new" in1 file after N iter (write_in1 using scf2 info)
-ql LIMIT ->     select LIMIT (0.05) as min.charge for E-L setting in new in1
-qdmft NP ->     including DMFT from Aichhorn/Georges/Biermann running on NP proc
-scratch dir/ -> sets (and creates) scratch directory (for vector files)

FLAGS:
-h/-H ->        help
-I ->           with initialization of in2-files to "TOT"
-NI ->          does NOT remove case.broyd* (default: rm *.broyd* after 60 sec)
-p ->           run k-points in parallel (needs .machine file [speed:name])
-it ->          use iterative diagonalizations
-it1 ->         use iterative diag. with recreating H_inv (after basis change)
-it2 ->         use iterative diag. with reinitialization (after basis change)
-noHinv ->      use iterative diag. without H_inv
-vec2pratt ->   use vec2pratt instead of vec2old for iterative diag.
-so ->         run SCF including spin-orbit coupling
-renorm->       start with mixer and renormalize density
-inlorig->      if present, use case.in1_orig file; do not modify case.in1
-hf ->         HF/hybrid-DFT calculation
-diaghf ->     non-selfconsistent HF with diagonal HF only (only e_i)
```

```

-model1/2/3 -> modes 2 and 3 calculate hf with a better MPI scaling for memory
-nonselv -> non-selfconsistent HF/hybrid-DFT calculation (only E_x(HF))
-newklist -> HF/hybrid-DFT calculation starting from a different k-mesh
-redklist -> HF/hybrid-DFT calculation with a reduced k-mesh for the potential
-slater-> calculation of the Slater potential by the HF module
-kli -> calculation of the KLI potential by the HF module
-dftd3 -> include the dispersion energy and forces with the DFT-D3 method
-min -> force optimization using MSR1a

```

```

CONTROL FILES:
.lcore runs core density superposition producing case.clmsc
.stop stop after SCF cycle
.minstop in MSR1A mode(structure optimization) switches to MSR1
.fullldiag force full diagonalization
.noHinv remove case.storeHinv files
case.inm_vresp activates calculation of vresp files for meta-GGAs
case.in0_grr activates a second call of lapw0 (mBJ pot., or E_xc analysis)

```

```

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES:
SCRATCH directory where vectors and help files should go

```

Additional flags valid only for magnetic cases (**runsp_lapw**) include:

```

-dm -> calculate the density matrix (when -so is set, but -orb is not)
-eece -> use "exact exchange+hybrid" methods
-orb -> use LDA+U, OP or B-ext correction
-orbcc -> use LDA+U correction, but with constant V-matrix
-noorbdu-> use LDA+U without crossterms up-dn (needs also -so)

```

Calling **run_lapw** (after **init_lapw**) from the subdirectory **case** will perform up to 40 iterations (or what you specified with switch **-i**) unless convergence has been reached earlier. You can choose from three convergence criteria, **-ec** (the total energy convergence is the default and is set to 0.0001 Ry for at least 3 iterations), **-fc** (magnitude of force convergence for 3 iterations, ONLY if your system has "free" structural parameters!) or **-cc** (charge convergence, just the last iteration), and any combination can also be specified. Be careful with these criteria, different systems will require quite different limits (e.g. **fcc** Li can be converged to μRy , a large unit cell with heavy magnetic atoms only to 0.1 mRy). You can stop the scf iterations after the current cycle by generating an empty file **.stop** (use eg. **touch .stop** in the respective case-directory).

The scf-cycle creates **case.broyd*** files which contain the "charge-history". Once **run_lapw** has finished, you should usually "**save_lapw**" (see below) the results. When you continue with another **run_lapw** without "**save_lapw**" (because the previous run did not fulfill the convergence criteria or you want to specify a more strict criterium) the "broyden-files" will be deleted unless you specify **-NI**.

With **-e PROGRAM** you can run only part of one scf cycle (e.g. **run lapw0, lapw1** and **lapw2**), with **-s PROGRAM** you can start at an arbitrary point in the scf cycle (e.g. after a previous cycle has crashed and you want to continue after fixing the problem) and continue to self-consistency. Before mixer is invoked, **case.clmsum** is copied to **case.clmsum_old**, and the final "important" files of the scf calculation are **case.clmsum** and **case.scf**.

Invoking

```
run_lapw -I -i 30 -fc 0.5
```

will first set in **case.in2** the TOT-switch (if FOR was set) to save cpu time, then run up to 30 scf cycles till the force criterion of 0.5 mRy/a.u. is met (for 3 consecutive iterations). Then the calculation of all terms of the forces is activated (setting FOR in **case.in2**) for a final iteration.

An additional switch **-min** will activate the optimization of the internal positions using the **MSR1a** option in **case.inm** (see Sec. 5.3.2). Note, this option can take several hundreds of scf-cycles in more complicated cases.

By default the file **case.in1** is updated after **lapw2** and the current Fermi-energy is inserted. This will force **lapw1** to use instead of the default energy parameters (0.30) an energy " $E_F - 0.2$ ".

The switch **-inlorig** can be used to keep the present **case.in1** file unmodified (or to copy **case.in1.orig** back after **-in1new**).

The switch **-in1new N** preserves for N iteration the current **case.in1** file. After the first N iterations **write.in1.lapw** is called and a new **case.in1** file is generated, where the energy parameters are set according to the **:EPLxx** and **:EPHxx** values of the last scf iteration and the **-ql** value (see sections 4.4 and 7.5). In this way you may select in some cases better energy-parameters and also additional LOs to improve the linearization may be generated automatically. Note, however, that this option is potentially unsafe and dangerous, since it may set energy-parameters of LOs and APW+lo too close (leading to ghostbands) or in cases where you have a “bad” last iteration (or large changes from one scf iteration to the next. The original **case.in1** file is saved in **case.in1.orig** and is used as template for all further scf-cycles.

Parallelization is described in Sec. 5.5.

Iterative diagonalization, which can significantly save computer time (in particular for cases with “few electrons” (like surfaces) and “large matrices (larger than 2000)” a factor 2-5 ! is possible), is described in Sec. 7.5. It needs the **case.vector.old** file from the previous scf-iteration (and this file is created from **case.vector** when the **-it** switch is set) and an inverse of a previous Hamiltonian (H_0^{-1}) stored in **case.storeHinv**. When you change the Hamiltonian significantly (changing RKmax or local orbitals), reinitialize the iterative diagonalization either by “**touch .fulldiag**” (performs one full diagonalization) or “**touch .noHinv**” (recreates **case.storeHinv** files) or using the **-it1|-it2** switch.

You can save computer time by performing the first scf-cycles without calculating the non-spherical matrix elements in **lapw1**. This option can be set for N iterations with the **-nohns N** switch.

The presence of the file **.lcore** directs the script to superpose the radial core densities using **dstart** and generating **case.clmsc**. It is created automatically during **init.lapw** when charge-leakage warnings are ignored. This option allows to reduce the number of semi-core states, but still keeping a good charge density. **dstart** can also run in mpi-parallel mode, otherwise it can be slow for big cases.

The presence of the file **case.in0.grr** activates a second call of **lapw0**, which is necessary for modified Becke-Johnson potentials (see Section 4.5.10) or E_{xc} analysis.

It is also possible to calculate exact exchange (Hartree-Fock) and perform full hybrid-DFT calculations. However, such calculations are very expensive. They are activated using the **-hf** switch. More information can be found in Sec. 4.5.8

If you have a previous scf-calculation and changed lattice parameters or positions (volume optimization or internal positions minimization), one could use **-renorm** to renormalize the density prior to the first iteration., but the recommended way is to use **clmextrapol.lapw**.

For magnetic systems which are difficult to converge you can use the script **runfsm.lapw -m M** (see section 4.5.3) for the execution of fixed-spin moment (FSM) calculations.

5.1.5 Job control for iteration with the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potentials (run_vnonloc.lapw)

In order to achieve scf convergence with the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potentials (see sec. 4.5.9) it is necessary to use the script **run_vnonloc.lapw**. The script **run_vnonloc.lapw** runs the calculation with an inner/outer loops procedure similar to the one described in [Betzinger et al., 2010] for the HF method. Within an inner scf loop, the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential is kept fixed (frozen), which leads to rather fast (and very cheap) convergence (the files are saved under a name which contains “fixed”). The outer loop consists of updating the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential (the saved files are named with “updated”) right after an inner scf loop. For spin-polarized calculations, the flag “-sp” has to be used. Many of the options and flags of **run(sp).lapw** (-ec, -cc, etc.) can be used with **run_vnonloc.lapw**. All options and flags can be listed with the **-h** flag:

run_vnonloc_lapw -h

PROGRAM: run_vnonloc_lapw

PURPOSE: to run the inner/outer loops procedure to achieve scf convergence with the Slater/SMBJ/KLI potentials

USAGE: run_vnonloc_lapw [OPTIONS] [FLAGS]

OPTIONS:

```

-cc LIMIT ->   charge convergence LIMIT (0.0001 e)
-ec LIMIT ->   energy convergence LIMIT (Ry)
-fc LIMIT ->   force convergence LIMIT (1.0 mRy/a.u.)
                default is -ec 0.0001; multiple convergence tests possible
-i NUMBER ->   max. NUMBER (40 by default) of iterations for the inner loop
-iout NUMBER -> max. NUMBER (100 by default) of iterations for the outer loop
-inlnew N ->   create "new" inl file after N iter (write_inl using scf2 info)
-mix ->        use another mixing factor for the outer loop (default is 1)

```

FLAGS:

```

-h/-H ->help
-sp ->        for spin-polarized calculation
-NI ->        does NOT remove case.broyd* (default: rm *.broyd* after 60 sec)
-p ->        run k-points in parallel (needs .machine file [speed:name])
-inlorig->    if present, use case.inl_orig file; do not modify case.inl

```

5.2 Utility scripts

5.2.1 Save a calculation (save_lapw)

After self-consistency has been reached, the script

```
save_lapw head_of_save_filename
```

saves **case.clmsum**, **case.scf**, **case.dmat**, **case.vorb** and **case.struct** as well as all inputs (**case.in*** under the new name and removes the **case.broyd*** files. Now you are ready to modify structural parameters or input switches and rerun **run_lapw**, or calculate properties like charge densities (lapw5), total and partial DOS (tetra) or energy bandstructures (spaghetti).

For more complicated situations, where many parameters will be changed, we have extended **save_lapw** so that calculations can not only be saved under the **head_of_save_filename** but also a directory can be specified. Except when using the -o switch, all input files will be saved as well (and can be restored using **restore_lapw**).

Options to **save_lapw** can be seen with

```
save_lapw -h
```

Currently the following options are supported

```

-h          help
-o          old scheme, does not save input files
-f          force save_lapw to overwrite previous saves of the same name
-d directory save calculation in directory specified
-s          silent operation (no output on screen)
-band      saves case.output1/so, qtl, irrep and spaghetti files
-dos       saves case.int, qtl and dos files
-eels      saves elnes, innes, broadspec and qtl files
-optic     saves case.symmat,joint,epsilon,sigma,eloss,absorp,klist,kgen,inop,injoint,inkram ... files
-xspec     saves xspec, corewfx, m1/m2, inxs, qtl and int files

```

Note: for DOS, bandstructure, xspec, eels or optic, there is no corresponding **restore_lapw** option, but files must be handled by hand.

5.2.2 Restoring a calculation (restore_lapw)

To restore a calculation the script `restore_lapw` can be used. This script restores the `struct`, `clmsum`, `vorb` and `dmat` files as well as all input files. **Note:** The input files will only be restored when `save_lapw -d` was used, i.e. when you have saved a calculation in an extra directory.

After `restore_lapw` you can continue and either run an scf cycle (`run_lapw`) or recreate the scf-potential (`x lapw0`) and the corresponding eigenvectors (`x lapw1`) for further tasks (DOS, electron density,...).

Options to `restore_lapw` are:

```
-h          help
-f          force restore_lapw to overwrite previous files
-d directory restore calculation from directory specified
-s          silent operation (no output)
-t          only test which files would be restored
```

5.2.3 Reduce atomic spheres and interpolate density (reduce_rmt_lapw)

```
reduce_rmt_lapw [ -r XX -up]
```

When a structure optimization (MSR1a and `run(sp)_lapw` or `min_lapw`) fails because of overlapping spheres, this script will reduce the spheres (default: 3 % or use `-r XX`) and interpolate the density inside the spheres to the new radial mesh. Setting the switch `-up` will do it for `clmsum`, `clmup` and `clmdn` files.

5.2.4 Remove unnecessary files (clean_lapw)

Once a case has been completed you can clean up the directory with this command. Only the most important files (`scf`, `clmsum`, `struct`, input and some output files) are kept. It is very important to use this command when you have finished a case, since otherwise the large vector and `helpXX` files will quickly fill up all your disk space.

Options to `clean_lapw` are:

```
-h  help
-s  silent operation (no output)
-r  recursively clean all directories starting from the current one
```

5.2.5 Migrate a case to/from a remote computer (migrate_lapw)

This script migrates a case to a remote computer (to be called within the case-dir). Needs working `ssh/scp` without password; local and remote case-dir must have the same name.

Call it within the desired case-dir as:

```
migrate_lapw [FLAGS OPTIONS] [user@]host:path/case-dir
```

with the following options:

```
-put          -> transfer of files to a remote host (default)
-get          -> transfer of files from a remote host

-all         -> the complete directory is copied
-start       -> only files to start an scf cycle are copied (default for put)
-end         -> only new files resulting from an scf cycle are copied
```

```

                                (default for get)
-save savedir -> "save_lapw -d save_dir" is issued and only save_dir is copied

FLAGS:
-h                -> help
-clean           -> a clean_lapw is issued before copying
-r              -> files in source directory are removed after copying
-R             -> source directory (and all files) are removed after copying
-s             -> do it silent (in batch mode)
-z             -> gzip files before scp (slow network)

```

5.2.6 Generate case.inst (instgen_lapw)

This script generates **case.inst** from a **case.struct** file. It is used automatically in **init.lapw**, if **case.inst** is not present. Using some options (see below) it allows to define the spin-state of all/certain atoms. Note: the label "RMT" is necessary in **case.struct**.

```

instgen_lapw [-h -s -up -dn -nm -ask]
-h:    generate this message
-s:    silent operation (do not ask)
-up:   generates spin-up configuration for all atoms (default)
-dn:   generates spin-dn configuration for all atoms
-nm:   generates non-magnetic configuration for all atoms
-ask:  asks for each atom which configuration it should generate

```

5.2.7 Set R-MT values in your case.struct file (setrmt_lapw)

This perl-script executes **x nn** and uses its output to determine the atomic sphere radii (obeying recommended ratios for H, sp-, d- and f- elements). It is called automatically within **init.lapw** or you may call it in the **STRUCTEDITOR@w2web** or explicitly using:

```
setrmt_lapw case [-r X ] [-a XX:A,YY:B, ... ] [-orig]
```

where **case** gives the head of the **case.struct** file. You may specify a reduction (-r) of the RMTs by X percent in order to allow for structural optimizations. If you already know which RMT values you want to know for a certain element, you can fix them using eg. (-a Mg:1.9). The new **setrmt_lapw** version knows optimal RKmax values for all atoms and makes a finer tuning of the different RMTs. with (-orig) you can go back to the old scheme which distinguishes only between H, sp- and d-elements. It creates **case.struct.setrmt** with the modified RMTs.

5.2.8 create_add_atom_clmsum_lapw

The script **create_add_atom_clmsum_lapw** creates a better starting density for a case, where you already have a scf-solution for a "similar" case. "Similar" means, that the new and old case are identical except for ONE atom (adding an adsorbate,...).

This script is "experimental" and only for experienced users. It is useful in BIG cases, which are difficult to converge from **init.lapw**. Modifications and adaptations to a specific case are probably necessary.

5.2.9 Create case.int file (for DOS) (configure_int_lapw)

This script creates the input file **case.int** for the program **tetra** and allows to specify which partial DOS (atom, l and m) should be calculated. It was provided by Morteza Jamal (m.jamal57@yahoo.com).

You can specify interactively:

```
total          (for plotting 'Total Dos')
N              (to select atom N)
  s,p,d,...    (to select a set of PDOS for previously selected atom N)
                use labels as listed in the header of your case.qtl file)
end            (for exit)
```

There is also a "batch" (non-interactive) mode:

```
configure_int_lapw -b total 1 tot,d,d-eg,d-t2g 2 tot,s,p end
```

which will prepare case.int (eg. for the TiC example) with:

```
tic          #Title
-1.000   0.00250   1.200   0.003   #Emin, DE, Emax, Gauss-Broad
      8          #Number of DOS
  0 1 total-DOS
  1 1 tot-Ti
  1 4 d-Ti
  1 5 d-eg-Ti
  1 6 d-t2g-Ti
  2 1 tot-C
  2 2 s-C
  2 3 p-C
```

5.2.10 Check for running WIEN jobs (check_lapw)

This script searches for **.running.*** files within the current directory (or the directory specified with "-d full_path_directory") and then performs a **ps** command for these processes. If the specified process has not been found, it removes the corresponding **.running.*** file after confirmation (default) or immediately (when "-f" has been specified).

5.2.11 Cancel (kill) running WIEN jobs (cancel_lapw)

This script searches for **.running.*** files within the current directory (or the directory specified with "-d full_path_directory") and then kills the corresponding process after confirmation (default) or immediately (when "-f" has been specified). It is particularly useful for killing "k-point parallel" jobs.

5.2.12 Extract critical points from a Bader analysis (extractaim_lapw)

This script extracts the critical points (CP) after a Bader analysis (**x aim (-c)**) from **case.outputaim**. It sorts them (according to the density), removes duplicate CPs, converts units into $\text{\AA}, e/\text{\AA}^3, \dots$ and produces **critical_points_ang**.

It is used with: **extractaim_lapw case.outputaim**

5.2.13 scfmonitor_lapw

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Hartmut Enkisch
 Institute of Physics E1b
 University of Dortmund
 Dortmund, Germany
 enkisch@pop.uni-dortmund.de

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

It produces a plot of some quantities as function of iteration number (a maximum of 6 quantities is possible at once) from the **case.scf** file as specified on the commandline using **analyse_lapw** and GNUPLOT. This plot is updated in regular intervals.

You can call **scfmonitor_lapw** using:

```
scfmonitor_lapw [-h] [-i n] [-f case.scf] [-p] arg1 [arg2 .. arg6]
```

```
-h          help switch
-i n       show only the last n iterations
-f scf-file use "scf-file" instead of the default "case.scf"
-p        produces file "scfmonitor.png" instead of X-window plot
arg1,...  arguments to monitor (like ":ENE" or ":DIS" , see analyse_lapw )
```

The **scfmonitor** can also be called directly from **w2web** using the "Analyse" tool.

In order to have a reasonable behavior of scfmonitor the GNUPLOT window should stay in background. This can be achieved by putting a line into your **.Xdefaults** file like:

```
gnuplot*raise: off
```

*Note: It does not make sense to start **scfmonitor** before the first cycle has finished because no **case.scf** exists at this point.*

5.2.14 analyse_lapw

The script **analyse_lapw** is usually called from **scfmonitor_lapw**. It "greps" from an scf-file the specified arguments and produces **analyse.out**.

analyse_lapw is called using:

```
analyse_lapw [-h] scf-file arg1 [arg2 arg3 arg4 arg5 arg6]
```

```
-h          help switch
scf-file    "scf-file" to analyse (there's no default "case.scf" !)
arg1,...    arguments to analyse:
atom independent:  :ENE :DIS :FER :MMT :VOL :GAP
atom iii dependent: :CTOiii :CUPiii :CDNiii :NTOiii :NUPiii :NDNiii
                  :DToiii :DUPiii :DDNiii :RTOiii :EFGiii :HFFiii
                  :MMIiii
vector quantities: :FORiii[x/y/z] :POSiii[x/y/z] :FGLiii[x/y/z]
                  where      magnitude      z      z      is the default
```

For vector quantities like **:FGLiii** or **:POSiii** (useful with **case.scf_mini**) one can specify the respective coordinate by adding **x/y/z** to the corresponding labels.

5.2.15 Check parallel execution (testpara_lapw)

testpara_lapw is a small script which helps you to determine an optimal selection for the file **.machines** for parallel calculations (see sec. 5.5).

5.2.16 Check parallel execution of lapw1 (testpara1_lapw)

testpara1_lapw is a small script which determines how far the execution of **lapw1para** has proceeded.

5.2.17 Check parallel execution of lapw2 (testpara2_lapw)

testpara2_lapw is a small script which determines how far the execution of **lapw2para** has proceeded.

5.2.18 grepline_lapw

Using

```
grepline_lapw :label 'filename*.scf' lines_for_tail or
grepline :label 'filename*.scf' lines_for_tail
```

you can get a list of a quantity “:label” (e.g. :ENE for the total energy) from several scf files at once.

5.2.19 initso_lapw

initso_lapw helps you to initialize the calculations for spin-orbit coupling. It helps together with **make_inso_lapw** (based on an idea of Morteza Jamal, m_jamal57@yahoo.com) to create/modify all required input files (**case.inso**, **case.in1**, **case.in2c**). In a spinpolarized case SO may reduce symmetry or equivalent atoms may become non-equivalent, and the script calls **symmetso** and will help you to find proper symmetries and setup the respective input files. It is called using

```
initso_lapw or
initso
```

and you should *carefully* follow the instructions and explanations of the script and the explanations for **case.inso** given in section 7.7. Since forces are not correct for atoms with SO, it can be very useful to suppress SO for light atoms (eg. the O-atoms in UO₂), because then one can optimize the O-positions.

5.2.20 init_hf_lapw

init_hf_lapw helps you to initialize the calculations for hybrid-DFT functionals. It creates several files (**case.inhf**, **case.in0.grr**), selects YS-PBE0 (see [Tran and Blaha, 2011]), changes some input files (**case.in0**) and calls **run_kgenhf_lapw** to generate the k-mesh for the HF calculation. It takes **-up** for spin-polarized cases.

For details of hybrid-DFT calculations see 4.5.8.

5.2.21 `init_mbj_lapw`

`init_mbj_lapw` helps you to initialize the calculations for a TB-mBJ (see [Tran and Blaha, 2009]) calculation, which usually requires a couple of steps done in proper order.

A proper sequence would be:

```
▶ init_mbj_lapw
▶ run_lapw -i 1
▶ init_mbj_lapw
▶ save_lapw xxxx.pbe
▶ run_lapw
```

The first call to `init_mbj_lapw` creates `case.inm_vresp` and sets "R2V" in `case.in0`. The second call of `init_mbj_lapw` creates `case.in0` and `case.in0_grr` with the proper input for mBJ. It also lets you select parameters of the original TB-mBJ potential, or the later adaption to semiconductors or insulators, or the original BJ method.

For details of TB-mBJ calculations see 4.5.10.

5.2.22 `vec2old_lapw`

`vec2old_lapw` moves `case.vector` files to `case.vector.old`. Usually called automatically just before `lapw1` when the iterative diagonalization (`run_lapw -it`) is specified. It also works for the k-parallel case including local \$SCRATCH directories (add `-p` as first argument, uses hosts from `.processes` and spin-polarization (`-up/-dn` switches).

For `runfsm_lapw` the sequence had to be changed and the switches `-updn` or `-dnup` forces `vec2old` to COPY `case.vectorup` to `case.vectorold` (and vice versa). In the `runfsm_lapw` case the corresponding `case.vector*.old` files are generated just AFTER `lapw2/lapwdm` and not BEFORE `lapw1`. Thus after `runfsm_lapw` has finished, the corresponding spin-up/dn vectors are `case.vector*.old` and NOT `case.vector*`.

The switches `-p -local` will copy \$SCRATCH/case.vector* to case.vector*. It will be done automatically when you run `x lapw2 -p -qt1`.

An alternative script `vec2pratt_lapw` was provided by L.D.Marks (l-marks@northwestern.edu) which together with `SRC.vecpratt` mixes the last two vectors (Pratt mixing) to generate `case.vector.old`. It is activated using the `-vec2pratt` switch in `run_lapw`.

5.2.23 `clmextrapol_lapw`

`clmextrapol_lapw` extrapolates the charge density (`case.clmsum/up/dn`) from old to new positions (or from old to new lattice parameters). It takes the density from the old positions (copied into `old.clmsum`) and subtracts an atomic superposition density (`new_super.clmsum`) from the old positions and adds an atomic superposition density from the new ones (generated by `dstart`). If `new_super.clmsum` (generated automatically by `init_lapw`) is not present, it will be generated and for the next geometry step an extrapolation will take place.

It is usually called from "`min_lapw`" after a geometry step has finished and a new struct file has been generated.

It can significantly reduce the number of scf-cycles for the new geometry step.

5.2.24 makescratch_lapw

makescratch_lapw **scratch-dir-name** checks the existense of the directory and eventually creates it (up to 3 levels deep). Usually called automatically by other Wien2k-scripts.

5.3 Structure optimization

5.3.1 Lattice parameters (Volume, c/a, lattice parameters)

Package optimize

The auxilliary program **optimize** (**x optimize**) generates from an existing **case.struct** (or **case.initial.struct**, which is generated at the first call of **optimize**) a series of struct files with various volumes (or c/a ratios, or other modified parameters) (depending on your input):

```
[1] VARY VOLUME with CONSTANT RATIO A:B:C
[2] VARY C/A RATIO with CONSTANT VOLUME (tetr and hex lattices)
[3] VARY C/A RATIO with CONSTANT VOLUME and B/A (orthorh lattice)
[4] VARY B/A RATIO with CONSTANT VOLUME and C/A (orthorh lattice)
[5] VARY A and C (2D-case) (tetragonal or hexagonal lattice)
[6] VARY A, B and C (3D-case) (orthorhombic lattice)
[7] VARY A, B, C and Gamma (4D-case) (monoclinic lattice)
[8] VARY C/A RATIO and VOLUME (2D-case) (tetr and hex lattices)
```

It also produces a shell-script **optimize.job** which looks similar to:

```
#!/bin/csh -f
foreach i ( \
    tic_vol_-10.0 \
    tic_vol_-5.0 \
    tic_vol_0.0 \
    tic_vol_5.0 \
    tic_vol_10.0 \
)
    cp $i.struct tic.struct
#   cp $i.clmsum tic.clmsum
#   x dstart
#   run_lapw -ec 0.0001 -inlnew 3 -renorm
run_lapw -ec 0.0001
set stat = $status
if ($stat) then
    echo "ERROR status in" $i
    exit 1
endif
save_lapw ${i}
#   save_lapw -f -d XXX $i
end
```

You may modify this script according to your needs: use **runsp_lapw** or even **min_lapw**, or specify different convergence parameters; modify the **save_lapw** command and change the save-name or save into a directory to separate e.g. "gga" and "lda" results. Eventually you may activate the line "**cp \$i.clmsum case.clmsum**" to use a previously saved clmsum file, e.g. from a calculation with smaller RKmax, ... and deactivate the "clmextrapol_lapw" lines, but usually the latter is so efficient that this is no longer recommended.

*Note: You must have a **case.clmsum** file (either from **init_lapw** or from a previous scf calculation) in order to run **optimize.job**.*

After execution of this script you should have a series of scf-files with energies corresponding to the modified parameters, which should allow you to find the corresponding equilibrium parameters. For the volume optimization an analysis tool is available, other tools are under development).

Using the script **grepline** (or the "Analysis ▢ Analyze multiple SCF-files" menu of **w2web**) you get a summary of the total energy vs. volume (c/a). The file **case.analysis** can be used in

eplot_lapw or **gibbs_lapw** to find the minimum total energy and the equilibrium volume (or c/a or b/a). Supported equation of states include the EOS2, Murnaghan and Birch-Murnaghan EOS.

```
grepline :ENE '*.scf' 1 > case.analysis
grepline :VOL '*.scf' 1 >> case.analysis
```

Alternatively you can also use **eplot_lapw** directly and the **case.analysis** file is generated automatically :

```
eplot_lapw -a vol
```

or

```
eplot -a "*" will analyse all scf files '*vol*.scf'
eplot -a pbe will analyse all scf files '*vol*pbe.scf'
```

Using such strategies also higher-dimensional optimizations (e.g. c/a ratio and volume) are possible in combination with the **-d** option of **save_lapw**.

For optimization of more degrees of freedom (2-4 lattice parameters), you can use the corresponding option and for analysis of the data the script **parabolfit_lapw** together with the program **eosfit6**. It performs a non-linear least squares fit, using a parabolic fit-function in your variables and get an analytic description of your energy surface. Please note, this is only a harmonic fit (no odd or higher terms) and the description may not be very good if your parameter range is large and/or the function is quite anharmonic, or you suffer from numerical noise.

For the determination of elastic constants see the description of ELAST in sec 8.5 and IRelast in sec 8.8.

Package 2DRoptimize

This program was contributed by:



Morteza Jamal
 Ghods City-Tehran,Iran
 email: m.jamal57@yahoo.com

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This package (see also [Reshak and Jamal, 2013]) performs a convenient 2D structure optimization (Volume and c/a for tetragonal, rhombohedral or hexagonal spacegroups). After initialization of a **case**, one generates a set of structures and a job-file **2Doptimize.job** using the command

```
set2D_lapw
```

This calls **setup2D** and you have to specify the changes in volume and c/a . The resulting **2Doptimize.job** script should be adapted (eg. use **min_lapw** instead of **run_lapw**; insert switches,...) and executed. Finally

```
ana2D_lapw
```

can be executed and will analyze the results. It uses a set of **case.Vconst*** files (produced by **2Doptimize.job** and stored also in subdirectory **Vconst**) and the **numbvcoa** file. **ana2D_lapw** checks the sensitivity of the results with the order of fitting (3,4 or 5th order polynomials) and lets you select the best one. Note: Fits of high order (and few “data points”) may lead to artificial results due to unphysical oscillations of the fit.

You can see results for

- energy vs. c/a for each volume,
- energy vs. volume (with optimized c/a) and
- c/a vs. volume.

At the end, **ana2D_lapw** calculates a and c lattice constants (and a_R, α_R for rhombohedral compounds) and checks the sensitivity of them to the order of fit (order of fit=3 or 4 or 5) when it finds the equation of c/a vs. volume and stores in **fitorder**.

Optionally you can specify more cases by rerunning **set2D_lapw**. Specify also your ‘‘old’’ **volume and c/a points again** (or leave them out on purpose in case they were very bad (eg. very far from the minimum). The old results will be taken automatically into account without recalculation (unless you modify **2Doptimize.job**, see the comments at the top of this file). Thus a “good” strategy is to use only 3x3 points (order of fit = 3) and in a second step you add points where they are needed.

When you want to rerun such an optimization with different parameters (RKmax, k-mesh, XC-potentials) modify the top of **2Doptimize.job** and set *answscf=no* and a new *savename* (eg. “_pbe_rk8_1000k”).

5.3.2 Minimization of internal parameters (min_lapw)

Most of the more complicated structures have free internal structural parameters, which can either be taken from experiment or optimized using the calculated **forces on the nuclei**.

Starting with WIEN2k_11.1 there are two possibilities to determine the equilibrium position of all individual atoms automatically (obeying the symmetry constraints of a certain space group). One can use either

- ▶ the shell script **min_lapw**, together with the program **mini**, which will run a scf-cycle, update the positions using the calculated forces and restarts a new scf cycle. This continues until forces drop below a certain value;
- ▶ or use the normal scf-scripts **run_lapw -min** where in **case.inm** the switch **MSR1** will be modified to **MSR1a** such that the charge density and the positions are simultaneously optimized during the scf-cycle.

At present we recommend the second (new) option, although there are cases where this scheme can be slower or may even fail to converge.

A typical sequence of commands for an optimization of the internal positions would look like:

- ▶ Generate struct file
- ▶ **init_lapw**
- ▶ **run_lapw -fc 1** [another runXX script or additional options are of course also possible] (this may take some time)
- ▶ Inspect the scf file whether you have significant forces (usually at least .gt. 5 mRy/bohr), otherwise you are more or less at the optimal positions (An experienced user may omit the **run_lapw** step and proceed directly from **init_lapw** to the next step)

Now you have to decide which method to use:

- ▶ **min_lapw** [**options**] (this may take some time)
 - it will generate a default **case.inM** (if not present) by:
 - * executing “x pairhess -copy ; cp case.inM.st case.inM ” (i.e. it sets up the PORT minimization option and calculates an approximate starting Hessian).
 - * when -nohess is specified, it will generate case.inM from SRC_templates with the NEW1 option (not recommended).
 - Without -NI switch min_lapw performs an initialization first:
 - * removes “histories” (case.broyd*, case.tmpM) if present;
 - * copies **.min_hess** to **.minrestart** (if present from previous min_lapw or x pairhess).
- ▶ or edit **case.inm** and put MSR1a (or MSEC1a) as “mixing method”. **save_lapw xxx** the original calculation and then continue with **run_lapw -fc 0.5 -ec 0.0001 -cc 0.001 [-it]**. It will run **x pairhess** (unless **case.inM** is already present) and then run (several hundreds) scf-cycles, simultaneously updating positions and charge densities. Once the forces seem to be smaller than the limit defined in **case.inM** it will switch to “mixing method” MSR1 and finalize the scf-cycle with fixed positions. Because of this, the final forces may not be as small as desired and eventually you have to restart this step using MSR1a again.

When using the second method we recommend you read carefully \$WIEN-ROOT/SRC_mixer/README_5.2.pdf. Overall the method is very good for semiconductors (or well behaved metals), and allows “tricks” like small k-mesh or small RKMax at the beginning of the minimization and using higher accuracy only towards the end.

The following text refers (mainly) to the first method using **min_lapw**:

When **case.scf** is not present, an scf-cycle will be performed first, otherwise the corresponding forces are extracted into **case.finM** and the program **mini** generates a new **case.struct** with modified atomic positions. The previous step is saved under **case_1/2/3...**. Then a new scf-cycle is executed and this loop continues until convergence (default: forces below 2mRy/bohr) is reached.

The last iteration of each geometry step is appended to **case.scf_mini**, so that this file contains the complete history of the minimization and can be used to monitor the progress (grep :ENE *mini; or :FORxxx ...).

By default (unless switch **-noex** is specified), min will call the script **clmextrapol_lapw** after the first geometry step and try to extrapolate the charge density to the new positions. This procedure usually significantly reduces the number of scf-cycles and is thus highly recommended.

mini requires an input file **case.inM** (see Sec. 8.15) which is created automatically and MUST NOT be changed while **min_lapw** is running (except the force tolerance, which terminates the optimization).

We recommend the PORT minimization method, a reverse-communication trust-region Quasi-Newton method from the Port library, which seems to be stable, efficient and does not depend too much on the users input (DELTA's, see below with NEWT). The PORT option also uses/produces a file **.min_hess**, which contains the (approximate) Hessian matrix (lower-triangle Cholesky factor) If you restart a minimization with different k-points, RMT, RKmax, ... or do a similar calculation (eg. for a different volume, ...) it will be copied to **.minrestart** (unless -nohess is specified), so that you start with a reasonable approximation for the Hessian. The program **pairhess**, which calculates the first Hessian, also prints out the average Hessian eigenvalue for the symmetric, symmetry-preserving modes in mRyd/au² as well as the minimum and maximum, and also the vibration frequencies. A list of these is given at the end of **case.pairhess**. Note that these are not all possible modes, but only the symmetry preserving ones. Therefore if you have prior information about the vibrations of the system you can adjust the rescaling term so the average

vibration frequency is about correct. (see the description of pairhess in 9.2). (In addition there is a program **eigenhess**, which will analyze the Hessian after the minimization has been completed. It also prints vibrational frequencies and may give you hints about dynamical instability of your system. Some more description is given in **\$WIENROOT/SRC_pairhess/README** and at the top of the output file **case.outputeig**.

When using PORT you may also want to check its progress using

```
grep :LABEL case.outputM
```

where :LABEL is :ENE (should decrease), :GRAD (should also go down, but could sometimes also go up for some time as long as the energy still decreases), :MIN (provides a condensed summary of the progress), :WARN may indicate a problem), :DD (provides information about the step sizes and mode used). Some general explanations are:

1) The algorithm takes steps along what it considers are good directions (using some internal logic), provided that these steps are smaller than what is called the trust-region radius. After a good step (e.g. large energy decrease) it expands the trust-region; after a bad one it reduces it. Sometimes it will try too large a step then have to reduce it, so the energy does not always go down. You can see this by using ":DD" and ":MIN" .

2) A grep on :MIN gives a condensed progress output, in which the most significant terms are E (energy in some rescaled units), RELDF (last energy reduction), PRELDF (what the algorithm predicted for the step), RELDX (RMS change in positions in Angstroms) and NPRELDF (predicted change in next cycle). Near the solution RELDF and RELDX should both become small. However, sometimes you can have soft modes in your structure in which case RELDX will take a long time before it becomes small.

3) A warning that the step was reduced due to overlapping spheres if it happens only once (or twice) is not important; the algorithm tested too large a step. However, if it occurs many times it may indicate that the RMT's are too big.

4) A warning "CURVATURE CONDITION FAILED" indicates that you are still some distance from the minimum, and the Hessian is changing a lot. If you see many of these, it may be that the forces and energy are not consistent.

Sometimes PORT gets "stuck" (often because of inconsistencies of energy and forces due to insufficient scf convergence or a very non-harmonic potential energy surface). A good alternative is NEW1, which is a "sophisticated" steepest-descent method with optimized step size. It can be very efficient in certain cases, but can also be rather slow when the potential energy surface is rather flat in one, but steep in another direction (eg. a weakly bound molecule on a surface, but constraining the sensitive parameters, like the bond distance of the molecule, may help).

Another alternative is NEWT, where one must set proper "DELTA's" and a "FRICTION" for each atom. Unfortunately, these DELTAs determine crucially how the minimization performs. Too small values lead to many (unnecessary) "geometry steps", while too large DELTAs can even lead to divergence (and finally to a crash). Thus you **MUST** control how the minimization performs. We recommend the following sequence after 2-3 geometry steps:

```
grep :ENE *mini
:ENE : ***** TOTAL ENERGY IN Ry =          -2994.809124
:ENE : ***** TOTAL ENERGY IN Ry =          -2994.813852
:ENE : ***** TOTAL ENERGY IN Ry =          -2994.818538
```

Good, since the total energy is decreasing.

```
grep :FGL001 *mini
:FGL001:  1.ATOM                0.000          0.000          18.219
:FGL001:  1.ATOM                0.000          0.000          12.375
:FGL001:  1.ATOM                0.000          0.000           7.876
```

Good, since the force (only a force along z is present here) is decreasing reasonably fast towards zero. You must check this for every atom in your structure.

When you detect oscillations or too small changes of the forces during geometry optimization, you will have to decrease/increase the DELTAs in **case.inM** and **rm case.tmpM**. (NOTE: You must not continue with modified DELTAs but keeping **case.tmpM**.) Alternatively, stop the minimization (**touch .minstop** and wait until the last step has finished), change **case.inM** and restart.

You can get help on its usage with:

```

min -h or min_lapw -h

PROGRAM:      min
USAGE:        min [OPTIONS]

OPTIONS:
-j JOB ->     job-file JOB (default: run_lapw -I -fc 1. -i 40 )
-noex ->     does not extrapolate the density for next geometry step
-p ->        adds -p (parallel) switch to run_lapw
-it ->       adds -it (iterative diag.) switch to run_lapw
-it1 ->      adds -it1 (it.diag. with recreating H_inv) switch to $job
-it2 ->      adds -it2 (it.diag. with reinitialization) switch to $job
-noHinv ->   adds -it -noHinv (it.diag. without H_inv) switch to $job
-sp ->       uses runsp_lapw instead of run_lapw
-nohess ->   removes .minrestart (initial Hessian) from previous minimization
-m ->        extract force-input and execute mini (without JOB) and exit
-mo ->       like -m but without copying of case.tmpM1 to case.tmpM
-h/-H ->    help
-NI ->       without initialization of minimization (eg. continue after a crash)
-i NUMBER -> max. NUMBER (50) of structure changes
-s NUMBER -> save_lapw after NUMBER of structure changes

CONTROL FILES:
.minstop     stop after next structure change

```

For instance for a spin-polarized case, which converges more difficultly, you would use:

```
min -j ``runsp_lapw -I -fc 1.0 -i 60``
```

5.4 Phonon calculations

Calculations of phonons is based on a program PHONON by K.Parlinski, which runs under MS-Windows and must be ordered separately (see <http://wolf.ifj.edu.pl/phonon/>). Alternatively you may also try the package PHONOPY by Atsushi Togo (see http://www.wien2k.at/reg_user/unsupported/).

You would define the structure of your compound in PHONON together with a supercell of sufficient size (e.g. 64 atoms). PHONON will then generate a list of necessary displacements of the individual atoms. The resulting file **case.d45** must be transferred to UNIX. Here you would run WIEN2k-scf calculations for all displacements and collect the resulting forces, which will be transferred back to PHONON (**case.dat** and/or **case.dsy**). With these force information PHONON calculates phonon at arbitrary q-vectors together with several thermodynamic properties.

5.4.1 init_phonon_lapw

init_phonon_lapw uses **case.d45** from PHONON and creates subdirectories **case_XX** and **case_XX.struct** files for all required displacements. It allows you to define globally RMT values for the different atoms and

- initializes every case individually (batch option of **init_lapw** is now supported) or

- initializes every second case (useful for pos. and neg. displacements, which have the same symmetry and thus only one initialization is necessary), or
- initializes only the first case and copies the files from the first case to all others. This is most convenient in low symmetry cases with P1 symmetry for all cases and thus just one `init_lapw` needs to be executed (while for higher symmetry a separate initialization is required (but computational effort is reduced).

Please use mainly **nn** to reduce equivalent atoms. **sgroup** might change the unitcell and than the collection of forces into the original supercell is not possible (or quite difficult).

A script **run_phonon** has been created. Modify it according to your needs (parallelization,...) and run all cases to selfconsistency.

Note that good force convergence is essential (at least 0.1 mRy/bohr) and if your structure has free parameters, either very good equilibrium positions must have been found before, or even better, use both, positive and negative displacements to average out any resulting error from non-equilibrium positions.

5.4.2 analyse_phonon_lapw

analyse_phonon_lapw uses the resulting scf files and generates the "Hellmann-Feynman"-file required by PHONON. When you have positive and negative displacements an automatic averaging will be performed. The resulting **case.dat** and **case.dsy** file should be transferred back to MS-Windows and imported into PHONON.

5.5 Running programs in parallel mode

This section describes two methods for running **WIEN2k** on parallel computers.

One method, parallelizing k-points over processors, utilizes c-shell scripts, NFS-file system and passwordless login (**public/private keys**). This method works with all standard flavors of Linux without any special requirements. The parallelization is very efficient even on heterogeneous computing environments, e. g. on heterogeneous clusters of workstations, but also on dedicated parallel computers and does NOT need very large network bandwidth.

The other parallelization method is based on fine grained methods, MPI, ScaLAPACK, and (optionally) ELPA. It is especially useful for larger systems, if the required memory size is no longer available on a single computer or when more processors than k-points are available. It requires a fast network (Infiniband) or a shared memory machine. Although for small systems (less than 50 atoms/cell) it is not as efficient as the simple k-point parallelization, the current MPI-version has been enhanced a lot and shows very good scaling with the number of processors for larger problems and most parts of WIEN2k. In any case, the number of processors and the size of the problem (number of atoms, matrixsize due to the plane wave basis) must be compatible and typically $\frac{N_{MAT}}{\sqrt{processors}} \geq 1500$ should hold.

The k-point parallelization can use a dynamic load balancing scheme and is therefore also usable on heterogeneous computing environments like networks of workstations or PCs, even if interactive users contribute to the processors' work load.

If your case is large enough, but you still have to use a few k-points, a combination of both parallelization methods is possible (always use k-point parallelism first if you have more than 1 k-point).

5.5.1 k-Point Parallelization

Parts of the code are executed in k-parallel, namely **lapw1**, **lapwso**, **hf**, **lapw2**, **lapwdm** and **optic**, **qt1**, **irrep**, **nmr**. These are the numerically intensive parts of most calculations.

Parallelization is achieved on the k-point level by distributing subsets of the k-mesh to different processors and subsequent summation of the results. The implemented strategy can be used both on a multiprocessor architecture and on a heterogeneous (even multiplatform) network.

To make use of the k-point parallelization, make sure that your system meets the following requirements:

NFS: All files for the calculation must be accessible under the same name and path. Therefore you should set up your NFS mounts in a cluster in such a way, that on all machines the path names are the same.

Remote login: **ssh** to all machines must be possible **without** specifying a password. This will be handled automatically for a **single** shared memory machine and when you have specified "shared memory" during **site_config** (setenv USE_REMOTE 0 in **\$WIENROOT/parallel_options**). Otherwise you must correctly specify public/private keys for **ssh**. This can be done by running "**ssh-keygen -t rsa**" and copying the **id_rsa.pub** key into **~/.ssh/authorized_keys** at the remote sites.

The command for launching a remote shell is platform dependent, and usually can be '**ssh**', '**rsh**' or '**remsh**'. It should be specified during installation when **siteconfig.lapw** is executed (see chapter 11).

5.5.2 MPI parallelization

Fine grained MPI parallel versions are available for the programs **dstart**, **lapw0**, **lapw1**, **lapwso**, **hf**, **nmr**, **nlvdw** and **lapw2**. This parallelization method is based on parallelization libraries, including MPI, ScaLapack, PBLas, ELPA, and FFTW_2 or FFTW_3 (lapw0). The required libraries are not included with **WIEN2k**. On parallel computers, however, they are usually installed. Otherwise, free versions of these libraries are available¹.

The parallelization affects the naming scheme of the executable programs: the fine grained parallel versions of **lapw0/1/2/so**, **dstart**, **hf**, **nmr**, and **nlvdw** are called **lapw0_mpi**, **lapw1[c]_mpi**, **lapw2[c]_mpi**, **lapwso_mpi**, **dstart_mpi**, **hf[c]_mpi**, **nmr[c]_mpi**, and **nlvdw_mpi**. These programs are executed by calls to the local execution environments, as in the sequential case, by the scripts **x**, **dstartpara**, **lapw0para**, **lapw1para**, **lapwsopara**, **hfpara**, **nlvdwpara** and **lapw2para**. On most computers this is done by calling **mpirun** and this must be configured using **siteconfig.lapw**.

5.5.3 How to use WIEN2k as a parallel program

To start the calculation in parallel, a switch must be set and an input file has to be prepared by the user.

- ▶ The switch **-p** switches on the parallelization in the scripts **x** and **run_lapw**.
- ▶ In addition to this switch the file **.machines** has to be present in the current working directory. In this file the machine names on which the parallel processes should be launched, and their respective relative speeds must be specified.

¹<http://www.mpich.org/>, <http://www.netlib.org/scalapack>, <http://elpa.mpcdf.mpg.de/>, <http://www.fftw.org/>

If the `.machines` file does not exist, or if the `-p` switch is omitted, the serial versions of the programs are executed.

Generation of all necessary files, starting of the processes and summation of the results is done by the appropriate scripts `lapw1para`, `lapwsopara`, `hfpara`, `nlvdwpara` `lapwdmpara` and `lapw2para` (when using `-p`), and parallel programs `dstart.mpi`, `lapw0.mpi`, `lapw1.mpi`, `lapwso.mpi`, `hf.mpi`, `nlvdw.mpi`, and `lapw2.mpi` (when using fine grained parallelization has been selected in the `.machines` file).

5.5.4 The `.machines` file

The following `.machines` file describes a simple example. We assume to have 5 computers, (alpha, ... epsilon), where epsilon has 4, and delta and gamma 2 cpus. In addition, gamma, delta and epsilon are 3 times faster than alpha and beta.:

```
# This is a valid .machines file
#
granularity:1
1:alpha
1:beta
3:gamma:2 delta epsilon
3:delta:4 epsilon:4
residue:delta:4
balance:
lapw0:gamma:2 delta:2 epsilon:4
dstart:gamma:2 delta:2 epsilon:4
nlvdw:gamma:2 delta:2 epsilon:4
```

To each set of processors, defined by a single line in this file, a certain number of k-points is assigned, which are computed in parallel. In each line the weight (relative speed) and computers are specified in the following form:

```
weight:machine_name1:number1 machine_name2:number2 ...
```

where **weight** is an integer (e.g. a three times more powerful machine should have a three times higher weight). Because nowadays one works mostly on homogeneous clusters, the weight (speed) of a machine is ONLY honored when the keyword **balance:** is also given. The name of the computer is **machine_name** [1/2/...], and the number of processors to be used on these computers are **number** [1/2/...]. If there is only one processor on a given computer, the **:1** may be omitted. Empty lines are skipped, comment lines start with #.

Assuming there are 8 k-points to be distributed in the above example, they are distributed as follows. The computers **alpha** and **beta** get 1 each. Two processors of computer **gamma** and one processor of computers **delta** and **epsilon** cooperate in a fine grained parallelization on the solution of 3 k-points, and four processors of computers **delta** and **epsilon** cooperate on the solution of 3 k-points. If there were additional k-points, they would be calculated by the first processor (or set of processors) becoming available. With higher numbers of k-points, this method ensures dynamic load balancing. If a processor is busy doing other (e.g., interactive) work, the overall calculation will not stall, but most of its work will be done by other processors (or sets of processors using MPI). This is, however, not an implementation for fail safety: if a process does not terminate (e.g., due to shutdown of a computer) the calculation will never terminate. It is up to the user to handle with such hardware failures by modifying the `.machines` file and restarting the calculation at the appropriate point.

During the run of `lapw1para` the file `.processes` is generated. This file is used by `lapw2para` (and some others) to determine which `case.vector*` to read. In case you need to create a `.processes` file for a NEW `.machines` file and don't want to run `lapw1` (for instance in a PBS-job with "`x lapw1 -p -qt1`") you can issue: `x lapw1 -p -d [-up]` to create an updated version of this file.

A "granularity" different from 1 (use eg. 3) allows for some load balancing in heterogeneous environments. Suppose you have 10 k-points and 2 nodes, `granularity:1` will start 2 jobs with 5 k-points each. However, if node 1 is heavily overloaded, node 2 will idle for quite some time and time will be wasted. With a larger granularity we would decompose the load into 4 or 6 parts. Two jobs would start first, but the next parts go to the node which is free because it has finished earlier. If you can be sure that load balancing is not an issue (eg. because you use a queuing-system and can be sure that you will get 100% of the cpus for your jobs) it is recommended to set

```
granularity:1
```

for best performance (less file I/O).

On shared memory machines it is advisable to add a "residue machine" to calculate the surplus (residual) k-points (given by the expression $\text{MOD}(klist, \sum_j \text{newweight}_j)$) and rely on the operating system's load balancing scheme. Such a "residue machine" is specified as

```
residue:machine_name:number
```

in the `.machines` file.

Alternatively, it is also possible to distribute the remaining k-points one-by-one (and not in one junk) over all processors. The option

```
extrafine:1
```

can be set in the `.machines` file.

When using "iterative diagonalization" or the `$SCRATCH` variable (set to a local directory), the k-point distribution must be "fixed". This is insured since the WIEN2k_16 version unless the "balance:" keyword is set. By default it will now distribute all k-points at once. If you have 9 k-points and 2 cores, you get 2 jobs with 5 and 4 k-points, respectively.

The lines

```
lapw0:gamma:2 delta:2 epsilon:4  
dstart:gamma:2 delta:2 epsilon:4  
nlvdw:gamma:2 delta:2 epsilon:4
```

defines the computers used for running `lapw0 mpi`, `dstart mpi`, and `nlvdw mpi`. In this example the 8 processors of the computers `gamma`, `delta`, and `epsilon` run `lapw0 mpi`, `dstart mpi`, and `nlvdw mpi` in parallel. The parallel `dstart` is useful for big cases, where core-leakages occurred and a core-density superposition is done automatically (activated by the file `.lcore`) during scf. Please note, parallelization in `lapw0` and `dstart` is done mainly over atoms, thus the number of useful cores is in general different than for `lapw1/2/so/hf`. The parallelization in `nlvdw` concerns mainly the FFT.

If fine grained parallelization is used, each set of processors defined in the `.machines` file is converted to a single file `.machine[1/2/. . .]`, which is used in a call to `mpirun` (or another parallel execution environment).

When using a queuing system (like SLURM, PBS, LoadLeveler or SUN-Gridengine) one can only request the NUMBER of processors, but does not know on which nodes the job will run. Thus a "static" `.machines` file is not possible. One can write a simple shell script, which will generate this file on the fly once the job has been started and the nodes are assigned to this job. Examples can be found at our web-site http://www.wien2k.at/reg_user/faq.

5.5.5 How the list of k-points is split

In the setup of the k-point parallel version of LAPW1 the list of k-points in `case.klist` is split into subsets according to the weights specified in the `.machines` file:

$$newweight_i = \left\lfloor \frac{weight_i * klist}{granularity * \sum_j weight_j} \right\rfloor$$

where $newweight_i$ is the number of k-points to be calculated on processor i. $newweight_i$ is always set to a value greater equal one.

A loop over all i processors is repeated until all k-points have been processed.

Speedup in a parallel program is intrinsically dependent on the serial or parallel parts of the code according to Amdahl's law:

$$speedup = \frac{1}{(1 - P) + \frac{P}{N}}$$

whereas N is the number of processors and P the percentage of code executed in parallel.

In **WIEN2k** usually only a small part of time is spent in the programs `lapw0`, `lcore` and `mixer` which is very small (negligible) in comparison to the times spent in `lapw1` and `lapw2`. The time for waiting until all parallel `lapw1` and `lapw2` processes have finished is important too. For a good performance it is therefore necessary to have a good load balancing by estimating properly the speed and *availability* of the machines used. We encourage the use of `testpara_lapw` or "*Utils.testpara*" from **w2web** to check the k-point distribution over the machines *before* actually running the programs in parallel.

While running `lapw1` and `lapw2` in parallel mode, the scripts `testpara1_lapw` (see 5.2.16) and `testpara2_lapw` (see 5.2.17) can be used to monitor the succession of parallel execution.

5.5.6 Flow chart of the parallel scripts

To see how files are handled by the scripts `lapw1para` and `lapw2para` refer to figures 5.1 and 5.2. After the `lapw2` calculations are completed the densities and the informations from the `case.scf2.x` files are summarized by `sumpara`.

Note: parallel `lapw2` and `sumpara` take two command line arguments, namely the `case.def` file but also a `number.of.processor` indicator.

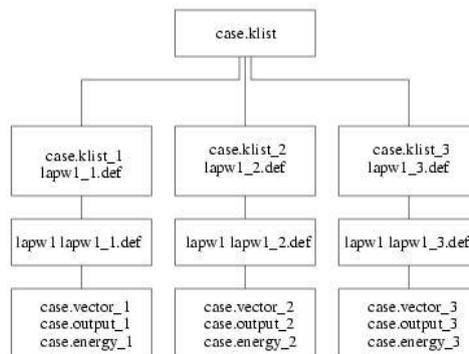
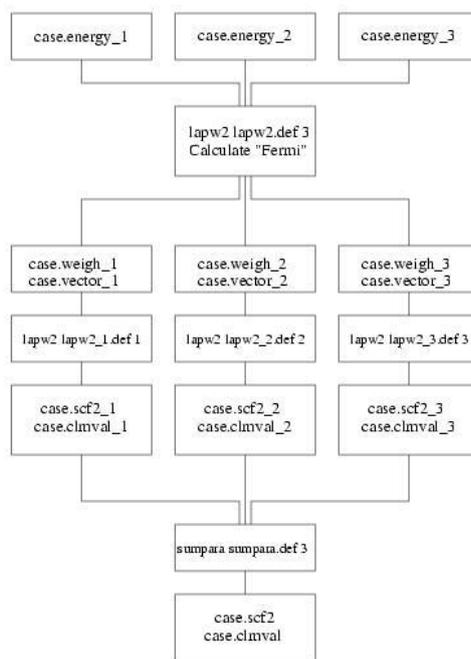


Figure 5.1: Flow chart of `lapw1para`

Figure 5.2: Flow chart of **lapw2para**

5.5.7 On the fine grained parallelization

The following parallel programs use different parallelization strategies:

dstart_mpi is parallelized over the atoms and the K-vectors. This method leads to good scalability as long as there are more atoms than processors. For very many processors, however, the speedup is limited, which is usually not at all critical, since the overall computing time of **dstart_mpi** is quite small. It uses an extra line "dstart:" in **.machines** to specify the parallelization.

lapw0_mpi is parallelized over the number of atoms and with a parallel FFT, which is important in case you have large FFT grids. This method leads to good scalability as long as there are more atoms than processors. For very many processors, however, the speedup is limited, which is usually not at all critical, since the overall computing time of **lapw0_mpi** is quite small. It uses an extra line "lapw0:" in **.machines** to specify the parallelization.

lapw1_mpi uses a two-dimensional processor setup to distribute the Hamilton and overlap matrices. For higher numbers of processors two-dimensional communication patterns (4x4=16, 8x8=64,..) are clearly preferable to one-dimensional communication patterns (never use 47 cores, as it gives a 47x1 pattern).

Let us assume, for example, 64 processors. In a given processing step, one of these processors has to communicate with the other 63 processors if a one-dimensional setup was chosen. In the case of a two-dimensional processor setup it is usually sufficient to communicate with the processors of the same processor row (7) or the same processor column (7), i. e. with 14 processors.

In WIEN2k the processor grid $P \times Q$ is chosen such that the shape of the grid is "as square as possible", i.e. the sum of P (the larger grid dimension) and Q (the smaller grid dimension) is minimal. This is done heuristically during the setup of the parallel calculation. Square grids ($P \times P$, i.e. 4, 9, 16, ... processors), if possible, give best performance due to ScaLAPACK. However, other grids are also possible (e.g. 4x2=8, 8x4=32, ...). The default setup for rectan-

gular grids is $P \times Q$, but for certain cases (depending on problem size, number of processors, ...) a $Q \times P$ grid can perform better – this can be set in the `lapw1` input file (see also Sect. 7.5.3).

k-point and mpi-parallelization can be used at the same time and are specified by the lines “speed:hostname:number_of_cores” in `.machines`.

hf_mpi If you use the `-hf` option for `run_lapw` (“full hybrid” scheme, see Sect. 4.5.8, or the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential, see Sect. 4.5.9), then the `hf` program will be by far the most time consuming part. For the hybrid functionals, the MPI-parallelization is done over the number of occupied bands or the matrix elements of the second variational Hamiltonian. There are two modes of MPI-parallelization (`-mode1` or `-mode2`, see details in Sect. 4.5.8). Choose first the best k-parallelization (if you have more than one k-point) and then a MPI-parallelization for the loops over the occupied bands/matrix elements. In the case of the Slater/SmBJ/KLI potential, this is one of the loop of the double loops over the occupied bands that is parallelized with MPI. The parallelization follows that of `lapw1` as specified in `.machines`, although the script uses `.processes`, which is created at the `lapw1` step.

nlvdw_mpi consists of a parallelization for the FFT (MPI FFTW), which is important in case of large FFT grids. This method leads to good scalability in particular for the memory.

lapwso_mpi is parallelized over the Hamiltonian. The size is determined by NE^2 , where NE is the number of eigenvalues in `lapw1` (determined by `EMAX` in `case.in1`). Since this size is usually much smaller than the Hamiltonian of `lapw1`, try to use quadratic processor grids ($4 \times 4 = 16$, $8 \times 8 = 64$). Memory size is larger than for the sequential code, but scales with $\sqrt{N/4}$. The parallelization follows that of `lapw1` as specified in `.machines`, although the script uses `.processes`, which has been created in the `lapw1` step.

lapw2_mpi is parallelized in two main parts: (i) The density inside the spheres is parallelized over atoms, and (ii) the fast Fourier transforms are done in parallel.

In addition the density calculation for each atom can be further parallelized by distributing the eigenvector on a certain subset of processors (usually 2-8). This is in principle not so efficient, but must be used if the memory requirement is too big (typically when `lapw2_mpi` crashes “without” reasons) or the network is slow and using more cpu-time but less network traffic is more efficient. Test it out for your hardware and specific case). You set it in `.machines` using

```
lapw2_vector_split:2
```

Otherwise, the parallelization follows that of `lapw1` as specified in `.machines`, although the script uses `.processes`, which is created at the `lapw1` step.

n timer_mpi in mode “current” supports the same parallelization strategy (mixed k-point and mpi-scheme) as `lapw1` or `lapw2`. The keyword

```
n timer_integ: node1 node2 ...
```

allows for an additional mpi-parallelization (over the atoms) in mode “integ” (see description in chapter 5.6).

If more than one k-point is distributed at once to `lapw1_mpi` or `lapw2_mpi`, they will be treated consecutively.

Depending on the parallel computer system and the problem size, speedups will vary to some extent. Matrix setup in `lapw1` should scale nearly perfect, while diagonalization (using ScaLAPACK) will not. Usually, “iterative” scales better than “full” diagonalization and is preferred for large scale computations. Scalability over atoms will be very good if processor and atom numbers are compatible. Running the fine grained parallelization over a 100 Mbit/s or 1 Gbit/s Ethernet network is not recommended, even for large problem sizes.

5.6 NMR calculations: Chemical shift and Knight shift

5.6.1 Chemical shift

Introduction

The calculation of the magnetic shielding tensor σ in insulators is based on a linear response theory described in [Laskowski and Blaha, 2012a, Laskowski and Blaha, 2012b, Laskowski and Blaha, 2014]. In short, the calculation of the NMR shielding tensor requires eigenvectors computed at seven different k-meshes: original and shifted by q in $\pm x, y, z$ direction, where q is small compared to the BZ size. Those eigenvectors are then used to compute the induced current and magnetic susceptibility. The induced current is afterwards integrated (Biot-Savart) to get the NMR shielding tensor.

The script `x_nmr_lapw` helps you to perform all the necessary steps and together with the `NMR`-program (see chapter 8.16) allows you to calculate the chemical shielding (and further the chemical shift with respect to some reference compound). It requires a converged scf-calculation of your case (and for the time being, the system should be insulating, see below for Knight shifts)

The implemented method uses an enriched APW basis set (extended number of local orbitals, called NMR-LOs). The setup of NMR-LOs is communicated to other programs (for instance `lapw1`) via the `case.in1_nmr` file (`case.in1c_nmr` for cases without inversion symmetry). Therefore after converging SCF or restoring a previously saved calculation, one has to create `case.in1_nmr`. The `case.in1_nmr` file should be generated using:

```
x_nmr_lapw -mode in1 [parameters]
```

The important parameter here is "`--nodes val`", where `val` is an integer used to determine the number of NMR-LOs in each orbital quantum number l (see [Laskowski and Blaha, 2012a, Laskowski and Blaha, 2014] for details). The default value (8) gives well a converged tensor, but it may also lead to an unnecessarily large basis size. In such cases the number of NMR-LOs may be reduced using a smaller number "`val`" (eg. 5), or by using "`-focus atom`" option that decreases the number of NMR-LOs for atoms other than the one specified. By default the algorithm implemented here adds NMR-LOs to the bases for all orbital numbers up to $l+1$, where l is the maximal explicitly specified orbital in `case.in1`. In a case where the magnetic susceptibility needs to be computed precisely, an $l+2$ limit may be necessary to reach full convergence. In such cases it is required to add an extra entrance for the next l -value in `case.in1` with a default 0.3 linearization energy (eg. a $l=2$ line for an O atom).

You may also consider to run `x_kgen` and create a (finer) k-mesh for the NMR calculation (in any case, the k-point dependency of the NMR tensor should always be tested explicitly by at least 2 different k-meshes).

After successful generation of a fine k-mesh and the `case.in1_nmr` file the NMR shielding tensor can be computed using:

```
x_nmr_lapw [parameters]
```

By default the `x_nmr` script will execute sequentially the following steps (you don't need to call them explicitly):

1. shifted k-mesh generation based on the existing k-mesh generated previously

```
x_nmr_lapw -mode klist
```

2. eigenvectors (`lapw1`)

x_nmr_lapw -mode lapw1

In a case where spin-orbit coupling needs to be included ("**x_nmr -so**") the proper eigenvectors are generated with:

x_nmr_lapw -mode lapwso

Similarly, for hybrid-DFT calculations the eigenvectors will be computed by

x_nmr_lapw -mode hf

The eigenvectors are computed sequentially in subdirectories:

```
nmr\_q0      (original k-mesh)
nmr\_pqx    (shifted in (+q,0,0) in Cartesian frame)
nmr\_mqx    (shifted in (-q,0,0) in Cartesian frame)
nmr\_pqy    (shifted in (0,+q,0) in Cartesian frame)
nmr\_mqy    (shifted in (0,-q,0) in Cartesian frame)
nmr\_pqz    (shifted in (0,0,+q) in Cartesian frame)
nmr\_mqz    (shifted in (0,0,-q) in Cartesian frame)
```

If you are using a **SCRATCH** variable different from ```./''`, it is recommended to define a **unique** scratch directory with

x_nmr_lapw -scratch /scratch/case_A

in order to avoid collisions between multiple NMR calculations running simultaneously.

3. weight files

x_nmr_lapw -mode lapw2

4. core wave functions

x_nmr_lapw -mode lcore

5. induced current density and magnetic susceptibility

x_nmr_lapw -mode current

The current is written to **case.current_sp(x,y,z)**, **case.current_int(x,y,z)**, where x,y,z are the Cartesian directions of external magnetic field. The current density is UNSYMMETRIZED with respect to irreducible BZ. In order to get a symmetrized current for plotting purposes the full BZ sampling has to be used (**x kgen -fbz**). The magnetic susceptibility is written to **case.xim**.

6. integration of current density

x_nmr_lapw -mode integ

The full NMR tensor and other related quantities can be found in **case.outputnmr.integ**. The isotropic chemical shift σ_{iso} and its anisotropy is printed under the label `":NMR-TOTxxx"` (in ppm) and `":NMRASYxxx"` (Haerberlen convention):

```
:NMRTOT001 ATOM: Te 1 NMR(total/ppm) Sigma-ISO= 1295.27 Sigma-xx= 1356.01 Sigma-yy= 1356.01 Sigma-zz= 1173.79
:NMRASY001 ATOM: Te 1 NMR(total/ppm) ANISO(delta-sigma)= -182.21 ASYM(eta) = 0.000 SPAN= 182.21 SKEW=-1.000
```

The steps 1) to 6) are executed one after another by **x_nmr** script, there is no need to run through them manually. However if there is need to recompute the current without changing eigenvectors (for analysis purposes), steps 5) and 6) can be executed using

x_nmr_lapw -noinit

Or when one needs to compute only initialization steps 1) to 4)

x_nmr_lapw -initonly

may be used.

Options

All options of the `x_nmr` script can be seen using:

`x_nmr.lapw -h`

```
-h/h          print this message

-mode modeid  runs in specific mode given by modeid. If mode is not defined,
              runs sequence needed for actual calculations (klist,lapw1,[lapwso],
              lapw2, lcore, current, integ), however preceding execution in mode inl
              is still required. modeid can be:
              inl   (initialize case.inl_nmr, adds extra LO)
              testval (testing case.inl_nmr)
              klist  (initialize shifted k-lists )
              lapw1  (executes lapw1)
              lapwso (executes lapwso, only after lapw1 step)
              hf     (runs hf on top of lapw1, only after lapw1 step)
              lapw2  (executes lapw2 for weights, only after lapw1, lapwso or hf)
              lcore  (executes lcore)
              current (generate induced current)
              integ  (integrates current and computes nmr shielding parameters)
              plot   (plot of the induced current, uses extra input file
                    case.innmrplot, generated automatically if not present)

-noinit       executes mode current and integ
-intonly      executes modes klist, lapw1, [lapwso], lapw2, lcore

-so           executes mode lapwso
-orb          adds LDA+U to lapw1 or lapwso

-hf           executes mode hf between lapw1 and lapw2 (as this takes long time,
              you certainly should run this in parallel. If you have more cores,
              use -hf -hfdir [nmr_q0, nmr_pqx, nmr_mqx ...] in parallel)
-hfdir subdir prepares HF vectors (starting from lapw1 and ending with lcore)
              for the subdir=[q0, pqx, mqx, ...]. It allows more parallelization
              as all "subdir"s can be run with a different .machines file in parallel.
-redklist     uses a reduced k-list (case.klist_rfbz) for the HF potential
              (note, the general HF k-mesh must be the same as in the scf)
-newklist     uses the option newklist for the HF potential
-diaghf       diagonal approximation to HF (only eigenvalues updated)

-p            run in k-point or mpi parallel mode
-quota XXX    calculations in junks of XXX k-points (save disk space)

-case name    set the casename to name, otherwise the current dir name is used
-up           include spin polarisation (up spin)
-dn           include spin polarisation (dn spin)
-save dir     saves result in directory dir
-scratch scratch_dir sets (and creates if necessary) the scratch directory for
              storing vectors
```

Mode specific parameters (ignored by others):

```
mode: inl
  -nodes val    number of nodes of the top radial function, default = 8
  -focus val   index or name of an atom of interest, if not set then all
  -ovlpmx val   maximum allowed overlap between top (energy) radial function
                from inl and NMR LO (default 0.6)

mode: testval
  -up/dn        include spin polarization (up/dn spin)
  -orb          add LDA+U switch to lapw1

mode: klist
  -q val        sets the q to value, if not defined uses default of 0.005

mode: lapw1 / lapw2 / lapwso
  -p            run in k-point or mpi parallel mode
```

```

-up/dn          include spin polarization (up/dn spin)
-orb           add LDA+U switch to lapw1
mode: hf
-up/dn          include spin polarization (up/dn spin)
-hfdir subdir  prepares HF vectors (starting from lapw1 up to lcore)
               for the subdir=[q0, pqx, mqx, ...]. It allows additional
               parallelization as all "subdir"s can be run with a different
               .machines file in parallel.
-redklist      allows to use a reduced k-list (case.klist_rfbz) for the HF
               potential (note, the general HF k-mesh must be the same as
               in the scf)
-newklist      uses the option newklist for the HF potential
-diaghf        diagonal approximation to HF (only eigenvalues updated)

mode: current
-up/dn          include spin polarization (up/dn spin)
-so           use lapwso vectors
-hf           use hf vectors
-emin val     overrides the valence bands minimum
-emax val     overrides the valence bands maximum
-iemin val    sets lowest valence band to val
-iemax val    sets highest valence band to val
-filt_cxyz_o iat l  filter coupling matrix element (<OS|COUPOP|ES>,make_cxyz)
                  the occupied states <OS|. Leaves only nonzero alm for iat
                  and l (|FOP_oc>=SUM_es(|ES><ES|COUPOP|OS>/ (ENE_os-ENE_es)
-filt_cxyz_q iat l  filter in coupling matrix elements (<OS|COUPOP|ES>,make_cxyz)
                  the empty states |ES>. Leaves only nonzero alm for iat
                  and l (|FOP_oc>=SUM_es(|ES><ES|COUPOP|OS>/ (ENE_os-ENE_es)
-filt_curr_o iat l  filter in current density (make_current_sp,j(r)=<OS|JOP|FOP>)
                  the occupied states OS. Leaves only nonzero alm for iat and l.
-filt_curr_fop iat l  filter in current density (make_current_sp,j(r)=<OS|JOP|FOP>)
                  the perturbation w-f |FOP>. Leaves only nonzero alm for
                  iat and l
      For all -filt_* if (iat .eq. 0) do only interstitial contribution
      For all -filt_* if (l .lt. 0) apply and sum all l channels
-nocc          do not add core states to the Green function
-noduc        do not add du (radial derivative of u) to the Green function
-scissor val  applies scissor shift to conduction bands
-coreonly     only core contribution
-xionly       calculate only macroscopic magnetic susceptibility
-noxi         do not calculate macroscopic magnetic susceptibility
-fbz          k-sampling uses full BZ (no symmetrization of xi)
-metal        should be set in case of metals
-kbT XX       sets kbT for Fermi level smearing in metals for Green function
mode: integ
-nocore       subtract core contribution
-up/dn        include spin polarization (up/dn spin)
mode: plot    (note: current is not symmetrized, must use full BZ sampling)
-nocore       subtract core contribution
-up/dn        include spin polarization (up/dn spin)

```

Additional notes

Parallelization :

x_nmr_lapw -p

will execute **lapw1**, **lapw2** and **x_nmr -mode current -p** in k-point parallel mode following the standard WIEN2k scheme. The standard **.machines** file is used in this case. A mixed k-point/mpi parallelization (if more then one core is assigned to one k-point) is also implemented for **x_nmr -mode current -p**. The integration step **x_nmr -mode integ -p** supports mpi parallelization over atoms. In order to use it, the following line has to be added to the **.machines** file:

```
nmr_integ: $proc_list
```

where **\$proc_list** is a list of processors.

NMR and hybrid DFT :

It is possible to combine hybrid-DFT and nmr calculations, but note that this is quite expensive, in particular because of additional NMR-local orbital AND the need for ALL eigenvalues, which makes the **hf** step MUCH more expensive than for a normal scf calculation (and we need calculations for 7 different k-meshes). We therefore recommend a good parallelization (if possible, over ALL k-points and in addition with mpi over the (un)occupied bands). After mode in1 run:

```
x_nmr_lapw -p -hf
```

or, if you have enough cores create several different **.machines** files and run the 7 directories in parallel:

```
cp .machine_q0 .machines
x_nmr_lapw -p -hfdir q0 &
cp .machine_pqx .machines
x_nmr_lapw -p -hfdir pqx &
...
```

Analyses :

```
x_nmr_lapw -p -noinit -emin xx [-emax yy]
```

allows you to separate the contributions to the magnetic shielding according to the energy range (in Ry) of the valence bands (eg. the contributions from a “p-band” and a “d-band”, ...). The switch **-noinit** runs only the modes current and integ. Additional analysis is possible with the **-filt** options, but requires some understanding of the underlying formalism (see the NMR papers by [Laskowski and Blaha, 2012a, Laskowski and Blaha, 2012b, Laskowski and Blaha, 2014, Laskowski and Blaha, 2015a]).

Current plotting :

You can also plot the induced current (it needs the **dx** Dataexplorer software), but since the current is not symmetrized, you need to run first with a full k-mesh. Use

```
x kgen -fbz # for plotting purposes this can be on a smaller k-mesh
x_nmr_lapw
x_nmr_lapw -plot # prepares current.dx and current_x/y/z.dx files
current2dx.lapw
```

5.6.2 Knight shifts

For paramagnetic metals, the **Knight shift** dominates usually the **Chemical shift**, which comes from the Fermi-contact term due to the spin-polarization at E_F [Laskowski and Blaha, 2015b, Laskowski et al., 2017]. The contact term can be calculated in an extra directory using a spin-polarized setup and a magnetic field applied self-consistently in **lapw0**. Copy **case.struct** into a new directory and execute:

```
instgen -nm # generate nonmagnetic atomic configurations
init_lapw -sp -fermit 0.004 -numk XXX ... # use a very good k-mesh and
fermi-smearing
runsp.c.lapw -c 0.00001 [-p] ... # run scf with zero moment
cp $WIENROOT/SRC_templates/case.vorbup_100T case.vorbup # contains
the 100 T field
cp $WIENROOT/SRC_templates/case.vorbdn_100T case.vorbdn
runsp_lapw -orbc -cc 0.000001 [-p] ... # scf calculation with field
grepline :HFF0XX case.scf # get the hyperfine field for atom XX
save_lapw 100T XXX-kpoints_fermit-4 # save the calculation
```

Now create a better k-mesh (a rough estimate is to use about 500000 k-points for a one-atomic unit cell, and this mesh can be reduced by division with the number of atoms/cell) and repeat the `runsp_lapw` step. Check convergence. Then modify `case.in2(c)` and choose another temperature smearing (eg. 2mRy and/or 6 mRy). The contact term of the shielding can be obtained from the HFF vales in the scf file (in kGauss) as: $\sigma_c[ppm] = -HFF * 1000$ (for a 100 T field, mind the minus sign).

You can also get the spin-susceptibility from the total induced magnetic spin moment (:MMTOT) using:

$$\chi_s[10^6 \text{ cm}^3 \text{ mol}^{-1} \text{ cell}^{-1}] = \frac{M[\mu_B]}{\text{Volume}[\text{bohr}^3] * B[T]} * 6.258116 \quad (5.1)$$

which could be added to the orbital susceptibility to get the total molar susceptibility.

Another contribution, which is usually small, but can sometimes be large (in very anisotropic cases) is the spin-dipolar contribution [Laskowski et al., 2017]. After a converged scf calculation including the magnetic field (as above), copy `case.indm` from `$WIENROOT/SRC.templates`, select the proper atom and l=0-3 and change the last line (r-index, (l,s)index) to "3 5". Then run `x lapwdm -up/dn . . .`. From the difference of the total :XOP0xx values in the `case.scfdmup/dn` files (in T) you get the spin dipolar contribution $\sigma_{sd}[ppm]$ by multiplication with -10000 (for a field of 100 T, mind the minus sign).

Of course, also the orbital contribution is non-negligible in metallic compounds and one should also calculate the chemical shift (see above). Run `xnmr -metal [-p] [-nox] [-quota yyy]`. *Please note: you will usually need an ENOURMOUS k-mesh (more than 50000 k-points), and also check convergence with respect to the fermi smearing 0.00x parameter. In case of diskspace problems use -quota yyy, so that the partial vector files contain only yyy k-points.* The -nox parameter excludes the contributions from both, the spin and orbital part of the macroscopic susceptibility, because we have found that this quantity is in most cases still an order of magnitude more difficult to converge, but gives only a small contribution to the shielding (a few ppm). In principle you could run `xnmr -noinit -metal -kbT 0.00x -xonly` and check the corresponding susceptibility in `case.xim`. If you can reach convergence, you could add its contribution in the final integration using `xnmr -mode integ`.

5.7 Wannier functions (wien2wannier)

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Wien2Wannier by J.Kunes, P.Wisgott and E.Assmann. Please cite the following paper when using it:
 J.Kunes, R.Arita, P.Wisgott, A.Toschi, H.Ikeda, K.Held,
 Comp.Phys.Commun. 181, 1888 (2010)
<http://wien2wannier.github.io/>
 Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

`wien2wannier` is an interface program between `WIEN2k` and `WANNIER90` (<http://www.wannier.org/>) to obtain maximally localized Wannier functions from WIEN2k calculations. It provides the necessary overlap matrices for the construction of Wannier functions and besides some auxilliary programs it also contains a package for plotting the resulting Wannier functions

in real space. With this interface, the “whole world of WANNIER90”, i.e. applications which rely on maximally localized Wannier functions and the resulting hopping parameters (Transport, Berry phases (see Chapter 5.8), DMFT) can be combined with **WIEN2k**. **WANNIER90** must be installed separately from <http://www.wannier.org/> and should be cited when using it [Mostofi et al., 2008].

5.7.1 Usage

This section contains only a very brief summary of **wien2wannier**. Please consult the detailed **wien2wannier_usersguide.pdf** for more details, which is available from **\$WIENROOT/SRC_w2w** or the “textbooks” site at <http://www.wien2k.at>. For a quick reference, see also the plain-text file **CHEATSHEET** in **\$WIENROOT/SRC_w2w**.

Preparatory steps

Before running **wien2wannier**, one needs a converged **WIEN2k** calculation. Additionally, during the setup for **wien2wannier**, the bands which are to be taken into account will have to be specified, and the main character (e.g., d bands on atom 2) of these bands should be known. To obtain this information, a combination of partial DOS and bandstructure, or a band character plot is often necessary (e.g. **spaghettis** fat bands option, or SpaghettiPrimavera and prima.py, available in the unsupported software section of the WIEN2k website).

- ▶ Converge a Wien2k calculation: **run[sp|sp_c] OPTIONS**
- ▶ obtain band structure and partial DOS
- ▶ identify target bands and band characters

Then create a subdirectory with the necessary files using:

- ▶ **prepare_w2wdir TARGET**

which also gets the Fermi energy from **case.scf** (or **case.scf2**, if **case.scf** is not present (take care after x lapw2 -qtl -band!)) and change into this new directory **TARGET**.

Interface and Wannierization

- ▶ **init_w2w [-up|-dn]** generates various input files and performs the following steps:
 - **x kgen -fbz** Prepares an **unshifted** k-mesh in the full BZ. Of course, the mesh-density influences the quality of localization of the Wannier functions.
 - **x findbands**: looks in **case.output1** for bands in a given energy range $[E_{min}; E_{max}]$ (in eV with $E_F=0$), and outputs the corresponding band indices $b_{min}; b_{max}$. To choose the energy window of interest, consult the (partial) DOS and/or a band structure plot.
 - **write_inwf**: prepares the main input file **case.inwf** for the interface. The band indices $b_{min}; b_{max}$ have to be specified, and initial projections A_{mn} may be given in terms of atomic sites and appropriate spherical harmonics.
 - **write_win** writes the input file **case.win** for **wannier90.x** on the basis of **case.inwf** and other files.
 - **x wannier90 -pp** reads the k-mesh in **case.win** and writes a list of nearest-neighbor k-points to **case.nnkp**.
- ▶ **x lapw1 OPTIONS**: computes the eigenvectors on the full-BZ k-mesh
 - you may use **.machines** and -p, -up/-dn, -orb,

– you may also consider spin-orbit: **x lapwso OPTIONS**

- ▶ **x w2w [-up|-dn] [-p] [-so]**: computes the overlaps $M_{mn}(k, b)$, initial projections $A_{mn}(k)$ and eigenvalues E_n , and writes them to **case.mmn**, **case.amn**, and **case.eig**.
- ▶ **x wannier90 [-up|-dn] [-so]**: computes the $U_{mn}(k)$ by maximum localization. Output is stored in **case.wout**.

Verification and Postprocessing

After a successful WANNIER90 run, one should check if the centers and spreads of the Wannier functions (printed in **case.wout**) are sensible. Another important consistency check is to compare the Wannier-interpolated bandstructure to the one computed by WIEN2k. **wien2wannier** also provides programs to create a real-space plot of the Wannier functions.

- ▶ compare band structures:
With the option “hr_plot=T” in **case.win**, WANNIER90 writes a bandstructure derived from the Wannier-interpolated Hamiltonian $H(k)$ to **case.band.dat**. To compare this to the bandstructure computed by spaghetti, you can use **gnuplot**, using the command (including a conversion from Bohr to Å)
- ```
gnuplot case_band.dat \\
p 'case.spaghetti_ene' u ($4*1.89):5, 'case_band.dat' w l
```

The steps for **plotting** of Wannier functions are:

- ▶ **write\_inwplot**: asks for a real-space grid on which the Wannier functions should be plotted, and writes **case.inwplot**.
- ▶ **x wplot -wf m [-up|-dn] [-p] [-so]** evaluates Wannier function number  $m$  on the real-space grid, and writes the density  $|w_m(r)|^2$  to **case.m.psink** and the phase  $\arg w_m(r)$  to **case.m.psiarg**.
- ▶ use positions from **case.wout**
- ▶ **wplot2xsf** converts all **case\*.psink** and **case\*.psiarg** files in the directory to the corresponding **xsf** files which can be opened by XCrySDen. It can also shift the origin according to **case.centres.xyz**.
- ▶ **xcrysdem --xsf case.m.xsf** (or **VESTA**) visualizes the Wannier functions. Pick Tools → Data Grid from the menu and press OK. In the isosurface controls window choose an appropriate isovalue, e.g. 0.1, and check the Render +/- isovalue box.

### 5.7.2 Help and FAQ

Additional information about all programs can be accessed via the help flag, **program -h**.

And of course, read the detailed **wien2wannier\_userguide.pdf** in **\$WIENROOT/SRC\_w2w**. In particular there is a FAQ section, which may answer your question.

## 5.8 Spontaneous Polarization, Piezoelectricity and Born Charges (BerryPI)

This program was contributed by:



```

init_lapw -b ... # initialize wien2k
run_lapw ... # run scf cycle
berrypi -k6:6:6 # run berrypi

```

where `-k` defines a suitable k-mesh. This will give you the corresponding x,y,z components of the polarization as:

```

=====
Value | spin | dir(1) | dir(2) | dir(3)

Electronic polarization (C/m2) sp(1) [-9.684673e-12, -2.406503e-13, 4.879618e-01]
Ionic polarization (C/m2) sp(1) [1.365657e-11, 1.365657e-11, -1.760570e-01]
Tot.spin polariz.=Pion+Pel(C/m2) sp(1) [3.971897e-12, 1.341592e-11, 3.119048e-01]

TOTAL POLARIZATION (C/m2) both [3.971897e-12, 1.341592e-11, 3.119048e-01]
=====

```

Now copy all files to the `case0` directory, rename the files and change the struct file such that it corresponds to the undistorted (cubic) structure (keeping all other inputs identical):

```

cd ../cp -r case1 case0;cd case0;rename_files case1 case0
edit case0.struct # create undistorted structure
x dstart # new starting density
run_lapw ... # run scf cycle
berrypi -k6:6:6 # run berrypi

```

The spontaneous polarization in z-direction is defined as the difference in z component of polarization between the non-centrosymmetric  $P_z(\lambda_1)$  and centrosymmetric structure  $P_z(\lambda_0)$ . In this case  $P_z(\lambda_0) = 0$  (output not shown) and the resultant spontaneous polarization is  $P_s = 0.31$  C/m<sup>2</sup>. Please consider the effects of possible  $\pi$  wrapping, so in general the smallest possible value should be considered. If there is a suspect of  $\pi$ -wrapping artifacts, it is useful to study intermediate structures (between  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_0$ ) and ensure continuity in the evolution of  $P_z$ .

### 5.8.3 Born effective charges

The Born effective charge  $Z_{s,\alpha\beta}^*$  of an atom  $s$  is defined as the change in polarization due to a displacement of its position. These charges are also used to estimate the LO/TO splitting of the optical vibrational modes at  $\Gamma$ .

For the calculation of the Born effective charge of As in GaAs one has first to create a "P"-type supercell with 4 formula units/cell (see limitations above). One of the 4 As atoms has to be displaced along the z-axis from its equilibrium position by  $+0.01(\lambda_1)$  and  $-0.01(\lambda_2)$  in fractional coordinates. Then perform (identical) WIEN2k calculations for the two structures and run **berrypi -k6:6:6**. The two calculations yield lines like:

```

"lambda1"
ELECTRONIC POLARIZATION
=====
Value | spin | dir(1) | dir(2) | dir(3)

...
Berry phase (rad) [-pi ... +pi] up+dn [3.151667e-10, -2.544453e-09, -1.081339e+00]
Electronic polarization (C/m2) sp(1) [2.441627e-11, -1.971212e-10, -8.377237e-02]
=====
IONIC POLARIZATION
=====
Elem. | Fractional coord. | spin |val| dir(1) | dir(2) | dir(3)

```

```

Total ionic phase wrap. (rad) sp(1) [3.686359e-09, 3.686359e-09, 9.424778e-01]
Ionic polarization (C/m2) sp(1) [2.855857e-10, 2.855857e-10, 7.301465e-02]
=====
"lambda2"
ELECTRONIC POLARIZATION
=====
Value | spin | dir(1) | dir(2) | dir(3)

...
Berry phase (rad) [-pi ... +pi] up+dn [7.675118e-10, -2.577606e-09, 1.081339e+00]
Electronic polarization (C/m2) sp(1) [5.945987e-11, -1.996896e-10, 8.377237e-02]
=====
IONIC POLARIZATION
=====
Elem. | Fractional coord. | spin |val| dir(1) | dir(2) | dir(3)

Total ionic phase wrap. (rad) sp(1) [3.686359e-09, 3.686359e-09, -9.424778e-01]
Ionic polarization (C/m2) sp(1) [2.855857e-10, 2.855857e-10, -7.301465e-02]
=====

```

The total (ionic + electronic) phase along z-axis in the case of " $\lambda_1$ " and " $\lambda_2$ " is  $-0.13886$  and  $0.13886$  rad, respectively. The Born charge can be obtained from these phases  $\phi$  as

$$Z_{zz}^* = \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{\delta\phi_z}{\delta\rho_z} \quad (5.2)$$

where  $\delta\rho$  is the relative displacement (0.02) in fractional coordinates. The calculation yields  $Z_{zz}^* = -2.18$ . The negative sign is indicative of a higher electronegativity of As as compared to that for Ga. Please consider the effects of possible  $\pi$  wrapping, so in general the smallest possible value should be considered.

## 5.8.4 Piezoelectric constants

For such calculations you need to calculate the Berry phases for the reference (equilibrium) structure (e.g. the tetragonal ferroelectric  $\text{PbTiO}_3$  structure) and a perturbed structure, where a compressive strain  $\epsilon_z$  of 0.1 % has been applied in the z-direction (for the latter structure one should also perform a new optimization of the internal coordinates).

The piezoelectric coefficient  $\epsilon_{zz}$  is defined as change in polarization with respect to the applied strain:

$$\epsilon_{zz} = \frac{dP_z}{d\epsilon_z} \quad (5.3)$$

## 5.9 Getting on-line help

- ▶ As mentioned before, all **WIEN2k** csh-shell scripts have a "**help**"-switch **-h**, which gives a brief summary of all options for the respective script.
- ▶ To obtain online help on input-parameters, program description, ... use

**help\_lapw**

which opens the pdf-version of the users guide (using **acroread** or what is defined in \$PDF-READER). You can search for a specific keyword using "**^f keyword**". This procedure substitutes an "Index" and should make it possible to find a specific information without reading through the complete users guide.

- ▶ In addition there is a html-version of the UG and its starting page is:  
**\$WIENROOT/SRC\_usersguide\_html/usersguide.html**
- ▶ When using the user interface **w2web**, you have access to the html and pdf-version (the latter requires an X-windows environment) of the usersguide.
- ▶ At our webserver [http://www.wien2k.at/reg\\_user](http://www.wien2k.at/reg_user) we put informations for the registered user:
  - A "FAQ" page with answers to some common problems.
  - Update information: When you think the program has an error, please check whether newer versions are available, which might have fixed the problem you encounter.
  - A mailing list:  
**Please check the "digest"!** In many cases your questions may have been answered before.
  - Locate your problem:** If a calculation crashes, please locate the problem. Check the content of files like **case.dayfile**, **\*.error**, **case.scf**, **case.scfX**, **case.outputX** where X specifies the program which crashed.
  - Posting questions:** Please provide enough information so that somebody can help you. A question like: "My calculation crashed. Please help me!" will most likely not be answered.

## 5.10 Interface scripts

We have included a few "interface scripts" into the current **WIEN2k** distribution, to simplify the previewing of results. In order to use these scripts the public domain program "**gnuplot**" has to be installed on your system.

### 5.10.1 eplot\_lapw

The script **eplot\_lapw** plots total energy vs. volume or total energy vs. c/a-ratio or b/a-ratio using the file **case.analysis**. The latter should have been created with **grepline** (using :VOL and :ENE labels) or the "Analysis  Analyze multiple SCF-files" menu of **w2web** and the file names must be generated (or compatible) with "optimize.job". Alternatively you can use **eplot\_lapw -a search-string-in-scf-files**, which generates **case.analysis** automatically using the specified string.

For a description of how to use the script for batch like execution call the script using

```
eplot_lapw -h
```

### 5.10.2 gibbs\_lapw

The script **gibbs\_lapw** (provided by M. Jamal) is an extension of **eplot\_lapw** and can also plot Volume vs. Pressure curves as well as the Gibbs energy difference (stored in **case.outputDeltaG**) of two different phases as function of Pressure.

When interested in pressure driven phase transitions, one can do calculations for the two phases of interest in two different subdirectories and perform "Volume optimization" (using **x optimize; optimize.job**, see sec. 5.3). Once this has been finished, one can use **gibbs\_lapw** (instead of **eplot\_lapw**), which will also create **case.outputeos\_meshp**, **eos.meshp1** and **deos1** files. These files allow for a comparison of the Gibbs energy as function of pressure for the two different phases.

A typical sequence to determine the transition pressure of this phase transition (assuming that the struct files and initializations have been done before) would look like:

```

cd dir1
x optimize # select Volume optimization and a suitable volume range
optimize.job # eventually change some run or save-options before
gibbs_lapw -v vol
cd ../dir2
x optimize # select Volume optimization and a suitable volume range
optimize.job # eventually change some run or save-options before
cp ../dir1/eos.meshp1 eos.meshp2
cp ../dir1/deos1 deos2
gibbs_lapw -v vol

```

For a description of how to use the script for batch like execution call the script using

```
gibbs_lapw -h
```

which will yield:

```
gibbs_lapw [-v vol] [-a string_in_scf-files] [-plt/-gbs/-ene]
[-2D]
```

For instance, `gibbs_lapw -a pbe` will analyse all scf files `*pbe.scf`. The energy/volume data are read from `case.analysis`, except in case of the `-2D` switch, where it reads from `case.2DEOS`.

### 5.10.3 parabolfit\_lapw

The script `parabolfit_lapw` is an interface for a harmonic fitting of E vs. 2-4-dim lattice parameters by a non-linear least squares fit (eosfit6) using PORT routines. Once you have several scf calculations at different lattice parameters (usually generated with `optimize.job`) it generates the required `case.ene` and `case.latparam` from your scf files. Using

```
parabolfit_lapw [-t 2/3/4] [-f FILEHEAD] [-scf '*xxx*.scf']
```

you can optionally specify the dimensionality of the fit or the specific scf-filenames.

### 5.10.4 dosplot\_lapw

The script `dosplot_lapw` plots total or partial Density of States depending on the input used by `case.int` and the interactive input. It can be used to generate all partial DOS plots in a simple way to get an overview. A more advanced plotting interface is provided by `dosplot2_lapw`, see below.

For a description of how to use the script for batch like execution call the script using

```
dosplot_lapw -h
```

### 5.10.5 dosplot2\_lapw

The script `dosplot2_lapw` plots total or partial Density of States depending on the input used by `case.int` and the interactive input. It can plot up to 4 DOS curves into one plot, and simultaneously plot spin-up/dn DOS. It supports also the SUM-DOS option (see description of `TETRA`).

It was provided by Morteza Jamal (m.jamal57@yahoo.com), modified by PB.

For a description of how to use the script for batch like execution call the script using

```
dosplot2.lapw -h
```

You can also use the script `dosplot_all.lapw` [-up] to generate default-plots (4 lines per plot) of all partial DOS cases as defined in `case.int`.

### 5.10.6 Cgrace.lapw, Cgrace\_conf.lapw and Cgrace\_dos.lapw

These three scripts can be used to plot x,y-data using `xmgrace`. Specifically

- ▶ `Cgrace.lapw` generates a “grace-file” `IRgrace.agr` which can be plotted using `xmgrace IRgrace.agr` using an intermediate `IRgrace.inf`, produced by either `Cgrace_dos.lapw` or `Cgrace_conf.lapw` or for DOS-plotting `Cgrace.lapw -dos [-up/-dn -eV/-Ryd]`.
- ▶ `Cgrace_dos.lapw` lets you select which partial-DOS curves you want to plot and generates a “grace-file” `IRgrace.agr` which can be plotted using `xmgrace IRgrace.agr`. It supports also the SUM-DOS option (see description of `TETRA`). It produces first `IRgrace.inf` and with this configuration file `Cgrace.lapw` makes the actual grace-file.
- ▶ `Cgrace_conf.lapw` can produce (or modify) `IRgrace.inf`. You can plot any x,y-data file (with multiple columns and headers) like the files produced by `tetra`, `optics`, `xspec`, ... For DOS-plotting call it as `Cgrace_conf.lapw -dos [-up/-dn]`  
You can configure multiple frames, and in each frame define several curves for plotting.

For spinpolarized cases you must call the scripts with `-up/-dn` options.

For a description of how to use the scripts call the scripts using `-h` switch.

It was provided by Morteza Jamal ([m.jamal57@yahoo.com](mailto:m.jamal57@yahoo.com)).

### 5.10.7 Curve.lapw

The script `Curve.lapw` plots x,y data from a file specified interactively. It asks for additional interactive input. It can plot up to 4 curves into one plot and is a simple `gnuplot` interface.

It was provided by Morteza Jamal ([m.jamal57@yahoo.com](mailto:m.jamal57@yahoo.com)).

### 5.10.8 specplot.lapw

`specplot.lapw` provides an interface for plotting X-ray spectra from the output of the `xspec` or `txspec` program.

For a description of how to use the script for batch like execution call the script using

```
specplot.lapw -h
```

### 5.10.9 rhoplot.lapw

The script `rhoplot.lapw` produces a surface plot of the electron density from the file `case.rho` created by `lapw5`.

*Note: To use this script you must have installed the C-program `reformat` supplied in `SRC.reformat`.*

### 5.10.10 prepare\_xsf\_lapw

This program was contributed by:

⇒ David Koller  
 Institute for Materials Chemistry  
 TU Vienna  
 koller@theochem.tuwien.ac.at

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

The script **prepare\_xsf\_lapw** produces 3D data of the electron density (or the potential) in XCrysDen-format (**case.xsf**) for plotting with **XCrysDen** (Menu → Tools → Data Grid). It is written in Python and also uses the programs **lapw5** and **str2xcr.exe** (included in the WIEN2k distribution).

It requires an input file **case.inxsf**:

```
This is an inxsf-file

>D9 clmval # unit # 9 in def-file
>D1 clmvaldn # unit # 11 in def File

>IS # Start of end part of in5-file
RHO
ATU VAL NODEBUG # careful VAL/TOT!!!
NONORTHO
>IE # closes what was started with >IS

>C0 0 0 0 # Start-Corner of part of unit cell (compared to lattice vectors of conventional cell)
>CX 0.5 0.1 0 # x-end
>CY 0.1 0.5 0 # y-end
>CZ 0.2 0.2 1 # z-end
use for fcc:
#>C0 0 0 0
#>CX 0.5 0.5 0
#>CY 0.5 0 0.5
#>CZ 0 0.5 0.5
entire cell:
#>C0 0 0 0
#>CX 1 0 0
#>CY 0 1 0
#>CZ 0 0 1

>NX 30 # number of data points in x-direction
>NY 30
>NZ 30
>IZ 3 2 3 # additional cells in in5-file

>PS # parallel start
machine1
machine1
machine2
>PE # parallel end
>PM

End of inxsf-file
```

In this file comments are designated by '#'. Markers at the beginning of a line consisting of '>' followed by two characters determine the content of this line or of the following lines, depending on the marker.

Explanation of the markers:

>D9: The suffix of the main data file. It corresponds to unit 9 in the file **lapw5.def**

- >**D1**: The suffix of a second data file which can be optionally added to or subtracted from the main data file. It corresponds to unit 11 in the file **lapw5.def**
- >**IS**: This starts a section which needs to be closed with '>IE'. The lines between these two markers will be used as lines 6-8 in the in5-file.
- >**IZ**: This will be used as line 4 in the in5-file.
- >**C0**: Coordinates of a corner of a three-dimensional box, delimited by parallel planes, in which the data should be plotted. The units of these numbers are the unit vectors of the conventional cell (e.g. 0.5 0.5 0 is the centre of the xy-plane which would be the 1d-position in space group 111)
- >**CX**: Coordinates of the x-end corner of the box
- >**CY**: Coordinates of the y-end corner of the box
- >**CZ**: Coordinates of the z-end corner of the box
- >**NX**: Number of data points in x-direction
- >**NY**: Number of data points in y-direction
- >**NZ**: Number of data points in z-direction
- >**PS** / >**PE** / >**PM**: determine the parallelization

This script also contains support for parallel execution. One possibility is to include '>PM'. In this case the file **.machines** is used to determine which hosts are used. More details can be found in the section about parallel WIEN2k. If '>PM' is not present (or commented) it is possible to specify the desired hosts between '>PS' and '>PE'. If neither '>PM' nor '>PS' are present, the script will be executed in non-parallel way which should work well enough in most cases.

### 5.10.11 opticplot\_lapw

The script **opticplot\_lapw** produces XY plots from the output files of the optics package using the **case.joint**, **case.epsilon**, **case.eloss**, **case.sumrules** or **case.sigmak**. For a description of how to use the script for batch like execution call the script using

```
opticplot_lapw -h
```

### 5.10.12 addjoint-updn\_lapw

The script **addjoint-updn\_lapw** adds the files **case.jointup** and **case.jointdn** together and produces **case.joint**. It uses internally the program **add.columns**. It should be called for spin-polarized optics calculations after **x joint -up** and **x joint -dn**, because the Kramers-Kronig transformation to the real part of the dielectric function ( $\epsilon_1$ ) is not a simple additive quantity concerning the spin (see [Ambrosch-Draxl and Sofo, 2006]). The KK transformation should then be done non-spinpolarized (**x kram**) resulting in files: **case.epsilon**, **case.eloss**, **case.sumrules** or **case.sigmak**.

This script can also be "missused" to add or subtract (add the keyword "sub") the content of **case.jointup** and **case.jointdn**, when they come from calculations of different band-ranges, ....

---

# 6 Programs for the initialization

---

## Contents

---

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| 6.1 NN . . . . .       | 103 |
| 6.2 SGROUP . . . . .   | 104 |
| 6.3 SYMMETRY . . . . . | 104 |
| 6.4 LSTART . . . . .   | 105 |
| 6.5 KGEN . . . . .     | 107 |
| 6.6 DSTART . . . . .   | 108 |

---

In sections (6.1-6.6) we describe the initial utility programs. These programs are used to set up a calculation.

## 6.1 NN (nearest neighbor distances)

This program uses the **case.struct** file (see 4.3) in which the atomic positions in the unit cell are specified, calculates the nearest neighbor distances of all atoms, and checks that the corresponding atomic spheres (radii) are not overlapping. If an overlap occurs, an error message is shown on the screen. In addition, the next nearest-neighbor distances up to  $f$  times the nearest-neighbor distance ( $f$  must be specified interactively) are written to an output file named **case.outputnn**. For negative  $f$  values only the distances of non-equivalent atoms are printed, but equivalent ones are not listed again. Optionally one can specify also a “dlimit” parameter, which helps nn to find equivalent atoms in case of “inaccurate” structural data.

It is highly recommended in most cases that you change your sphere sizes and do NOT use the default of 2.0. An increase from 2.0 to 2.1 may already result in drastically reduced computing time. More recommendations are given in chapter 4.3.

**nn** also checks if equivalent atoms are specified correctly in **case.struct**. At the bottom of **case.outputnn** the coordination shell-structure is listed and from that a comparison with the input is made verifying that equivalent atoms really have equivalent environments. If this is not the case, an ERROR will be printed and a new structure file **case.struct\_nn** is generated. You have to recheck your input and then decide whether you want to accept the new structure file, or reject it (because the equivalency may just be an artefact due to a special choice of lattice parameters). It also may be that you have made a simple input error. If you want to force two atoms of the same kind (e.g. 2 Fe atoms) to be nonequivalent (e.g. because you want to do an antiferromagnetic calculation), label the atoms as “Fe1” and “Fe2” in **case.struct**.

Thus this program helps to generate proper **struct**-files especially in the case of artificial unit cells, e.g. a supercell simulating an impurity or a surface.

It also prints the “bond-valences” (see also the comments in \$WIENROOT/SRC\_nn/BVA).

### 6.1.1 Execution

The program **nn** is executed by invoking the command:

```
nn nn.def or x nn
```

## 6.2 SGROUP

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Bogdan Yanchitsky and Andrei Timoshevskii  
 Institute of Magnetism, Kiev, Ukraine  
 email: yan@imag.kiev.ua and tim@ukron.kiev.ua  
 Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

It was published in [Yanchitsky and Timoshevskii, 2001], and is written in C.

This program uses information from **case.struct** (lattice type, lattice constants, atomic positions) and determines the spacegroup as well as all pointgroups of non-equivalent sites. It uses the nuclear charges *Z* or the "label" in the 3rd place of the atomic name (Si1, Si2) to distinguish different atoms uniquely. It is able to find possible smaller unit cells, shift the origin of the cell and can even produce a new struct file **case.struct.sgroup** based on your input **case.struct** with proper lattice types and equivalency. It is thus most useful in particular for "handmade" structures.

For more information see also the README in SRC\_sgroup.

### 6.2.1 Execution

The program **sgroup** is executed by invoking the command:

```
sgroup -wi case.struct [-wo case.struct.sgroup] case.outputsgen
or x sgroup
```

## 6.3 SYMMETRY

This program uses information from **case.struct** (lattice type, atomic positions). If **NSYM** was set to zero it generates the space group symmetry operations and writes them to **case.struct.st** to complete this file. Otherwise (**NSYM** > 0) it compares the generated symmetry operations with the already present ones. If they disagree a warning is given in the output. In addition the point group of each atomic site is determined and the respective symmetry operations and LM values of the lattice harmonics representation are printed. The latter information is written into **case.in2.sy**, while the local rotation matrix, the positive or negative IATNR values and the proper ISPLIT parameter are written to **case.struct.st**. (See appendix A and Sec. 4.3).

### 6.3.1 Execution

The program symmetry is executed by invoking the command:

```
symmetry symmetry.def or x symmetry
```

## 6.4 LSTART (atomic LSDA program)

**lstart** is a relativistic atomic LSDA code originally written by Desclaux [Desclaux, 1969, Desclaux, 1975] and modified for the present purpose. Internally it uses Hartree atomic units, but all output has been converted to Rydberg units. **lstart** generates atomic densities which are used by **dstart** to generate a starting density for a scf calculation and all the input files for the scf run: **in0**, **in1**, **in2**, **inc** and **inm** (according to the atomic eigenvalues). In addition it creates atomic potentials (which are truncated at their corresponding atomic radii and could be used to run **lapw1**) and optional atomic valence densities, which can be used in **lapw5** for a difference density plot. The atomic total energies are also printed, but it can only be used for cohesive energy calculations of light elements. Already for second-row elements the different treatment of relativistic effects in **lstart** and **lapw5** yields inconsistent data and you must calculate the atomic total energy consistently by a supercell approach via a "bandstructure calculation (Put a single atom in a sufficiently large fcc-type unit cell).

If the program stops with some lines:

```
NSTOP=
```

in **case.outputst**, this means, that a proper solution for at least one orbital could not be obtained. In such a case the input must be changed and one should provide different occupation numbers for these states (e.g. Cu can not be started with  $3d^{10}4s^1$ , but it works with  $3d^94s^2$ ).

The program produces "WARNINGS" if R0 is too big or core-density leaks out of RMT.

### 6.4.1 Execution

The program **lstart** is executed by invoking the command:

```
lstart lstart.def or x lstart [-sigma]
```

The files **case.rsp(up|dn)** are generated and contain the atomic (spin) densities, which will be used by **DSTART** later on.

Using **-sigma** generates **case.inst.sigma** with modified input to generate **case.sigma** used for difference densities (see below).

### 6.4.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are defined in file **param.inc** (static and not allocatable arrays):

|       |                                                                                                                                          |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NPT   | total number of radial mesh points, must be gt.(NRAD+NPT00), where NRAD is the number of mesh-points up to RMT specified in case.struct. |
| NPT00 | max. number of radial mesh points beyond RMT                                                                                             |
| RMAX0 | max. distance of radial mesh                                                                                                             |

### 6.4.3 Input

When running `lstart` you will first be asked interactively to specify an XC-functional switch. Currently XC\_LDA (LDA, [Perdew and Wang, 1992]) as well as three GGAs, XC\_PBE [Perdew et al., 1996], XC\_WC [Wu and Cohen, 2006] and XC\_PBESOL [Perdew et al., 2008] are supported by `lstart`.

In addition the program asks for an energy cut-off, separating core from valence states. Usually -6.0 Ry is a good choice, but you should check for each atom how much core charge leaks out of the sphere (WARNINGS in `case.outputs`). If this is the case one should lower this energy cut-off and thus include these low lying states into the valence region. Alternatively you can also select a “charge localization” criterium (usually between 0.97 and 0.9999). This allows a more localized state (like a 4f of 5d elements) to be core, while a more delocalized state at lower energy (like the 5p states of 5d elements) to be semi-core.

The rest of the input is described in the sample input below.

*Note: Only the data at the beginning of the line are read whereas the comment describes the respective orbitals. This file can be generated automatically in `w2web` during “Initialize calc. or using “SinglePrograms `instgen.lapw`” or with the script `instgen.lapw`. To edit this file by hand choose “View/Edit `Input Files`” and choose `case.inst`.*

```
----- top of file: case.inst -----
ZINC
Ne 6 (inert gas, # OF VALENCE ORBITALS not counting spin)
3,-1,1.0 N (N,KAPPA,OCCUP; = 3S UP, 1 ELECTRON)
3,-1,1.0 N 3S DN
3,-2,2.0 N 3P UP
3,-2,2.0 N 3P DN
3, 1,1.0 N 3P*UP
3, 1,1.0 N 3P*DN
3,-3,3.0 P 3D UP
3,-3,3.0 P 3D DN
3, 2,2.0 P 3D*UP
3, 2,2.0 P 3D*DN
4,-1,1.0 P 4S UP
4,-1,1.0 P 4S DN
**** END OF Input
**** END OF Input
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments follow:

**line 1:** format(a4,a6)  
title, keyword

title

keyword

The keyword **Watson** enables a stabilization of negative ions using a “Watson”-sphere of radius  $R_{\text{wat}}$  with charge  $Q_{\text{wat}}$ , which must be given in the next line when this keyword is specified.

The keyword **PRATT** enables a scf mixing using standard PRATT scheme. It might be useful if a certain atomic configuration does not converge with the standard mixing scheme and requires a (usually quite small) mixing factor, which must be given in the next line when this keyword is specified.

**line 2:** free format  
config

config specifies the core state configuration by an inert gas (He, Ne, Ar, Kr, Xe, Rn) and the number of (valence) orbitals (without spin). (In the example given above one could also use **Ar 3** and omit the  $3s$  and  $3p$  states.) The atomic configurations are listed in the appendix and can also be found online using **periodic\_table**, a shell script which displays **SRC/periodic.ps** with ghostview)

**line 3:** format(i1,1x,i2,1x,f5.3,a1)  
n, kappa, occup, plot

n the principle quantum number  
kappa the relativistic quantum number (see below)  
occup occupation number (per spin)  
plot **P** specifies that the density of the respective orbital is written to the file **case.sigma**, which can be used for difference density plots in **lapw5**. **N** or an empty field will exempt density of the respective orbital from being printed to file.

>>>: **line 3** is repeated for the other spin and for all orbitals specified above by config.

>>>: **the last two lines** must be

\*\*\*\*  
\*\*\*\*

**optional inserted as line 2 when "Watson" has been specified in line 1:** free format

R-wat, Q-wat

R-wat radius of a charged sphere used to stabilize otherwise unstable negative ions (e.g. 2.5 for  $O^{2-}$ )  
Q-wat charge of the stabilizing sphere, (e.g. 2 for  $O^{2-}$ )

The quantum numbers are defined as follows (see e.g. Liberman et al 65):

Spin quantum number:  $s = +1$  or  $s = -1$

Orbital quantum number  $j = l + s/2$

Relativistic quantum number  $\kappa = -s(j + 1/2)$

|   | $l$ | $j = l + s/2$ |          | $\kappa$ |          | max. occupation |          |
|---|-----|---------------|----------|----------|----------|-----------------|----------|
|   |     | $s = -1$      | $s = +1$ | $s = -1$ | $s = +1$ | $s = -1$        | $s = +1$ |
| s | 0   |               | 1/2      |          | -1       |                 | 2        |
| p | 1   | 1/2           | 3/2      | 1        | -2       | 2               | 4        |
| d | 2   | 3/2           | 5/2      | 2        | -3       | 4               | 6        |
| f | 3   | 5/2           | 7/2      | 3        | -4       | 6               | 8        |

Table 6.6: Relativistic quantum numbers

## 6.5 KGEN (generates k mesh)

This program generates the k-mesh in the irreducible wedge of the Brillouin zone (IBZ) on a special point grid, which can be used in a modified tetrahedron integration scheme [Blöchl et al., 1994].

**kgen** needs as interactive input the total number of k-points in the BZ. If this is set to zero, you are asked to specify the divisions of the reciprocal unit-cell vectors (3 numbers, be careful not to "break" symmetry and choose them properly according to the inverse length of the reciprocal

lattice vectors) for a mesh yourself. If inversion symmetry is not present, it will be added automatically unless you specified the “-so” switch (for magnetic cases with spin-orbit coupling). The k-mesh is then created with this additional symmetry. If symmetry permits, it further asks whether or not the k-mesh should be shifted away from high symmetry directions. The file **case.klist** is used in **lapw1** and **case.kgen** is used in **tetra** and **lapw2**, if the EF switch is set to TETRA, i.e. the tetrahedron method for the k-space integration is used. For the format of the **case.klist** see page 128.

### 6.5.1 Execution

The program **kgen** is executed by invoking the command:

```
kgen kgen.def or x kgen [-so -fbz -hf]
```

With the switch **-so** it uses a file **case.ksym** (usually generated by **symmetso**) instead of **case.struct** and does not add inversion symmetry. The **-fbz** switch generates a k-mesh in the full Brillouinzone (no symmetry).

### 6.5.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are used in **main.f**, **ord1.f** (static arrays):

|        |                                                               |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDKP   | number of inequivalent k-points (like NKPT in other programs) |
| NWX    | internal parameter, must be increased for very large k-meshes |
| INDEXM | internal parameter, must be increased for very large k-meshes |

## 6.6 DSTART (superposition of atomic densities)

This program generates an initial crystalline charge density **case.clmsum** by a superposition of atomic densities (**case.rsp**) generated with **lstart**. Information about LM values of the lattice harmonics representation and number of Fourier coefficients of the interstitial charge density are taken from **case.in1** and **case.in2**. You may also specify a larger LUSE value in **case.in0** (default LUSE=7) for the angular integration. In the case of a spin-polarized calculation it must also be run for the spin-up charge density **case.clmup** and spin-down charge density **case.clmdn**.

### 6.6.1 Execution

The program **dstart** is executed by invoking the command:

```
dstart dstart.def or x dstart [-up|dn -c -fft -super -lcore -p]
```

With the switch **-fft** **dstart** will terminate after **case.in0\_std** has been created. The switch **-super** will produce **new\_super.clmsum** instead of **case.clmsum**, which is necessary for charge extrapolation (**clmextrapol.lapw**). **-lcore** produces **case.clmsc** from the radial core densities **case.rsp1core** (this is activated during scf when a **.lcore** file is present. It can run in mpi-parallel mode (-p) for big cases (typically more than 20 atoms) and core-superposition.

### 6.6.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are collected in file **module.f**, but usually need not to be changed:

|       |                                                                             |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NPT   | number of r-mesh points in atomic density (should be the same as in LSTART) |
| LMAX2 | max l in LM expansion                                                       |
| NCOM  | number of LM terms in density                                               |



---

# 7 Programs for running an SCF cycle

---

## Contents

---

|      |         |     |
|------|---------|-----|
| 7.1  | LAPW0   | 111 |
| 7.2  | DFTD3   | 115 |
| 7.3  | NLVDW   | 119 |
| 7.4  | ORB     | 120 |
| 7.5  | LAPW1   | 124 |
| 7.6  | HF      | 128 |
| 7.7  | LAPWSO  | 130 |
| 7.8  | LAPW2   | 133 |
| 7.9  | SUMPARA | 137 |
| 7.10 | LAPWDM  | 138 |
| 7.11 | LCORE   | 139 |
| 7.12 | MIXER   | 141 |

---

In sections 7.1-7.12 we describe the main programs to run an SCF cycle as illustrated in figure 4.1.

## 7.1 LAPW0 (generates potential)

**lapw0** computes the total potential  $V_{tot}$  as the sum of the Coulomb  $V_c$  and the exchange-correlation potential  $V_{xc}$  using the total electron (spin) density as input. It generates the spherical part ( $l=0$ ) as **case.vsp** and the non-spherical part as **case.vns**. For spin-polarized systems, the spin-densities **case.c1mup** and **case.c1mdn** lead to two pairs of potential files. These files are called: **case.vspup**, **case.vnsup** and **case.vspdn**, **case.vnsdn**.

The Coulomb potential is calculated by the multipolar Fourier expansion introduced by [Weinert, 1981]. Utilizing the spatial partitioning of the unit cell and the dual representation of the charge density [equ. 2.10], firstly the multipole moments inside the spheres are calculated (Q-sp). The Fourier series of the charge density in the interstitial also represent SOME density inside the spheres, but certainly NOT the correct density there. Nevertheless, the multipole moments of this artificial plane-wave density inside each sphere are also calculated (Q-pw). By subtracting Q-pw from Q-sp one obtains pseudo-multipole moments Q. Next a new plane-wave series is generated which has two properties, namely zero density in the interstitial region and a charge distribution inside the spheres that reproduces the pseudo-multipole moments Q. This series is added to the original interstitial Fourier series for the density to form a new series which has two desirable properties: it simultaneously represents the interstitial charge density AND it has the same multipole moments inside the spheres as the actual density. Using this Fourier series the interstitial Coulomb potential follows immediately by dividing the Fourier coefficients by  $K^2$  (up to a constant).

Inside the spheres the Coulomb potential is obtained by a straightforward classical Green's function method for the solution of the boundary value problem.

The exchange-correlation potential is computed numerically on a grid. Inside the atomic spheres a Gauss-Legendre integration is used to reproduce the potential using a lattice harmonics representation. In the interstitial region a 3-dimensional fast Fourier transformation (FFT) is used.

The total potential  $V$  is obtained by summation of the Coulomb  $V_C$  and exchange-correlation potentials  $V_{xc}$ .

In order to find the contribution from the plane wave representation to the Hamilton matrix elements we reanalyze the Fourier series in such a way that the new series represents a potential which is zero inside the spheres but keeps the original value in the interstitial region and this series is put into `case.vns`.

The contribution to the total energy which involves integrals of the form  $\rho * V$  is calculated according to the formalism of [Weinert et al., 1982].

The Hellmann-Feynman force contribution to the total force is also calculated [Yu et al., 1991].

Finally, the electric field gradient (EFG) is calculated in case you have an L=2 term in the density expansion. The EFG tensor is given in both, the "local-rotation-matrix" coordinate system, and then diagonalized. The resulting eigenvectors of this rotation are given by columns.

For surface calculations the total and electrostatic potential at  $z=0$  and  $z=0.5$  is calculated and can be used as energy-zero for the determination of the workfunction. (It is assumed that the middle of your vacuum region is either at  $z=0$  or  $z=0.5$ ).

### 7.1.1 Execution

The program `lapw0` is executed by invoking the command:

```
lapw0 lapw0.def or x lapw0 [-p -eece -grr -nlvdw]
```

### 7.1.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are used (they are collected in file `param.inc`, but usually need not to be changed):

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NCOM            | number of lm components in charge density and potential representation; it must satisfy the following condition: $NCOM+3 \cdot \text{gt.} \{[\text{number of } l, m \text{ with } m = 0] + [2 * \text{number of } l, m \text{ with } m > 0]\}$ |
| NRAD            | number of radial mesh points                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| LMAX2           | highest L in the LM expansion of charge and potential                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| LMAX2X          | highest L for the gpoint-grid in the xcpot generation (may need large values for "-eece")                                                                                                                                                      |
| restrict.output | for mpi-jobs, limits the number of case.output0xxx files to "restrict.output"                                                                                                                                                                  |

### 7.1.3 Input

The input is very simple. It is generated automatically by `init_lapw`, and needs to be changed only if a different exchange-correlation potential should be used:

```
----- top of file: case.in0 -----
TOT XC_PBE ! MULT/COUL/EXCH/POT /TOT ; VXC-SWITCH
NR2V IFFT 13 ! R2V EECE/HYBR IFFT LUSE
```

```

30 30 108 4.00 1 ! min IFFT-parameters, enhancement factor, iprint
0 0.0 (#of FK in E-field expansion, EFELD (Ry))

```

```

----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments follow:

**line 1:** free format

switch, indxc, xc1, xc2, xc3

switch

TOT total energy contributions and total potential calculated  
KXC total energy contributions and total potential calculated. In addition the kinetic energy contribution as well as the XC-energy will be printed (:EKIN and :EXC in **case.scf**).  
POT total potential is calculated, but not the total energy  
MULT multipole moments calculated only  
COUL Coulomb potential calculated only  
EXCH exchange correlation potential calculated only  
NOTE: MULT, COUL, and EXCH are for testing only, whereas POT, saves some CPU time if total energy is not needed

indxc

One keyword (*XC\_NAME*), four keywords (*EX\_NAME* *EC\_NAME* *VX\_NAME* *VC\_NAME*) or **LIBXC**-keyword(s) to specify the XC-energy/potential. The description for the onsite and full hybrid functionals are in sections 4.5.7 and 4.5.8, respectively.

*XC\_NAME*

global keyword to specify the X and C energy and potential. Some of the most popular options are (for all options see Table 7.3 or in SRC\_lapw0/vxclm2.f):

- ▶ XC\_LDA : parametrization [Perdew and Wang, 1992] of accurate Monte-Carlo data of the homogeneous electron gas
- ▶ XC\_PBE : GGA PBE [Perdew et al., 1996]
- ▶ XC\_WC : GGA WC [Wu and Cohen, 2006, Tran et al., 2007]
- ▶ XC\_PBESOL : GGA PBEsol [Perdew et al., 2008]
- ▶ XC\_SCAN : probably the best meta-GGA (energy functional only, uses PBE for the potential) up to now [Sun et al., 2015b]. In order to generate the required **case.vresp\*** files, you need **case.inm.vresp** (**cp \$WIENROOT/SRC.templates/template.inm.vresp case.inm.vresp** and run one scf cycle with XC\_PBE after creation of **case.inm.vresp**. Only afterwards change indxc to XC\_SCAN. Meta-GGA functionals may eventually require a larger IFFT factor (**case.in0**) or GMAX (**case.in2**) than for GGA functionals.
- ▶ XC\_MBJ : modified Becke-Johnson (mBJLDA) potential  $V_{XC}$  [Tran and Blaha, 2009]. Uses the mBJ-exchange + LDA-correlation potential and yields band gaps in very good agreement with experiment. By default, the xc-energy  $E_{XC}$  is from LDA. For detailed usage see chapter about mBJ calculations (4.5.10).

*EX\_NAME* *EC\_NAME* *VX\_NAME* *VC\_NAME*

keywords for  $E_X$  (Table 7.4),  $E_C$  (Table 7.5),  $V_X$  (Table 7.6) and  $V_C$  (Table 7.7)

XC\_LDA\_X\_NAME  
 XC\_LDA\_C\_NAME  
 XC\_LDA\_XC\_NAME  
 XC\_GGA\_X\_NAME  
 XC\_GGA\_C\_NAME  
 XC\_GGA\_XC\_NAME  
 XC\_MGGA\_X\_NAME  
 XC\_MGGA\_C\_NAME  
 XC\_MGGA\_XC\_NAME

Keywords to use functionals from the library of exchange and correlation functionals **LIBXC** (<http://octopus-code.org/wiki/Libxc>). A few points about the use of **LIBXC**:

- ▶ **LIBXC** [Marques et al., 2012] is a separate program that has to be downloaded and compiled with the same compiler as the one used for **WIEN2k** (see 11.1.2).
- ▶ One (.X., .C. or .XC.) or two (.X. and .C.) **LIBXC** keywords can be specified. The full list of possible keywords is in `$WIENROOT/SRC_lapw0/xc_funcs.h` or on the **LIBXC** website.
- ▶ It is possible to combine a functional/potential from **LIBXC** with a functional/potential from **WIEN2k** by also specifying one or several of the keywords `EX_NAME`, `EC_NAME`, `VX_NAME`, `VC_NAME` (but not `XC_NAME`) which will overrule the corresponding **LIBXC** choice (except if `NAME=NONE`).
- ▶ A few **LIBXC** keywords (`XC_GGA_X_LB`, `XC_GGA_X_LBM`, `XC_MGGA_X_BJ06`, `XC_MGGA_X_TB09`, `XC_MGGA_X_RPP09`) correspond to only a potential (the corresponding energy is zero). However (see the point just above), it is possible to specify an energy functional with `EX_NAME` and `EC_NAME`.
- ▶ As for the meta-GGA energy functionals called with the **WIEN2k** keywords (see table 7.3), the default associated potential is PBE.
- ▶ Note that the possibility offered by **LIBXC** to specify the value of parameters in several functionals has not been implemented in **WIEN2k**.

Example for PBE with the

- ▶ global keyword : `XC_PBE`
- ▶ individual keywords : `EX_PBE EC_PBE VX_PBE VC_PBE`
- ▶ **LIBXC**-keywords : `XC_GGA_X_PBE XC_GGA_C_PBE`

`xc1,xc2,xc3`

optional input(s) for certain XC options:

Example for `MGGA_MS2`: `XC_MGGA_MS 0.504 0.14601 4.0`

`XC_LDA` or `XC_PBE`: to modify the spin scaling (reduction of spin-polarization) according to ([Ortenzi et al., 2012]). `xc1` must be between 0 and 2.

**line 2:** free format (only blanks are allowed as separator)

`RPRINT, H-mod, FFTopt, LUSE`

`RPRINT NR2V` no additional output

|        |      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | R2V  | Exchange-correlation ( <b>case.r2v</b> ), Coulomb ( <b>case.vcoul</b> ) and total potentials ( <b>case.vtotal</b> ) are written as ( $r^2V$ ) to a file for plotting with <b>lapw5</b> (cp <b>case.vtotal case.clmval</b> ; use "VAL" for normalization in <b>case.in5</b> )                                          |
| H-mod  | EECE | Onsite Hartree-Fock (inside spheres) for selected electrons (see 4.5.7)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|        | HYBR | Onsite Hybrid functionals (inside spheres) (see 4.5.7)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| FFTopt | IFFT | optional keyword, which lets you define the IFFT <sub>x</sub> mesh and an enhancement factor in the next line (necessary for <b>runeece.lapw</b> )                                                                                                                                                                    |
| LUSE   |      | optional l-max value for the angular grid used in xcpot1. For standard LDA/GGA the minimal value is max L value of LM-list in case.in2 + 2; the default is 13 and for EECE one should use a better, antialiased grid, thus a large negative LUSE-value is recommended (and set automatically by <b>runeece.lapw</b> ) |

**line 3:** free format (must be omitted when IFFT is not specified above)

IFFT<sub>x</sub>, IFFT<sub>y</sub>, IFFT<sub>z</sub>, IFFTfactor, iprint

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IFFT <sub>x,y,z</sub> | FFT-mesh parameters in x,y,z directions for the calculation of the XC-potential in the interstitial region. Usually set automatically in <b>init_lapw</b> (dstart). The ratio of the 3 numbers should be indirect proportional to the lattice parameters. (-1 -1 -1 determines these numbers automatically and takes only IFFTfactor into account) |
| IFFTfactor            | Multiplicative factor to the IFFT grid specified above. It needs to be enlarged for highly accurate GGA or meta-GGA calculations as well as for systems with H atoms with small spheres.                                                                                                                                                           |
| iprint                | optional print switch. iprint=0 will greatly reduce case.output0 (in particular for <b>lapw0 mpi</b> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

The following line is optional and can be omitted. It is used to introduce an electric field via a zig-zag potential (see [Stahn et al., 2001]):

**line 4:** free format

IFIELD, EFIELD, WFIELD

|        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IFIELD | number of Fourier coefficients to model the zig-zag potential. Typically use IEFIELD=30; -999 lists available modes (form) of fields, and these modes can be specified by mode=IEFIELD/1000. (default: mode=0) |
| EFIELD | value (amplitude) of the electric field. The electric field (in Ry/bohr) corresponds to EFIELD/c, where c is your c lattice parameter.                                                                         |
| WFIELD | optional value for lambda (see output of IEFIELD=-999).                                                                                                                                                        |

## 7.2 DFT-D3 (Calculate the dispersion energy with DFT-D3)

**dftd3** calculates the dispersion energy and forces using the semi-empirical DFT-D3 method of [Grimme et al., 2010]. Since this method depends only on the positions of atoms (no dependence on the electron density) it is very fast and adds very little computer time. The **dftd3** package is not included by default in **WIEN2k**, but can be downloaded from the website of the group of S. Grimme <http://www.thch.uni-bonn.de/tc/index.php>. When compilation is done, the executable **dftd3** has to be copied in the **\$WIENROOT** directory.

| Global keyword | EX.SWITCH  | EC.SWITCH  | VX.SWITCH | VC.SWITCH | Type | Comments                                                   |
|----------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| XC.LDA         | EX.LDA     | EC.LDA     | VX.LDA    | VC.LDA    | LDA  |                                                            |
| XC.PBE         | EX.PBE     | EC.PBE     | VX.PBE    | VC.PBE    | GGA  |                                                            |
| XC.WC          | EX.WC      | EC.PBE     | VX.WC     | VC.PBE    | GGA  |                                                            |
| XC.PBESOL      | EX.PBESOL  | EC.PBESOL  | VX.PBESOL | VC.PBESOL | GGA  |                                                            |
| XC.B3PW91      | EX.B3PW91  |            | VX.B3PW91 |           | GGA  | semilocal part of hybrid B3PW91                            |
| XC.B3LYP       | EX.B3LYP   |            | VX.B3LYP  |           | GGA  | semilocal part of hybrid B3LYP                             |
| XC.MBJ         | EX.LDA     | EC.LDA     | VX.MBJ    | VC.LDA    | MGGA |                                                            |
| XC.TPSS        | EX.TPSS    | EC.TPSS    | VX.PBE    | VC.PBE    | MGGA |                                                            |
| XC.REVTPSS     | EX.REVTPSS | EC.REVTPSS | VX.PBE    | VC.PBE    | MGGA |                                                            |
| XC.MGGA_MS     | EX.MGGA_MS | EC.MGGA_MS | VX.PBE    | VC.PBE    | MGGA | xc1 ( $\kappa$ ), xc2 ( $c$ ) and xc3 ( $b$ ) are required |
| XC.MVS         | EX.MVS     | EC.MVS     | VX.PBE    | VC.PBE    | MGGA |                                                            |
| XC.MBEEF       | EX.MBEEF   | EC.PBESOL  | VX.PBE    | VC.PBE    | MGGA |                                                            |
| XC.SCAN        | EX.SCAN    | EC.SCAN    | VX.PBE    | VC.PBE    | MGGA |                                                            |
| XC.TM          | EX.TM      | EC.TM      | VX.PBE    | VC.PBE    | MGGA |                                                            |

Table 7.3: global XC-switches

| Keyword for $E_X$ | Type | Reference                        | Comments                                                                          |
|-------------------|------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EX.NONE           |      |                                  | no exchange energy                                                                |
| EX.LDA            | LDA  | [Kohn and Sham, 1965]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.SLDA           | LDA  | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened LDA for hybrid ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> )                             |
| EX.B88            | GGA  | [Becke, 1988]                    |                                                                                   |
| EX.PW91           | GGA  | [Perdew et al., 1992]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.EV93           | GGA  | [Engel and Vosko, 1993]          |                                                                                   |
| EX.PBE            | GGA  | [Perdew et al., 1996]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.REVPBE         | GGA  | [Zhang and Yang, 1998]           |                                                                                   |
| EX.RPBE           | GGA  | [Hammer et al., 1999]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.HCTH93         | GGA  | [Hamprecht et al., 1998]         |                                                                                   |
| EX.HCTH120        | GGA  | [Boese et al., 2000]             |                                                                                   |
| EX.HCTH147        | GGA  | [Boese et al., 2000]             |                                                                                   |
| EX.HCTH407        | GGA  | [Boese and Handy, 2001]          |                                                                                   |
| EX.AM05           | GGA  | [Armiento and Mattsson, 2005]    |                                                                                   |
| EX.WC             | GGA  | [Wu and Cohen, 2006]             |                                                                                   |
| EX.PBE-ALPHA      | GGA  | [Madsen, 2007]                   | xc1 ( $\alpha$ ) is required                                                      |
| EX.PBESOL         | GGA  | [Perdew et al., 2008]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.SOGGA          | GGA  | [Zhao and Truhlar, 2008]         |                                                                                   |
| EX.RGE2           | GGA  | [Ruzsinszky et al., 2009]        |                                                                                   |
| EX.PBEINT         | GGA  | [Fabiano et al., 2010]           |                                                                                   |
| EX.OPTPBE         | GGA  | [Klimeš et al., 2010]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.OPTB88         | GGA  | [Klimeš et al., 2010]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.OPTB86B        | GGA  | [Klimeš et al., 2011]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.HTBS           | GGA  | [Haas et al., 2011]              |                                                                                   |
| EX.AK13           | GGA  | [Armiento and Kümmel, 2013]      |                                                                                   |
| EX.CAP            | GGA  | [Carmona-Espíndola et al., 2015] |                                                                                   |
| EX.SG4            | GGA  | [Constantin et al., 2016]        |                                                                                   |
| EX.MPBE           | GGA  | [Haas et al., 2010]              | xc1 ( $\mu$ ) and xc2 ( $\kappa$ ) are required                                   |
| EX.B3PW91         | GGA  | [Becke, 1993]                    | semilocal part of hybrid B3PW91                                                   |
| EX.B3LYP          | GGA  | [Stephens et al., 1994]          | semilocal part of hybrid B3LYP                                                    |
| EX.SPBE           | GGA  | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened PBE for hybrid ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> )                             |
| EX.SWC            | GGA  | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened WC for hybrid ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> )                              |
| EX.SPBEsol        | GGA  | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened PBEsol for hybrid ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> )                          |
| EX.SB88           | GGA  | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened B88 for hybrid ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> )                             |
| EX.SHJSPBE        | GGA  | [Henderson et al., 2008]         | screened PBE for hybrid ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> ), $\omega = (2/3)\lambda$    |
| EX.SHJSPBEsol     | GGA  | [Henderson et al., 2008]         | screened PBEsol for hybrid ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> ), $\omega = (2/3)\lambda$ |
| EX.SHJSB88        | GGA  | [Weintraub et al., 2009]         | screened B88 for hybrid ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> ), $\omega = (2/3)\lambda$    |
| EX.SHJSB97X       | GGA  | [Henderson et al., 2008]         | screened B97x for hybrid ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> ), $\omega = (2/3)\lambda$   |
| EX.VSXC           | MGGA | [Van Voorhis and Scuseria, 1998] |                                                                                   |
| EX.PKZB           | MGGA | [Perdew et al., 1999]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.TPSS           | MGGA | [Tao et al., 2003]               |                                                                                   |
| EX.REVTPSS        | MGGA | [Perdew et al., 2009]            |                                                                                   |
| EX.MGGA_MS        | MGGA | [Sun et al., 2013]               | xc1 ( $\kappa$ ), xc2 ( $c$ ) and xc3 ( $b$ ) are required                        |
| EX.MVS            | MGGA | [Sun et al., 2015a]              |                                                                                   |
| EX.MBEEF          | MGGA | [Wellendorff et al., 2014]       |                                                                                   |
| EX.SCAN           | MGGA | [Sun et al., 2015b]              |                                                                                   |
| EX.TM             | MGGA | [Tao and Mo, 2016]               |                                                                                   |
| EX.GRR            |      | [Tran and Blaha, 2009]           | average of $ \nabla\rho /\rho$ for mBJ ( <code>case.in0.grr</code> )              |

Table 7.4: EX-switches

| Keyword for $E_C$ | Type | Reference                        | Comments                    |
|-------------------|------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| EC.NONE           |      |                                  | no correlation energy       |
| EC.VWN5           | LDA  | [Vosko et al., 1980]             |                             |
| EC.LDA            | LDA  | [Perdew and Wang, 1992]          |                             |
| EC.LYP            | GGA  | [Lee et al., 1988]               |                             |
| EC.PW91           | GGA  | [Perdew et al., 1992]            |                             |
| EC.PBE            | GGA  | [Perdew et al., 1996]            |                             |
| EC.HCTH93         | GGA  | [Hamprecht et al., 1998]         |                             |
| EC.HCTH120        | GGA  | [Boese et al., 2000]             |                             |
| EC.HCTH147        | GGA  | [Boese et al., 2000]             |                             |
| EC.HCTH407        | GGA  | [Boese and Handy, 2001]          |                             |
| EC.AM05           | GGA  | [Armiento and Mattsson, 2005]    |                             |
| EC.PBESOL         | GGA  | [Perdew et al., 2008]            |                             |
| EC.RGE2           | GGA  | [Ruzsinszky et al., 2009]        |                             |
| EC.PBEINT         | GGA  | [Fabiano et al., 2010]           |                             |
| EC.SG4            | GGA  | [Constantin et al., 2016]        |                             |
| EC.MPBE           | GGA  | [Haas et al., 2010]              | xc3 ( $\beta$ ) is required |
| EC.ACGBA          | GGA  | [Burke et al., 2014]             |                             |
| EC.VSXC           | MGGA | [Van Voorhis and Scuseria, 1998] |                             |
| EC.PKZB           | MGGA | [Perdew et al., 1999]            |                             |
| EC.TPSS           | MGGA | [Tao et al., 2003]               |                             |
| EC.REVTPSS        | MGGA | [Perdew et al., 2009]            |                             |
| EC.MGGA_MS        | MGGA | [Sun et al., 2013]               |                             |
| EC.MVS            | MGGA | [Sun et al., 2015a]              |                             |
| EC.SCAN           | MGGA | [Sun et al., 2015b]              |                             |
| EC.TM             | MGGA | [Tao and Mo, 2016]               |                             |

Table 7.5: EC-switches

## 7.2.1 Execution

The program `dftd3` is executed by invoking the command:

```
x dftd3
```

## 7.2.2 Input

The options for the `dftd3` package have to be specified in the input file `case.indftd3`. If no input file is created by the user, then the script `run(sp)_lapw` will automatically copy the default one (which is the recommended one) from `$WIENROOT/SRC.templates/`:

```
----- top of file: case.indftd3 -----
method bj
func default
grad yes
pbc yes
abc yes
cutoff 95
cnthr 40
num no
----- bottom of file: -----
```

A short summary of the options is given below and more details can be found in the file `man.pdf` included in the `dftd3` TAR file. Note that `case.indftd3` is read by the C-SHELL script and that all data should be written in small letters.

- ▶ **method** : choice of the DFT-D method: **bj** (the recommended one), **zero** or **old** (this leads to the older DFT-D2 method).
- ▶ **func <functional>** : three choices are possible: (a) **default**, which means the functional specified in `case.in0` (possible only if the parameters  $s_6$ ,  $s_8$ , etc. for this functional are available), (b) one of the functionals listed in the FORTRAN file `dftd3.f` (e.g., **pbe** or **b-lyp**) or (c) **none**, which means that the parameters  $s_6$ ,  $s_8$ , etc. are read from the file `.dftd3par.hostname` created by the user in his home (not working) directory. Note that for hybrid functionals, it is mandatory to specify the functional name (**default** will not work).

| Keyword for $V_x$ | Type          | Reference                        | Comments                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VX_NONE           |               |                                  | no exchange potential                                                                                                              |
| VX.LDA            | LDA           | [Kohn and Sham, 1965]            |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.SLDA           | LDA           | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened LDA for hybrid ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> )                                                                                    |
| VX.B88            | GGA           | [Becke, 1988]                    |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.PW91           | GGA           | [Perdew et al., 1992]            |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.EV93           | GGA           | [Engel and Vosko, 1993]          |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.LB94           | GGA           | [van Leeuwen and Baerends, 1994] |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.PBE            | GGA           | [Perdew et al., 1996]            |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.REVPBE         | GGA           | [Zhang and Yang, 1998]           |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.RPBE           | GGA           | [Hammer et al., 1999]            |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.HCTH93         | GGA           | [Hamprecht et al., 1998]         |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.HCTH120        | GGA           | [Boese et al., 2000]             |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.HCTH147        | GGA           | [Boese et al., 2000]             |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.HCTH407        | GGA           | [Boese and Handy, 2001]          |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.AM05           | GGA           | [Armiento and Mattsson, 2005]    |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.WC             | GGA           | [Wu and Cohen, 2006]             |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.PBE-ALPHA      | GGA           | [Madsen, 2007]                   |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.PBESOL         | GGA           | [Perdew et al., 2008]            |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.SOGGA          | GGA           | [Zhao and Truhlar, 2008]         |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.RGE2           | GGA           | [Ruzsinszky et al., 2009]        |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.PBEINT         | GGA           | [Fabiano et al., 2010]           |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.OPTPBE         | GGA           | [Klimeš et al., 2010]            |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.OPTB88         | GGA           | [Klimeš et al., 2010]            |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.OPTB86B        | GGA           | [Klimeš et al., 2011]            |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.HTBS           | GGA           | [Haas et al., 2011]              |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.AK13           | GGA           | [Armiento and Kümmel, 2013]      |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.CAP            | GGA           | [Carmona-Espindola et al., 2015] |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.SG4            | GGA           | [Constantin et al., 2016]        |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.MPBE           | GGA           | [Haas et al., 2010]              | xc1 ( $\mu$ ) and xc2 ( $\kappa$ ) are required                                                                                    |
| VX.B3PW91         | GGA           | [Becke, 1993]                    | semilocal part of hybrid B3PW91                                                                                                    |
| VX.B3LYP          | GGA           | [Stephens et al., 1994]          | semilocal part of hybrid B3LYP                                                                                                     |
| VX.SPBE           | GGA           | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened PBE for hybrid ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> )                                                                                    |
| VX.SWC            | GGA           | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened WC for hybrid ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> )                                                                                     |
| VX.SPBEsol        | GGA           | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened PBEsol for hybrid ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> )                                                                                 |
| VX.SB88           | GGA           | [Tran and Blaha, 2011]           | screened B88 for hybrid ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> )                                                                                    |
| VX.SHJSPBE        | GGA           | [Henderson et al., 2008]         | screened PBE for hybrid ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> ), $\omega = (2/3)\lambda$                                                           |
| VX.SHJSPBEsol     | GGA           | [Henderson et al., 2008]         | screened PBEsol for hybrid ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> ), $\omega = (2/3)\lambda$                                                        |
| VX.SHJSB88        | GGA           | [Weintraub et al., 2009]         | screened B88 for hybrid ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> ), $\omega = (2/3)\lambda$                                                           |
| VX.SHJSB97X       | GGA           | [Henderson et al., 2008]         | screened B97x for hybrid ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> ), $\omega = (2/3)\lambda$                                                          |
| VX.BR89           | MGGA          | [Becke and Roussel, 1989]        |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.MBJ            | MGGA          | [Becke and Johnson, 2006]        |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.GBJ            | MGGA          | [Tran et al., 2015]              | xc1 ( $\gamma$ ), xc2 ( $p$ ) and xc3 (0=no UC, 1=UC) are required. $c$ is in <b>case.in0abp</b>                                   |
| VX.SMBJ           | MGGA/nonlocal | [Becke and Johnson, 2006]        |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.SLATER         | nonlocal      | [Slater, 1951]                   |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.KLI            | nonlocal      | [Krieger et al., 1990]           |                                                                                                                                    |
| VX.RS             |               |                                  | $r_{s,\sigma} = (3/(8\pi\rho_\sigma))^{1/3}$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting                                               |
| VX.S              |               |                                  | $s_\sigma =  \nabla\rho_\sigma  / ((3\pi^2)^{1/3} (2\rho_\sigma)^{4/3})$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting                   |
| VX.LAPRHO         |               |                                  | $\nabla^2\rho_\sigma$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting                                                                      |
| VX.TAU            |               |                                  | $\tau_\sigma$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting (post-PBE calculation only)                                                  |
| VX.TAUTF          |               |                                  | $\tau_\sigma^{TF}$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting                                                                         |
| VX.TAUW           |               |                                  | $\tau_\sigma^W$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting                                                                            |
| VX.TAU-TAUW       |               |                                  | $\tau_\sigma - \tau_\sigma^W$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting (post-PBE calculation only)                                  |
| VX.Z              |               |                                  | $\tau_\sigma^W / \tau_\sigma$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting (post-PBE calculation only)                                  |
| VX.ALPHA          |               |                                  | $(\tau_\sigma - \tau_\sigma^W) / \tau_\sigma^{TF}$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting (post-PBE only)                         |
| VX.ELF            |               | [Becke and Edgecombe, 1990]      | ELF = $\frac{1}{1 + ((\tau_\sigma - \tau_\sigma^W) / \tau_\sigma^{TF})^2}$ written in <b>case.r2v</b> for plotting (post-PBE only) |
| VX.GRR            |               | [Tran and Blaha, 2009]           | average of $ \nabla\rho  / \rho$ for mBJ ( <b>case.in0.grr</b> )                                                                   |

Table 7.6: VX-switches

| Keyword for $V_C$ | Type | Reference                     | Comments                    |
|-------------------|------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| VC.NONE           |      |                               | no correlation potential    |
| VC.LDA            | LDA  | [Perdew and Wang, 1992]       |                             |
| VC.VWN5           | LDA  | [Vosko et al., 1980]          |                             |
| VC.LYP            | GGA  | [Lee et al., 1988]            |                             |
| VC.PW91           | GGA  | [Perdew et al., 1992]         |                             |
| VC.PBE            | GGA  | [Perdew et al., 1996]         |                             |
| VC.HCTH93         | GGA  | [Hamprecht et al., 1998]      |                             |
| VC.HCTH120        | GGA  | [Boese et al., 2000]          |                             |
| VC.HCTH147        | GGA  | [Boese et al., 2000]          |                             |
| VC.HCTH407        | GGA  | [Boese and Handy, 2001]       |                             |
| VC.AM05           | GGA  | [Armiento and Mattsson, 2005] |                             |
| VC.PBESOL         | GGA  | [Perdew et al., 2008]         |                             |
| VC.RGE2           | GGA  | [Ruzsinszky et al., 2009]     |                             |
| VC.PBEINT         | GGA  | [Fabiano et al., 2010]        |                             |
| VC.SG4            | GGA  | [Constantin et al., 2016]     |                             |
| VC.MPBE           | GGA  | [Haas et al., 2010]           | xc3 ( $\beta$ ) is required |
| VC.ACGGA          | GGA  | [Burke et al., 2014]          |                             |

Table 7.7: VC-switches

- ▶ **grad** : **yes** or **no** for the calculation of the forces on the nuclei (necessary for the minimization of internal parameters).
- ▶ **pbc** : **yes** or **no** for periodic boundary conditions (pbc). It should be **no** for an isolated atom or molecule in a big box.
- ▶ **abc** : **yes** or **no** for the calculation of the three-body dispersion contribution with DFT-D3.
- ▶ **cutoff <value>** : The cutoff for the dispersion interaction. The default is 95 bohr.
- ▶ **cnthr <value>** : The cutoff for the coordination number CN. The default is 40 bohr.
- ▶ **num** : **yes** or **no** for the numerical (instead of analytical) calculation of forces.

## 7.3 NL-vdW (Calculate the dispersion energy with nonlocal van der Waals functionals)

**nlvdw** calculates the dispersion energy and potential with nonlocal van der Waals (NL-vdW) functionals [Dion et al., 2004] using the FFT-based method of Román-Pérez and Soler [Román-Pérez and Soler, 2009]. Details specific to **WIEN2k** can be found in [Tran et al., 2017].

### 7.3.1 Execution

The program **nlvdw** is executed by invoking the command:

```
x nlvdw [-p]
```

### 7.3.2 Input

The program **nlvdw** needs the electron density on a grid in the unit cell in **case.xsf**. This file is prepared automatically by **prepare\_xsf\_lapw** when **run\_lapw** is executed with the **-nlvdw** switch. The options for the **nlvdw** package have to be specified in the input file **case.innlvdw**. A template can be found in **\$WIENROOT/SRC/templates/**:

```
----- top of file: case.innlvdw -----
1 kernel type
-0.8491 parameters of the kernel
20 plane-wave expansion cutoff GMAX
0.3 density cutoff rhoc
T calculation of the potential (T or F)
----- bottom of file: -----
```

The options are explained below:

- ▶ **kernel type** : 1 (for the analytical form of [Dion et al., 2004]) or 2 (for the analytical form of [Vydrov and Van Voorhis, 2010, Sabatini et al., 2013]).
- ▶ **parameters of the kernel** : one value ( $Z_{ab}$ ) for kernel type 1 (e.g., -0.8491 from [Dion et al., 2004] or -1.887 from [Lee et al., 2010]) or two values ( $b$  and  $C$ ) for kernel type 2 (e.g.,  $b = 6.3$  and  $C = 0.0093$  for rVV10 [Vydrov and Van Voorhis, 2010, Sabatini et al., 2013]).
- ▶ **plane-wave expansion cutoff GMAX** : 20 bohr<sup>-1</sup> is a relatively good value.
- ▶ **density cutoff rhoc** : 0.3 bohr<sup>-3</sup> is a relatively good value.
- ▶ **potential** : if set to T (true), the potential is calculated.

## 7.4 ORB (Calculate orbital dependent potentials)

This program was contributed by:


 P.Novák  
 Inst. of Physics, Acad.Science, Prague, Czeck Republic  
 email: novakp@fzu.cz

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

**orb** calculates the orbital dependent potentials, i.e. potentials which are nonzero in the atomic spheres only and depend on the orbital state numbers  $l, m$ . In the present version the potential is assumed to be independent of the radius vector and needs the density matrix calculated in **lapwdm**. Four different potentials are implemented in this package:

- ▶ LDA+U. There are three variants of this method, two of them are discussed in [Novák et al., 2001]
  1. LDA+U(SIC) - introduced by [Anisimov et al., 1993], with an approximate correction for the self-interaction correction. This is probably best suited for strongly correlated systems and for a full potential method we recommend to use an “effective”  $U_{eff} = U - J$ ; setting  $J = 0$ .
  2. LDA+U(AMF) - introduced by [Czyżyk and Sawatzky, 1994] as ‘Around the Mean Field’ method. (In [Novák et al., 2001] it is denoted as LDA+U(DFT)). This version is (probably) more suitable for metallic or less strongly correlated systems.
  3. LDA+U(HMF) - in addition the Hubbard model in the mean field approximation, as introduced by [Anisimov et al., 1991] is also implemented. Note, however, that it is to be used with the LDA (not LSDA) exchange-correlation potential in spin polarized calculations!

All variants are implemented in the rotationally invariant way [Liechtenstein et al., 1995]. If LDA+U is used in an unrestricted, general way, it introduces an orbital field in the calculation (in analogy to the exchange field in spin-polarized calculations, but it interacts with the orbital, instead of spin momentum). The presence of such an orbital field may lower the symmetry. In particular the complex version of LAPW1 must be used. Care is needed when dealing with the LDA+U orbital field. It may be quite large, and without specifying its direction it may fluctuate, leading to oscillations of scf procedure or/and to false solutions. It is therefore necessary to use it in combination with the spin-orbit coupling, preferably running first LSDA+(s-o) and then slowly switching on the LDA+U orbital field. If the LDA+U orbital

polarization is not needed, it is sufficient to run real version of LAPW1, which then automatically puts the orbital field equal to zero. For systems without the center of inversion, when LAPW1 must be complex, an extra averaging of the LDA+U potential is necessary.

- ▶ Orbital polarization. The additional potential has the form [Brooks, 1985, Eriksson and Johansson, 1989]:

$$V_{OP} = c_{OP} \langle L_z \rangle l_z \quad (7.1)$$

where  $c_{OP}$  is the orbital polarization parameter,  $\langle L_z \rangle$  is projection of the orbital momentum on the magnetization direction and  $l_z$  is single electron orbital momentum component  $z$  parallel to  $\vec{M}$ .

- ▶ Exact exchange and Hybrid methods: see [Tran et al., 2006] and 4.5.7
- ▶ Interaction with the external magnetic field. In this case the additional potential has a simple form:

$$V_{B_{ext}} = \mu_B \vec{B}_{ext} (\vec{l} + 2\vec{s}). \quad (7.2)$$

The interaction with the electronic spin is taken into account by shifting the spin up and spin down exchange correlation potentials in LAPW0 by the energy  $+\mu_B B_{ext}$  and  $-\mu_B B_{ext}$ , respectively. The interaction of  $B_{ext}$  with spin could be as well calculated using the 'Fixed spin moment' method. For an interaction with the orbital momentum it is necessary to specify the atoms and angular momentum numbers for which this interaction will be considered. Caution is needed when considering interaction of the orbital momentum with  $B_{ext}$  in metallic or metallic-like systems. For the analysis see the paper by [Hirst, 1997]

In all cases the resulting potential for a given atom and orbital number  $l$  is a Hermitian,  $(2l + 1) \times (2l + 1)$  matrix. In general this matrix is complex, but in special cases it may be real.

For more information see also section 4.5.6.

### 7.4.1 Execution

The program **orb** is executed by invoking the command:

```
x orb [-up/-dn/-ud] or orb up/dnorb.def
```

### 7.4.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are used (collected in file **param.inc**):

|      |                                                   |
|------|---------------------------------------------------|
| LABC | highest l+1 value of orbital dependent potentials |
| NRAD | number of radial mesh points                      |

### 7.4.3 Input

Since this program can handle three different cases, examples and descriptions of **case.inorb** for all cases are given below:

#### Input for all potentials

**line 1:** free format

```
nmod,natorb,ipr
```

|        |                                                                     |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nmod   | defines the type of potential 1...LDA+U, 2...OP, 3... $B_{ext}$     |
| natorb | number of atoms for which orbital potential $V_{orb}$ is calculated |
| ipr    | printing option, the larger ipr, the longer the output              |

**line 2:** (A5,f8.2)

mixmod,amix

mixmod PRATT or BROYD (should not be changed, see MIXER for more information)

amix coefficient for the Pratt mixing of  $V_{orb}$   
This option is now only used for testing. The mixing should be set to PRATT, 1.0

**line 3:** free format

iatom(i),nlorb(i),(lorb(li,i),li=1,nlorb(i))

iatom index of atom in struct file

nlorb number of orbital moments for which Vorb shall be applied

lorb orbital numbers (repeated nlorb-times)

**3rd line repeated natorb-times****Input for LDA+U (nmod=1)****line 4:** free format

nsic defines 'double counting correction'  
 nsic=0 'AMF method' (Czyzyk et al. 1994)  
 nsic=1 'SIC method' (Anisimov et al. 1993, Liechtenstein et al. 1995)  
 nsic=2 'HMF method' (Anisimov et al. 1991)

**line 5:** free format

U(li,i), Coulomb and exchange parameters, U and J, for LDA+U in Ry for atom  
 J(li,i) type i and orbital number li. We recommend to use  $U_{eff}$  only.

**5th line repeated natorb-times, for each natorb repeated nlorb-times**

Example of the input file for NiO (LDA+U included for two inequivalent Ni atoms that have indexes 1 and 2 in the structure file):

```
----- top of file: case.inorb -----
1 2 0 nmod, natorb, ipr
PRATT,1.0 mixmod, amix
1 1 2 iatom nlorb, lorb
2 1 2 iatom nlorb, lorb
1 nsic (LDA+U(SIC) used)
0.52 0.0 U J
0.52 0.0 U J
----- bottom of file: -----
```

**Input for Orbital Polarization (nmod=2)****line 4:** (free format)

nmodop defines mode of 'OP'  
 1 average  $L_z$  taken separately for spin up, spin down  
 0 average  $L_z$  is the sum for spin up and spin down

**line 5:** (free format)

|          |   |                                              |
|----------|---|----------------------------------------------|
| Ncalc(i) | 1 | Orb.pol. parameters are calculated ab-initio |
|          | 0 | Orb.pol. parameters are read from input      |

**this line is repeated natorb-times**

**line 6:** (free format) (only if Ncalc=0, then repeated nlorb-times)

|           |                    |
|-----------|--------------------|
| pop(li,i) | OP parameter in Ry |
|-----------|--------------------|

**line 7:** (free format)

xms(1), xms(2), xms(3)

direction of magnetization expressed in terms of lattice vectors

Example of the input file for NiO (total  $\langle L_z \rangle$  used in (1), OP parameters calculated ab-initio,  $\vec{M}$  along [001]):

```
----- top of file: case.inorb -----
2 2 0 nmod, natorb, ipr
PRATT, 1.0 mixmod, amix
1 1 2 iatom nlorb, lorb
2 1 2 iatom nlorb, lorb
0 nmodop
1 Ncalc
1 Ncalc
0. 0. 1. direction of M in terms of lattice vectors
----- bottom of file -----
```

**Input for interaction with  $B_{ext}$  (nmod=3)**

**line 4:** (free format)

|           |                         |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| $B_{ext}$ | external field in Tesla |
|-----------|-------------------------|

**line 5:** (free format)

xms(1), xms(2), xms(3)

direction of magnetization expressed in terms of lattice vectors

Example of the input file for NiO, ( $B_{ext}=4$  T, along [001]):

```
----- top of file: case.inorb -----
3 2 0 nmod, natorb, ipr
PRATT, 1.0 mixmod, amix
1 1 2 iatom nlorb, lorb
2 1 2 iatom nlorb, lorb
4. Bext in T
0. 0. 1. direction of Bext in terms of lattice vectors
----- bottom of file -----
```

## 7.5 LAPW1 (generates eigenvalues and eigenvectors)

**lapw1** sets up the Hamiltonian and the overlap matrix ([Koelling and Arbman, 1975]) and finds by diagonalization eigenvalues and eigenvectors which are written to **case.vector**. Besides the standard LAPW basis set, also the APW+lo method (see [Sjöstedt et al., 2000, Madsen et al., 2001]) is supported and the basis sets can be mixed for maximal efficiency. You can also set multiple LOs (low- or high-energy LOs, eg. for NMR calculations, or for including more (semi-)core states or for a better description of high-energy states (typically 2-4 Ry above  $E_F$ ) for spectroscopies (XANES, TELNES, optics at high energy)). When adding such LOs, make sure their E-parameters are far away from each other (typically at least 1 Ry, often 2.4 Ry), otherwise ghostbands may occur. In addition (or sometimes, alternatively) a second-derivative (HDLO) LO for improved E-linearization of valence bands (in particular for d and f-states and large RMTs)[Karsai et al., 2017] can be defined. If the file **case.vns** exists (i.e. non-spherical terms in the potential), a full-potential calculation is performed.

For structures without inversion symmetry, where the hamilton and overlap matrix elements are complex numbers, the corresponding program version **lapw1c** must be used in connection with **lapw2c** (this will be done automatically, when using the **x.lapw** script..

Since usually the diagonalization is the most time consuming part of the calculations, two options exist here. In **WIEN2k** we include highly optimized modifications of LAPACK routines. We call all these routines “full diagonalization”, but we also provide an option to do an “iterative diagonalization” using a new preconditioning of a block-Davidson method (see [Singh, 1989, Blaha et al., 2009]). The scheme uses an old eigenvector from the previous scf-iteration, and produces approximate (but usually still highly accurate) eigenvalues/vectors. The preconditioner (inverse of  $(H - \lambda S)$ ) can be calculated at the first iterative step (which will therefore take longer than subsequent iterative steps), stored on disk (**case.storeHinv**) and reused in all subsequent scf-iterations (until the next “full” diagonalization or when it is recreated (x lapw1 -it -noHinv0)). Usually this is the fastest scheme, but storage of **case.storeHinv** can be large (and slow when you have a slow network) and when the Hamiltonian changes too much, performance may degrade. Alternatively, the preconditioner can be recalculated all the time (x lapw1 -it -noHinv). Depending on the ratio of matrix size to number of eigenvalues (cpu time increases linearly with the number of eigenvalues, but a sufficiently large number is necessary to ensure convergence) a significant speedup compared to “full” diagonalization (LAPACK) can be reached. Iterative diagonalization is activated with the **-it** switch in **x lapw1 -it** or **run\_lapw -it**. Often the preconditioner is so efficient, that it does not need to be recalculated, even within a structural optimization and one can use **min\_lapw -j ``run\_lapw -I -fc 1 -it``**. In some cases it is preferable to use **min\_lapw -j ``run\_lapw -I -fc 1 -it1``**, which will recreate **case.storeHinv**, or do not store these files at all using **min\_lapw -j ``run\_lapw -I -fc 1 -it -noHinv ``**

Parallel execution (fine grain and on the k-point level) is also possible and is described in detail in Sec. 5.5. As an alternative to ScalaPack one can also use the ELPA library for diagonalization.

The switch **-nohns** skips the calculation of the nonspherical matrix elements inside the sphere. This may be used to save computer time during the first scf cycles.

### 7.5.1 Execution

The program **lapw1** is executed by invoking the command:

```
x lapw1 [-c -up|dn -it -noHinv|-noHinv0 -p -nohns -orb -band
-nmat_only -nmr] or
lapw1 lapw1.def or lapw1c lapw1.def
```

In cases without inversion symmetry, the default input filename is `case.in1c`. For 2-window (not recommended) semi-core calculations the `lapw1s.def` file uses a `case.in1s` file and creates the files `case.output1s` and `case.vectors`. For the spin-polarized case `lapw1` is called twice with `uplapw1.def` and `dnlapw1.def`. To all relevant files the keywords “up” or “dn” are appended (see the fcc Ni test case in the **WIEN2k** package).

## 7.5.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters (collected in file `param.inc.r` or `param.inc.c`) are used:

|                 |                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LMAX            | highest l+1 in basis function inside sphere (consistent with input in case.in1)                                                      |
| LMMX            | number of LM terms in potential (should be at least NCOM-1)                                                                          |
| LOMAX           | highest l for local orbital basis (consistent with input in case.in1)                                                                |
| NMATMAX         | maximum size of H,S-matrix (defines size of program, should be chosen according to the memory of your hardware, see chapter 11.2.2!) |
| NRAD            | number of radial mesh points                                                                                                         |
| NSYM            | order of point group                                                                                                                 |
| NUME            | maximum number of energy eigenvalues per k-point                                                                                     |
| NVEC1           | defines the largest triple of integers which define reciprocal                                                                       |
| NVEC2           | K-vectors when multiplied with the reciprocal Bravais matrix                                                                         |
| NVEC3           |                                                                                                                                      |
| restrict_output | for mpi-jobs, limits the number of case.output1_X_proc_XXX files to “restrict_output”                                                |

## 7.5.3 Input

Below a sample input is shown for  $TiO_2$  (rutile), one of the test cases provided in the **WIEN2k** package. The input file is written automatically by LSTART, but was modified to set APW only for Ti-3d and O-2p orbitals.

```
----- top of file: case.in1 -----
WFFIL EF=0.5000 (WFPRI,WFFIL,SUPWF ; wave fct. print,file,suppress
 7.500 10 4 ELPA pxq hm (R-mt*K-max; MAX l, max l for hns)
 0.30 5 0 (global energy parameter E(l), with 5 other choices, LAPW)
0 -3.00 0.020 CONT 0 ENERGY PARAMETER for s, LAPW
0 0.30 0.000 CONT 0 ENERGY PARAMETER for s-local orbital, LAPW-LO
1 -1.90 0.020 CONT 0 ENERGY PARAMETER for p, LAPW
1 0.30 0.000 CONT 0 ENERGY PARAMETER for p-local orbitals LAPW-LO
2 0.20 0.020 CONT 1 APW
 0.20 3 0 (global energy parameter E(l), with 1 other choice, LAPW)
0 -0.90 0.020 STOP 0 LAPW
0 0.30 0.000 CONT 0 LAPW-LO
1 0.30 0.000 CONT 1 APW
K-VECTORS FROM UNIT:4 -9.0 2.0 69 emin/emax/nband
1.d-15 0.0 spro_limit for it.diag., lambda for it.diag
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments follow:

**line 1:** free format

switch, EF

- switch WFFIL standard option, writes wave functions to file `case.vector` (needed in `lapw2`)
- SUPWF suppresses wave function calculation (faster for testing eigenvalues only)
- WFPRI prints eigenvectors to `case.output1` and writes `case.vector` (produces long outputs!)

EF optional input. If "EF=" key is present, lapw1 reads EF and sets the default energy parameters (0.3) to "EF-0.2" or "EF+0.2" (when a "shallow-LO" is present) Ry.

**line 2:** free format

rkmax, lmax, lnsmax, library, gridshape, memory

rkmax  $R_{mt} * K_{max}$  determines matrix size (convergence), where Kmax is the plane wave cut-off, Rmt is the smallest of all atomic sphere radii. Usually this value should be between 5 and 9 (APW+lo) or 6 - 10. (LAPW-basis) ( $K_{max}^2$  would be the plane wave cut-off parameter in Ry used in pseudopotential calculations.) Note that d (f) wavefunctions converge slower than s and p. For systems including hydrogen with short bondlength and thus a very small  $R_{mt}$  (e.g. 0.7 a.u.), RKmax = 3 might already be reasonable, but convergence must be checked for a new type of system.  
Note, that the actual matrix size is written on case.scf1. It is determined by whatever is smaller, the plane wave cut-off (specified with RKmax) or the maximum matrix dimension NMATMAX, (see previous section).

lmax maximum l value for partial waves used inside atomic spheres (should be between 8 and 12)

lnsmax maximum l value for partial waves used in the computation of non-muffin-tin matrix elements (lnsmax=4 is quite good, but for large spheres and highest precision one could increase it to eg. 6). Larger lnsmax may increase cputime significantly.

library ELPA ELPA is used to solve the eigenvalue problem in case of parallel calculations (default).  
SCALA ScaLAPACK is used to solve the eigenvalue problem in case of parallel calculations.  
Note, that this switch is only referenced, if **lapw1** has been compiled with -DELPA.

gridshape pxq pxq processor grid for parallel calculations  
qxp qxp processor grid (for rectangular grids; p is the large, and q the small dimension)

memory hm default for parallel calculations using ELPA. There has to be enough memory to allocate an additional array of the size of H.  
lm can be used for calculations with ELPA if the memory is limited. However, a (small) performance penalty occurs due to more MPI communication.

**line 3:** free format

Etrial, ndiff, Napw

Etrial default energy used for all  $E_l$  to obtain  $u_l(r, E_l)$  as regular solution of the radial Schrödinger equation [used in equ.2.4,2.7] (see figure 7.1).

ndiff number of exceptions (specified in the next ndiff lines)

Napw 0 ... use LAPW basis, 1 ... use APW-basis for all "global" l values of this atom. We recommend to use LAPW here.

**line 4:** format(I2,2F10.5,A4,I2)

l, El, de, switch, NAPWL

l l of partial wave  
El  $E_l$  for L=l

|        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| de     | energy increment<br>de=0: this E(l) overwrites the default energy (from line 3)<br>de≠ 0: a search for a resonance energy using this increment is done. Use very small de for semicore states or high precision total energy comparisons. The radial function $u_l(r, E)$ up to the muffin-tin radius RMT varies with the energy. A typical case is schematically shown in Fig. 7.1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|        | At the bottom of the energy bands u has a zero slope (bonding state), but it has a zero value (antibonding state) at the top of the bands. One can search up and down in energy starting with $E_l$ using the increment de to find where $u_l(R_{MT}, E)$ changes sign in value to determine $E_{top}$ and in slope to specify $E_{bottom}$ . If both are found $E_l$ is taken as the arithmetic mean and replaces the trial energy. Otherwise $E_l$ keeps the specified value. For $E_{top}$ and $E_{bottom}$ bounds of +1 and -10 Ry are defined respectively, and if they are not found, they remain at the initial value set to -200. |
| switch | used only if de.ne.0<br>CONT calculation continues, even if either $E_{top}$ or $E_{bottom}$ are not found<br>STOP calculation stops if not both $E_{top}$ and $E_{bottom}$ are found (especially useful for semi-core states)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| NAPWL  | 0 ... use LAPW basis, 1 ... use APW-basis, 2 ... use HDLO for this l value of this atom. We recommend to use APW+lo when the corresponding wavefunction is "localized" and thus difficult to converge with standard LAPW (like 3d functions) and/or when the respective atomic sphere is small compared to the other spheres in the unit cell.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

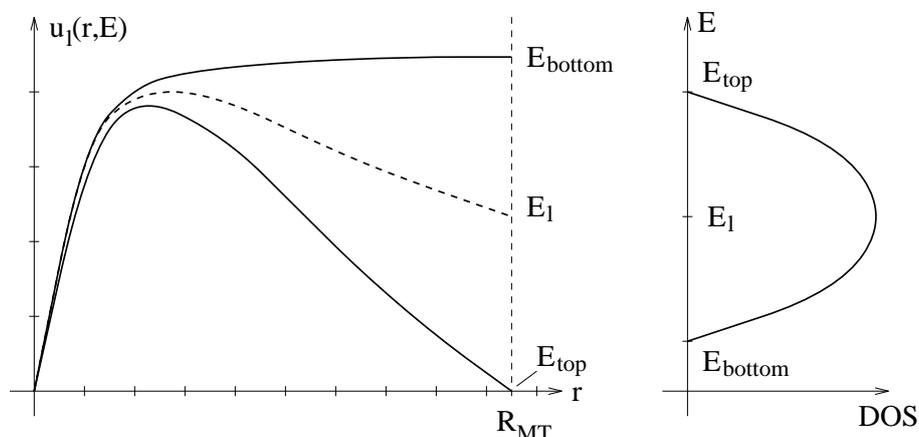


Figure 7.1: Schematic dependence of DOS and  $u_l(r, E_l)$  on the energy

>>>:line 4 is repeated ndiff times (see line 3) for each exception. If the same l value is specified more than once, local orbitals are added to the (L)APW basis, but only ONE HDLO per l-value is allowed. The first energy ( $E_1$ ) is used for the usual LAPW's and the second energy ( $E_2$ ) for the LOs, which are formed according to (see equ. 2.7):  $u_{E_1} + \dot{u}_{E_1} + u_{E_2}$ .  
 Note: The default energy parameters (0.30) are replaced by an energy " $E_F - 0.2$ ", or by " $E_F + 0.2$ " if a shallow semicore state ( $E_{LO} > -2.0Ry$ ) has been defined too. Please read also the comments about **run\_lapw** in section 5.1.4. In addition, you may want to change the automatically created input and add HDLOs or d- or f-local orbitals at high energies to reduce the linearization error of valence or conduction band states, respectively (e.g. for spectroscopy you could put s, p, d, and/or f-LOs at very high energies (typically more than about 3.0 Ry) to better describe unoccupied states.

>>>:lines 3 and 4 are repeated for each non equivalent atom

line 5: format (20x,i1,2f10.1,i6)

unit-number, Emin, Emax, nband, divide

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| unit-number | file number from which the k-vectors in the irreducible wedge of the Brillouin zone are read. Default is 4, for which the corresponding information is contained in <b>case.klist</b> (generated by KGEN). Should not be changed.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| EMIN, EMAX  | energy window in which eigenvalues shall be searched (overrides setting in <b>case.klist</b> ). A small window saves computer time, but it also limits the energy range for the DOS calculation of unoccupied states. Note: When using ELPA for MPI-parallel computations EMAX does NOT determine the largest eigenvalue and is ignored. To increase the number of computed eigenvalues in that case you have to increase nband. |
| nband       | number of eigenvalues calculated with iterative diagonalization and when ELPA is used (for MPI-parallel computation). Set automatically to $nband = (ne * 2.0 + 5) / ispin$ (where <i>ispin</i> is 2 for non-spinpolarized and 1 for spinpolarized cases) in <b>lstart</b> and <b>init_lapw</b> . Larger values will lead to more cpu-time. (optional input)                                                                     |
| divide      | optional keyword to trigger the divide+conquer diagonalization, which could be useful for "all" eigenvalues (optional input)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

line 6: free format; optional input line, but necessary if k-vectors are read from unit 5

spro\_limit, lambda\_iter

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| spro_limit  | limit for detection of linear dependency for iterative diagonalization (optional input), typical around 1.d-15)                                                                                                              |
| lambda_iter | optional $\lambda$ value for preconditioner of iterative diagonalization (see above). By default we use $\lambda = 0$ , but in some cases convergence can be improved by a small (around 1.0) positive or negative $\lambda$ |

line 7: format (A10,4I10,3F5.2); (only when unit-number=5, not recommended, use unit 4 and **case.klist**)

name, ix,iy,iz, idv, weight

|               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| name          | name of k-vector (optional)<br>>>>: the last line must be END !!                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| ix,iy,iz, idv | defines the k-vector, where $x = ix/idv$ etc. We use cartesian coordinates in units of $2\pi/a$ , $2\pi/b$ , $2\pi/c$ for P, C, F and B cubic, tetragonal and orthorhombic lattices, but internal coordinates for H and monoclinic/triclinic lattices |
| weight        | of k-vector (order of group of k)                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

>>>: line 7 is repeated for each k-vector in the IBZ. The utility program **kgen** (see section 6.5) provides a list of such vectors (on a tetrahedral mesh) in **case.klist**.

>>>: the last line must be END

## 7.6 HF (Calculates the hybrid orbitals and eigenvalues)

**hf** calculates the orbitals and eigenvalues for hybrid functionals using the second-variational procedure, i.e., the semilocal orbitals generated by **lapw1** are used as basis functions for the second-

variational Hamiltonian [Tran and Blaha, 2011]. The number of these basis functions is determined by `nband` in `case.inhf`, but you have to make sure that `lapw1` calculates sufficient bands, which is determined by `EMAX` (or in case of MPI-parallel computations with ELPA by `nband`) in `case.in1(c)`. The hybrid orbitals are stored in `case.vectorhf` (full Brillouin zone).

Since calculations with hybrid functionals are much more expensive than with semilocal functionals, it is important to choose carefully the values of the various parameters (`nband`, `gmax`, `lmaxe` and `lmaxv`) in `case.inhf` because the computational time will depend strongly on them. Choosing carefully the value of a parameter means to determine (by test calculations) the lowest value which is enough for the accuracy that is needed. This will depend on the solid, the property (e.g., lattice constant or band gap) and the RMT. The smaller the RMT is, the more `lmaxe` and `lmaxv` can be chosen to be small, while `gmax` will need to be increased.

Setting up a hybrid calculation needs some additional considerations and is described in detail in Sec. 4.5.8. Parallel execution (fine grain MPI and on the k-point level) is also possible and is described in Secs. 4.5.8 and 5.5.

Beside the selfconsistent calculations, it is also possible to calculate the total energy with hybrid functionals non-selfconsistently (switch `-nonself`) and to calculate the hybrid eigenvalues (but not the orbitals) in a cheap way (switch `-diaghf`).

### 7.6.1 Execution

The program `hf` is executed by invoking the command:

```
x hf [-up/dn -c -p -band -diaghf -nonself -newklist -redklist
 -model/mode2] or
hf hf.def or hfc hf.def
```

### 7.6.2 Input

```
----- top of file: case.inhf -----
0.25 alpha
T screened (T) or unscreened (F)
0.165 lambda
xx nband
6 gmax
3 lmaxe
3 lmaxv
1d-3 tolu
----- bottom of file: -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

$\alpha$                     fraction ( $\alpha \in [0, 1]$ ) of Hartree-Fock exchange

**line 2:** free format

screening                if set to F (false), no screening is applied to the exchange. If set to T (true), the exchange is screened by means of the Yukawa potential and the screening parameter  $\lambda$  will have to be specified in the next line. Note, that unscreend HF requires a denser k-mesh than screened HF.

**line 3:** free format

$\lambda$  screening parameter in bohr<sup>-1</sup>. This line should be present only if screening is set to T (true) in line 2. With the value  $\lambda = 0.165$  bohr<sup>-1</sup>, the results are very close to the values from the HSE06 hybrid functional [Tran and Blaha, 2011]. Values for  $\lambda$  smaller than 0.0001 or larger than  $\sim 5$  can eventually lead to suspicious results due to numerical instabilities.

**line 4:** free format

nband the number of bands used for the 2nd variational procedure. nband should be at least equal to the number of (partially) occupied bands plus one. The choice for nband will depend strongly on the studied property and accuracy needed. If the switch **-diaghf** is used, then the accuracy of the eigenvalues will not depend on the value of nband, therefore nband can be chosen as the smallest value that you want (but still at least to the number of occupied bands plus one)

**line 5:** free format

gmax magnitude of the largest vector **G** in the Fourier expansion of the product of two orbitals and the generated potential in the interstitial region (Eqs. (13) and (14) in [Tran and Blaha, 2011]). gmax=6 can eventually represent a good compromise between computational time and accuracy.

**line 6:** free format

lmaxe maximum value of the angular momentum for the expansion in spherical harmonics of the product of two orbitals and the generated potential inside the atomic spheres (Eqs. (13) and (14) in [Tran and Blaha, 2011]). lmaxe=3 or 4 are usually large enough for good accuracy for light elements. For systems with *f* electrons, the value lmaxe=6 may eventually be necessary.

**line 7:** free format

lmaxv maximum value of the angular momentum of the expansion of the orbitals ( $\ell_i$  in Eq. (15) in [Tran and Blaha, 2011]). The value should be at least equal to the largest chemical  $\ell$  present in the system.

**line 8:** free format

tolerance below this value, the double radial integrals in Eq. (26) [Tran and Blaha, 2011] are neglected. With tolu=1d-3 (or even 1d-2) not much accuracy is lost.

## 7.7 LAPWSO (adds spin orbit coupling)

**lapwso** includes spin-orbit (SO) coupling in a second-variational procedure and computes eigenvalues and eigenvectors (stored in **case.vectorso**) using the scalar-relativistic wavefunctions from **lapw1**. For reference see [Singh and Nordström, 2006, Novák, 1997]. The SO coupling must

be small, as it is diagonalized in the space of the scalar relativistic eigenstates. For large spin orbit effects it might be necessary to include many more eigenstates from **lapw1** by increasing EMAX in **case.in1** (up to 10 Ry!) - if you are running MPI-parallel calculations with ELPA you have to increase nband in **case.in1** instead!. We also provide an additional basisfunction, namely a "relativistic-LO" (RLO) with a  $p_{1/2}$  radial wavefunction, which improves the basis and removes to a large degree the dependency of the results on EMAX and RMT (see [Kuneš et al., 2001]). It is particular helpfull for heavier atoms with semicore p-states, but it must not be used for EFG calculations. SO is considered only within the atomic spheres and thus the results may depend to some extent on the choice of atomic spheres radii. The nonspherical potential is neglected when calculating  $\frac{dV}{dr}$ . Orbital dependent potentials (LDA+U, EECE or OP) can be added to the hamiltonian in a cheap and simple way.

In spin-polarized calculations the presence of spin-orbit coupling may reduce symmetry and even split equivalent atoms into non-equivalent ones. It is then necessary to consider a larger part of the Brillouin zone and the input for **lapw2** should also be modified since the potential has lower symmetry than in the non-relativistic case. The following inputs may change:

- ▶ **case.struct**
- ▶ **case.klist**
- ▶ **case.kgen**
- ▶ **case.in2c**
- ▶ **case.in1**

We recommend to use **initso** (see Sec.5.2.19) which helps you together with **symmetso** (see Sec.9.1) to setup spinorbit calculations.

*Note: SO eigenvectors are complex and thus **lapw2c** must be used in a selfconsistent calculation.*

### 7.7.1 Execution

The program **lapwso** is executed by invoking the command:

```
x lapwso [-up -p -c -orb] or
lapwso lapwso.def
```

where here -up indicates a spin-polarized calculation (no "-dn" is needed, since spin-orbit will mix spin-up and dn states in one calculation).

### 7.7.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are used (collected in file **module.f**):

|       |                                                                          |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| FLMAX | constant = 3                                                             |
| LMAX  | highest l of wave function inside sphere (consistent with <b>lapw1</b> ) |
| LOMAX | max l for local orbital basis                                            |
| NRAD  | number of radial mesh points                                             |

### 7.7.3 Input

A sample input for lapwso is given below. It will be generated automatically by **initso**

```
----- top of file: case.inso -----
```

```

WFFIL
 4 0 0 llmax, ipr, kpot
-10.0000 1.5000 Emin, Emax
 0 0 1 h, k, l (direction of magnetization)
 2 number of atoms with RLO
 1 -3.5 0.005 STOP atom-number, E-param for RLO
 3 -4.5 0.005 STOP atom-number, E-param for RLO
 1 2 number of atoms without SO, atomnumbers
----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** format(A5)  
switch

WFFIL            wavefunctions will also be calculated for scf-calculation. Otherwise only eigenvalues are calculated.

**line 2:** free format  
LLMAX, IPR, KPOT

LLMAX            maximum l for wavefunctions  
IPR                print switch, larger numbers give additional output.  
KPOT    0        V(dn) potential is used for  $\langle dn|V|dn \rangle$  elements, V(up) for  $\langle up|V|up \rangle$  and  $[V(dn)+V(up)]/2$  for  $\langle up|V|dn \rangle$ .  
          1        averaged potential used for all matrix elements.

**line 3:** free format  
Emin, Emax

Emin             minimum energy for which the output eigenvectors and eigenenergies will be printed (Ry)  
Emax             maximum energy

**line 4:** free format

h,k,l             vector describing the direction of magnetization. For R lattice use h,k,l in rhombohedral coordinates (not in hexagonal)

**line 5:** free format

nlr                number of atoms for which a  $p_{1/2}$  LO should be added

**line 6:** free format  
nlri, El, de, switch

nlri                atom-number for which RLO should be added  
El                  $E_l$  for L=1  
de                 energy increment (see **lapw1**)  
switch             used only if de.ne.0  
          CONT     calculation continues, even if either  $E_{top}$  or  $E_{bottom}$  are not found  
          STOP     calculation stops if not both  $E_{top}$  and  $E_{bottom}$  are found (especially useful for semi-core states)

>>>: **line 6** must be repeated "nlr" times (or should be omitted if nlr=0).

**line 7:** free format

|                            |                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| noff, (iatoff(i),i=1,noff) |                                                                                 |
| noff                       | number of atoms for which SO is switched off (for “light” elements, saves time) |
| iatoff                     | atom-numbers                                                                    |

## 7.8 LAPW2 (generates valence charge density expansions)

**lapw2** uses the files **case.energy** and **case.vector** and computes the Fermi-energy (for a semiconductor  $E_F$  is set to the valence band maximum) and the expansions of the electronic charge densities in a representation according to eqn. 2.10 for each occupied state and each k-vector; then the corresponding (partial) charges inside the atomic spheres are obtained by integration. In addition “Pulay-corrections” to the forces at the nuclei are calculated here. For systems without inversion symmetry you have to use the program **lapw2c** (in connection with **lapw1c**).

The partial charges for each state (energy eigenvalue) and each k-vector can be written to files **case.help031**, **case.help032** etc., where the last digit gives the atomic index of inequivalent atoms (switch **-help\_files**). Optionally these partial charges are also written to **case.qt1** (switch **-qt1**). In order to get partial charges for bandstructure plots, use **-band**, which sets the “QTL option and uses “ROOT” in **case.in2**.

For meta-GGA calculations energy densities are written to **case.vrepval**(switch **-vresp**) and for DFT+U calculations the density matrices **case.dmatup/dn** are calculated when the switch **-orb** is activated.

Some other switches change the input file **case.in2** temporarily and are described in the input section.

### 7.8.1 Execution

The program **lapw2** is executed by invoking the command:

```
x lapw2 [-c -up|dn -p -so -orb -qt1 -fermi -efg -hf -redklist
-band -eece -vresp -help_files -emin X -all X Y -scratch dir
-alm -almd -qdmft -in1orig] or
lapw2 lapw2.def [proc#] or lapw2c lapw2.def [proc#]
```

where **proc#** is the *i*-th processor number in case of parallel execution (see Fig. 5.2). The **-so** switch sets **-c** automatically.

For complex calculations **case.in2c** is used. For a spin-polarized case see the fcc Ni test case in the **WIEN2k** package.

### 7.8.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are used (collected in file **modules.F**):

|        |                                                                                                            |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IBLOCK | Blocking parameter (32-255) in <b>l2main.F</b> , optimize for best performance                             |
| LMAX2  | highest <i>l</i> in wave function inside sphere (smaller than in <b>lapw1</b> , at present must be .le. 8) |
| LOMAX  | max <i>l</i> for local orbital basis                                                                       |
| NCOM   | number of LM terms in density                                                                              |
| NGAU   | max. number of Gaunt numbers                                                                               |

NRAD            number of radial mesh points  
 restrict\_output for mpi-jobs, limits the number of case.output2\_X\_proc\_XXX files to “restrict\_output”

### 7.8.3 Input

A sample input for **lapw2** is listed below, it is generated automatically by the programs **lstart** and **symmetry**.

```
----- top of file: case.in2 -----
TOT (TOT, FOR, QTL, EFG)
-1.2 32.000 0.5 0.05 1 (EMIN, # of electrons, ESEPERMIN, ESEPER0, iqtlsave)
TETRA 0.0 (EF-method (ROOT, TEMP, GAUSS, TETRA, ALL), value)
 0 0 2 0 2 2 4 0 4 2 4 4
 0 0 1 0 2 0 2 2 3 0 3 2 4 0 4 2 4 4
14.0 (GMAX)
FILE (NOFILE, optional)
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** format(2A5)

switch, EECE

|        |            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| switch | TOT<br>FOR | total valence charge density expansion inside and outside spheres<br>same as TOT, but in addition a “Pulay” force contribution is calculated (this option costs extra computing time and thus should be performed only at the final scf cycles, see <b>run_lapw</b> script in sec. 5.1.4)                                                           |
|        | QTL        | partial charges only (generates file <b>case.qt1</b> for DOS calculations), set automatically by switch <b>-qt1</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|        | EFG        | computes decomposition of electric field gradient (EFG), contributions from inside spheres (the total EFG is computed in <b>lapw0</b> ), set automatically by switch <b>-efg</b> .                                                                                                                                                                  |
|        | ALM        | this generates two files, <b>case.radwf</b> and <b>case.almb1m</b> , where the radial wavefunctions and the $A_{lm}$ , $B_{lm}$ , $C_{lm}$ coefficients of the wavefunction inside spheres are listed. Do not set it manually, but using the <b>-alm</b> switch. The file case.almb1m can get very big.                                             |
|        | ALMD       | this generates two files, <b>case.radwf</b> and <b>case.almb1m</b> , where the radial wavefunctions and the $A_{lm}$ , $B_{lm}$ , $C_{lm}$ coefficients of the wavefunction inside spheres are listed in a format usable for the TRIQS DMFT code. Do not set it manually, but using the <b>-almd</b> switch. The file case.almb1m can get very big. |
|        | CLM        | CLM charge density coefficients only                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|        | FERMI      | Fermi energy only, this produces weight files for parallel execution and for the <b>optics</b> and <b>lapwdm</b> package, set automatically by switch <b>-fermi</b> .                                                                                                                                                                               |
|        | >>>:       | TOT and FOR are the standard options, QTL is used for density of states (or energy bandstructure) calculations, EFG for analysis, while FOURI, CLM are for testing only.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| EECE   |            | if set to “EECE”, calculates the density for specified atoms and angular momentum only. Used for exact-exchange or hybrid-calculations, usually set automatically by <b>runsp_lapw -eece</b>                                                                                                                                                        |

**line 2:** free format

emin, ne, esepermin, eseper0, iqtlsave

|           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| emin      | lower energy cut-off for defining the range of occupied states, can be set temporarily to "X" by switch <b>-emin X</b> or <b>-all X Y</b>                                                                                                                                                                    |
| ne        | number of electrons (per unit cell) in that energy range                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| esepermin | LAPW2 tries to find the "mean" energies for each $l$ channel, for both the valence and the semicore states. To define "valence" and "semicore" it starts at ( $E_F$ - "esepermin") and searches for a "gap" with a width of at least "eseper0" and defines this as separation energy of valence and semicore |
| eseper0   | minimum gap width (see above). The values esepermin and eseper0 will only influence results if the option -in1new is used                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| iqtlsave  | optional value, checks if the low-energy bandranges (below -2 Ry) are "narrow" (below 0.2 Ry) and stops (iqtlsave=1 = default) / does not stop (iqtlsave=0). You may have to switch it off for extreme pressures, because then you may have large band width even for semi-core states.                      |

**line 3:** format(a5,f10.5)

efmod, eval

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| efmod | determines how $E_F$ is determined                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| ROOT  | $E_F$ is calculated and k space integration is done by root sampling (this can be used for insulators, but for metals poor convergence is found)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| TEMP  | $E_F$ is calculated where each eigenvalue is temperature broadened using a Fermi function with a broadening parameter of eval Ry. The total energy is corrected corresponding to T=0K. (e.g. eval=0.002 Ry gives good total energy convergence, but has no "physical" justification)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| TEMPS | $E_F$ is calculated where each eigenvalue is temperature broadened using a Fermi function with a broadening parameter of eval Ry. The total energy is corrected by -TS corresponding to the temperature specified by eval (e.g. eval=0.002 Ry corresponds to about 40 C)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| GAUSS | $E_F$ is calculated as above but a Gaussian smearing method is used with a width of eval Ry. (e.g. eval=0.002 gives good total energy convergence, but has no "physical" justification).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| TETRA | $E_F$ is calculated and k space integration is done by the modified (if eval is .eq. 0) or standard (eval .ge. 100) tetrahedron-method [Blöchl et al., 1994]. This "standard" scheme is recommended for <b>opt.ic</b> . In this case the file <b>case.kgen</b> , consistent with the k-mesh used in <b>lapw1</b> , must be provided (see Sec. 7.5). This is the recommended option although convergence may be slower than with Gauss- or temperature-smearing. TETRA may lead to problems (wrong number of electrons) for 2D-BZ meshes (as for surface slabs or cells with a large c-parameter) and a mesh-division of "1". Use TEMP in these cases. |
| ALL   | All states up to eval are used. This can be used to generate charge densities in a specified energy interval, can be set temporarily by switch <b>-all X Y</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

eval when efmod is set to TEMP(S) (eval=0 will lead to room temperature broadening, 0.0018 Ry) or GAUSS, eval specifies the width of the broadening (in Ry), if efmod is set to ALL, eval specifies the upper limit of the energy window (in Ry; can be set temporarily by switch **-all X Y**), if efmod is set to TETRA, eval .ge. 100 specifies the use of the standard tetrahedron method instead of the modified one (see above). By default, TETRA will average over partially occupied degenerate states at EF with a degeneracy criterium  $D = 1.d-6$ . You can modify this by setting eval equal to your desired D (or 100+D).

**optional line 3a:** free format (ONLY when EECE is set)

nat\_rho number of atoms for which a specific density should be calculated

**optional line 3b:** free format (ONLY when EECE is set)

jatom\_rho, l\_rho

jatom\_rho index of atom for which a specific density should be calculated  
l\_rho angular momentum l-value for which a specific density should be calculated

>>>**line 3b:** must be repeated nat\_rho times

**line 4:** format (I3,I2)

L,M LM values of lattice harmonics expansion (equ. 2.10), defined according to the point symmetry of the corresponding atom; generated in SYMMETRY, MUST be consistent with the local rotation matrix defined in **case.struct** (details can be found in [Kara and Kurki-Suonio, 1981]). CAUTION: additional LM terms which do not belong to the lattice harmonics will in general not vanish and thus such terms must be omitted. Automatic termination of the  $lm$  series occurs when a second 0,0 pair appears within the list. When you change the  $l, m$  list during an SCF calculation the Broyden-Mixing is restarted in MIXER.

>>>**line 4:** must be repeated for each inequivalent atom

| Symmetry | LM combinations                                                                                                        |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 23       | 0 0, 4 0, 4 4, 6 0, 6 4,-3 2, 6 2, 6 6,-7 2,-7 6, 8 0, 8 4, 8 8,-9 2,-9 6,-9 4,-9 8,10 0, 10 4,10 8, 10 2, 10 6, 10 10 |
| M3       | 0 0, 4 0, 4 4, 6 0, 6 4, 6 2, 6 6, 8 0, 8 4, 8 8,10 0, 10 4,10 8, 10 2, 10 6, 10 10                                    |
| 432      | 0 0, 4 0, 4 4, 6 0, 6 4, 8 0, 8 4, 8 8,-9 4,-9 8,10 0, 10 4,10 8                                                       |
| -43M     | 0 0, 4 0, 4 4, 6 0, 6 4,-3 2,-7 2,-7 6, 8 0, 8 4, 8 8,-9 2,-9 6,10 0, 10 4,10 8                                        |
| M3M      | 0 0, 4 0, 4 4, 6 0, 6 4, 8 0, 8 4, 8 8,10 0, 10 4,10 8                                                                 |

Table 7.54: LM combinations of “Cubic groups” ( $3\|(111)$ ) direction, requires “positive atomic index” in case.struct. Terms that should be combined [Kara and Kurki-Suonio, 1981] must follow one another.

**line 5:** free format

GMAX max. G (magnitude of largest vector) in charge density Fourier expansion. For systems with short H bonds larger values (e.g. GMAX up to 25) could be necessary. Calculations using GGA (potential option 13 or 14 in case.in0) should also employ a larger GMAX value (e.g. 14), since the gradients are calculated numerically on a mesh determined by GMAX. When you change GMAX during an scf calculation the Broyden-Mixing is restarted in **mixer**.

| Symmetry | Coordinate axes                                       | Indices of $Y_{\pm LM}$                | crystal system |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------|
| 1        | any                                                   | ALL ( $\pm 1, m$ )                     | triclinic      |
| -1       | any                                                   | ( $\pm 2l, m$ )                        |                |
| 2        | $2 \parallel z$                                       | ( $\pm 1, 2m$ )                        | monoclinic     |
| M        | $m \perp z$                                           | ( $\pm 1, l-2m$ )                      |                |
| 2/M      | $2 \parallel z, m \perp z$                            | ( $\pm 2l, 2m$ )                       |                |
| 222      | $2 \parallel z, 2 \parallel y, (2 \parallel x)$       | ( $+2l, 2m$ ), ( $-2l+1, 2m$ )         | orthorhombic   |
| MM2      | $2 \parallel z, m \perp y, (2 \perp x)$               | ( $+1, 2m$ )                           |                |
| MMM      | $2 \perp z, m \perp y, 2 \perp x$                     | ( $+2l, 2m$ )                          |                |
| 4        | $4 \parallel z$                                       | ( $\pm 1, 4m$ )                        | tetragonal     |
| -4       | $-4 \parallel z$                                      | ( $\pm 2l, 4m$ ), ( $\pm 2l+1, 4m+2$ ) |                |
| 4/M      | $4 \parallel z, m \perp z$                            | ( $\pm 2l, 4m$ )                       |                |
| 422      | $4 \parallel z, 2 \parallel y, (2 \parallel x)$       | ( $+2l, 4m$ ), ( $-2l+1, 4m$ )         |                |
| 4MM      | $4 \parallel z, m \perp y, (2 \perp x)$               | ( $+1, 4m$ )                           |                |
| -42M     | $-4 \parallel z, 2 \parallel x (m=xy \rightarrow yx)$ | ( $+2l, 4m$ ), ( $-2l+1, 4m+2$ )       |                |
| 4MMM     | $4 \parallel z, m \perp z, m \perp x$                 | ( $+2l, 4m$ )                          |                |
| 3        | $3 \parallel z$                                       | ( $\pm 1, 3m$ )                        | rhombohedral   |
| -3       | $-3 \parallel z$                                      | ( $\pm 2l, 3m$ )                       |                |
| 32       | $3 \parallel z, 2 \parallel y$                        | ( $+2l, 3m$ ), ( $-2l+1, 3m$ )         |                |
| 3M       | $3 \parallel z, m \perp y$                            | ( $+1, 3m$ )                           |                |
| -3M      | $-3 \parallel z, m \perp y$                           | ( $+2l, 3m$ )                          |                |
| 6        | $6 \parallel z$                                       | ( $\pm 1, 6m$ )                        | hexagonal      |
| -6       | $-6 \parallel z$                                      | ( $+2l, 6m$ ), ( $\pm 2l+1, 6m+3$ )    |                |
| 6/M      | $6 \parallel z, m \perp z$                            | ( $\pm 2l, 6m$ )                       |                |
| 622      | $6 \parallel z, 2 \parallel y, (2 \parallel x)$       | ( $+2l, 6m$ ), ( $-2l+1, 6m$ )         |                |
| 6MM      | $6 \parallel z, m \perp y, (m \perp x)$               | ( $+1, 6m$ )                           |                |
| -62M     | $-6 \parallel z, m \perp y, (2 \parallel x)$          | ( $+2l, 6m$ ), ( $+2l+1, 6m+3$ )       |                |
| 6MMM     | $6 \parallel z, m \perp z, m \perp y, (m \perp x)$    | ( $+2l, 6m$ )                          |                |

Table 7.55: LM combination and local coordinate system of “non-cubic groups” (requires “negative atomic index” in case.struct)

#### line 6: A4

reclist FILE writes list of K-vectors into file `case.recprlist` or reuses this list if the file exists. The saved list will be recalculated whenever GMAX, or a lattice parameter has been changed.

NOFILE always calculate new list of K-vectors

## 7.9 SUMPARA (summation of files from parallel execution)

**sumpara** is a small program which (in parallel execution of **WIEN2k**) sums up the densities (`case.clmval.*`) and quantities from the `case.scf2.*` files of the different parallel runs.

### 7.9.1 Execution

The program **sumpara** is executed by invoking the 2 commands as follows:

```
x sumpara -d [-up/-dn/-ud -hf] and then
sumpara sumpara.def #_of_proc
```

where `#_of_proc` is the numbers of parallel processors used. It is usually called automatically from `lapw2para` or `x lapw2 -p`.

### 7.9.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in file `param.inc`, but usually they need not to be modified:

|      |                               |
|------|-------------------------------|
| NCOM | number of LM terms in density |
| NRAD | number of radial mesh points  |
| NSYM | order of point group          |

## 7.10 LAPWDM (calculate density matrix)

This program was contributed by:

⇒ J.Kuneš and P.Novák  
 Inst. of Physics, Acad.Science, Prague, Czeck Republic  
 email: novakp@fzu.cz

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

**lapwdm** calculates the density matrix needed for the orbital dependent potentials generated in **orb**. Optionally it also provides orbital moments, orbital and dipolar contributions to the hyperfine field (only for the specified atoms AND orbitals). It calculates the average value of the operator  $X$  which behaves in the same way as the spin-orbit coupling operator: it must be nonzero only within the atomic spheres and can be written as a product of two operators - radial and angular:

$$X = X_r(r) * X_{ls}(\vec{l}, \vec{s})$$

$X_r(r)$  and  $X_{ls}(\vec{l}, \vec{s})$  are determined by RINDEX and LSINDEX in the input as described below:

- ▶ RINDEX=0 LSINDEX=0: the density matrix is calculated (this is needed for LDA+U calculations)
- ▶ RINDEX=1 LSINDEX=1:  $\langle X \rangle$  is number of electrons inside the atomic sphere (for test)
- ▶ RINDEX=2 LSINDEX=1:  $\langle X \rangle$  is the  $\langle 1/r^3 \rangle$  expectation value inside the atomic sphere
- ▶ RINDEX=1 LSINDEX=2:  $\langle X \rangle$  is the projection of the electronic spin inside the atomic sphere (must be multiplied by  $g=2$  to get the spin moment)
- ▶ RINDEX=1 LSINDEX=3:  $\langle X \rangle$  is the projection of the orbital moment inside the atomic sphere (in case of SO-calculations WITHOUT LDA+U)
- ▶ RINDEX=3 LSINDEX=3:  $\langle X \rangle$  is the orbital part of the hyperfine field at the nucleus (for a converged calculation at the very end)
- ▶ RINDEX=3 LSINDEX=5:  $\langle X \rangle$  is the spin dipolar part of the hyperfine field at the nucleus (for a converged calculation at the very end)

To use the different operators, set the appropriate input. More information and extentions to operators of similar behavior may be obtained directly from [Novák, 2006]. (RINDEX=3 includes now an approximation to the relativistic mass enhancement and LSINDEX=5 includes nondiagonal terms)

**lapwdm** needs the occupation numbers, which are calculated in **lapw2**. Note: You must not use ROOT in **case.in2** for that purpose.

### 7.10.1 Execution

The program **lapwdm** is executed by invoking the command:

```
x lapwdm [-up/dn -p -c -so -hf] or
lapwdm lapwdm.def
```

### 7.10.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are used (collected in file **param.inc**):

|       |                                                                          |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| FLMAX | constant = 3                                                             |
| LMAX  | highest l of wave function inside sphere (consistent with <b>lapw1</b> ) |
| LABC  | highest l of wave function inside sphere where SO is considered          |
| LOMAX | max l for local orbital basis                                            |
| NRAD  | number of radial mesh points                                             |

### 7.10.3 Input

A sample input for **lapwdm** is given below.

```
----- top of file: case.indm -----
-9. Emin cutoff energy
 1 number of atoms for which density matrix is calculated
 1 1 2 index of 1st atom, number of L's, L1
 0 0 r-index, (l,s)-index
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

emin                    lower energy cutoff (usually set to very low number).

**line 2:** free format

natom                    number of atoms for which the density matrix is calculated

**line 3:** free format

iatom, nl, l

iatom    index of atom for which the density matrix should be calculated  
nl        number of l-values for which the density matrix should be calculated  
l        l-values for which the density matrix should be calculated

**line 3 is repeated natom times t**

**line 4:** free format, optional

RINDEX, LSINDEX, RMTRED

RINDEX 0-3, as described in the introduction to **lapwdm**  
LSINDEX 0-5, as described in the introduction to **lapwdm**  
RMTREDN, optionally allows to check RMT-reduction (by N points) of expectation values

## 7.11 LCORE (generates core states)

**lcore** is a modified version of the [Desclaux, 1969, Desclaux, 1975] relativistic LSDA atomic code. It computes the core states (relativistically including SO, or non-relativistically if "NREL" is set in **case.struct**) for the current spherical part of the potential (**case.vsp**). It yields core eigenvalues, the file **case.clmcor** with the corresponding core densities, and the core contribution to the atomic forces.

### 7.11.1 Execution

The program `lcore` is executed by invoking the command:

```
lcore lcore.def or x lcore [-up|-dn]
```

For the spin-polarized case see fcc Ni on the distribution tape. If `case.incup` and `case.incdn` are present for spin-polarized calculations, different core-occupation ("open core" approximation for 4f states or spin-polarized core-holes) for both spins are possible.

### 7.11.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameter is listed in file `param.inc`:

NRAD            number of radial mesh points

### 7.11.3 Input

Below is a sample input (written automatically by `lstart`)

for  $TiO_2$  (rutile), one of the test cases provided with the **WIEN2k** package.

In case of a "open core" calculation (eg. for 4f states) you may need "spin-polarized" `case.inc` files in order to define different configurations for spin-up and dn. Create two files `case.incup` and `case.incdn` with the corresponding occupations. The `runsp.lapw` script will automatically copy the corresponding files to `case.inc`.

```
----- top of file: case.inc -----
4 0.0 0 # of orbitals, shift of potential, print switch
1,-1,2 n (principal quantum number), kappa, occup. number
2,-1,2 2s
2,-2,4 2p
2, 1,2 2p*
1 0.0 # of orbital of second atom
1,-1,2 1s
0 end switch
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

nrorb, shift, iprint

|        |                                                                                                  |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nrorb  | number of core orbitals                                                                          |
| shift  | shift of potential for "positive" eigenvalues (e.g. for 4f states as core states in lanthanides) |
| iprint | optional print switch to reduce (0) or increase (1) printing to <b>case.outputc</b>              |

**line 2:** free format

n, kappa, occup

|       |                                                                      |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| n     | principle quantum number                                             |
| kappa | relativistic quantum number (see Table 6.6)                          |
| occup | occupation number (including spin), fractional occupations supported |

>>>: **line 2** is repeated for each orbital (nrorb times; see line 1)  
 >>>: **line 1 and 2** are repeated for each inequivalent atom. Atoms without core states (e.g. H or Li) must still include a 1s orbital, but with occupation zero.

**line 3:** free format

```
0 zero indicating end of job
```

## 7.12 MIXER (adding and mixing of charge densities)

In **mixer** the electron densities of core, semi-core, and valence states are added to yield the total new (output) density (in some calculations only one or two types will exist). Proper normalization of the densities is checked and enforced (by adding a constant charge density in the interstitial). As it is well known, simply taking the new densities leads to instabilities in the iterative SCF process. Therefore it is necessary to stabilize the SCF cycle. In **WIEN2k** this is done by mixing the output density with the (old) input density to obtain the new density to be used in the next iteration. Several mixing schemes are implemented, but we mention only:

1. straight mixing as originally proposed by Pratt (52) with a mixing factor  $Q$

$$\rho_{new}(r) = (1 - Q)\rho_{old}(r) + Q\rho_{output}(r)$$

2. a Multi-Secant mixing scheme contributed by L. Marks (see [Marks and Luke, 2008]), in which all the expansion coefficients of the density from several preceding iterations (usually 6-10) are utilized to calculate an optimal mixing fraction for each coefficient in each iteration. It is very robust and stable (works nicely also for magnetic systems with 3d or 4f states at EF, only for ill-conditioned single-atom calculations you can break it) and usually converges at least 30 % faster than the old BROYD scheme.
3. Two new variants on the Multi-Secant method including a rank-one update (see [Marks, 2013]) which appear to be 5-10% faster and equally robust.

At the outset of a new calculation (for any changed computational parameter such as k-mesh, matrix size, lattice constant etc.), any existing **case.broydx** files must be deleted (since the iterative history which they contain refers to a “different” incompatible calculation).

If the file **case.clmsum.old** can not be found by **mixer**, a “PRATT-mixing” with mixing factor (greed) 1.0 is done.

*Note: a **case.clmval** file must always be present, since the LM values and the K-vectors are read from this file.*

The total energy and the atomic forces are computed in mixer by reading the **case.scf** file and adding the various contributions computed in preceding steps of the last iteration. Therefore **case.scf** must not contain a certain “iteration-number” more than once and the number of iterations in the scf file must not be greater than 999.

For LDA+U calculations **case.dmatup/dn** and for onsite-hybrid-DFT (switch -eece) **case.vorbup/dn** files will be included in the mixing procedure.

With the new mode MSR1a (or MSECa) (contributed by L. Marks) atomic positions will also be mixed and thus optimized. This scheme can (unfortunately not in all cases) be a factor or 2-3 faster than the traditional optimization using **min\_lapw**.

### 7.12.1 Execution

The program **mixer** is executed by invoking the command:

```
mixer mixer.def or x mixer [-eece -dftd3]
```

A spin-polarized case will be detected automatically by **x** due to the presence of a `case.clmvalup` file. For an example see fcc Ni (sec. 10.2) in the **WIEN2k** package.

### 7.12.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are collected in file `param.inc`:

|           |                                                                      |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NCOM      | number of LM terms in density                                        |
| NRAD      | number of radial mesh points                                         |
| NSYM      | order of point group                                                 |
| traptouch | minimum acceptable distance between atoms in full optimization model |

### 7.12.3 Input

Below a sample input (written automatically by `lstart`) is provided for  $TiO_2$  (rutile), one of the test cases provided with the **WIEN2k** package.

```
----- top of file: case.inm -----
MSR1 0.d0 YES (PRATT/MSEC1/3/MSR1/a bg charge (+1 for additional e), NORM
 0.2 MIXING GREED
1.0 1.0 Not used, retained for compatibility only
999 8 nbroyd nuse
 ## VLSOW, SLOW, FAST
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

#### line 1: (A5,\*)

switch, bgch, norm

|        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| switch | MSEC1 | Multi-Secant scheme [Marks and Luke, 2008]                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|        | MSEC2 | similar to MSEC1 (above), but mixes the higher LM values inside spheres by an adaptive PRATT scheme. This leads to a significant reduction of programsize and filesize ( <b>case.broyd*</b> ) for unitcells with many atoms and low symmetry (factor 10-50) with only slightly worse mixing performance. |
|        | MSEC3 | Similar to MSEC1, but with updated scaling, regularization and other improvements.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|        | MSEC4 | similar to MSEC3 (above), but mixes only the L=0 LM value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|        | MSR1  | Recommended. A Rank-One Multisecant that is slightly faster than MSEC3 in most cases. For MSR1a see later.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|        | MSR2  | similar to MSR1 (above), but mixes only the L=0 LM value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|        | MSR1a | Similar to MSR1, but in addition it optimizes the atomic positions simultaneously (see Sect. 5.3.2)                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|        | PRATT | Pratt scheme with a fixed greed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|        | PRAT0 | Pratt scheme with a greed restrained by previous improvement, similar to MSEC3                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

|      |                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bgch | Background charge to apply to the cell (e.g. use +1 if the system contains an additional electron or -1 to screen a core hole if it is not neutralized by an additional valence electron) |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|      |     |                                             |
|------|-----|---------------------------------------------|
| norm | YES | Charge densities are normalized to sum of Z |
|      | NO  | Charge densities are not normalized         |

**line 2:** free format

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| greed | mixing greed Q. Essential for Pratt, less important for other methods. In these methods in the first iterations the default Q (0.2) is automatically adjusted and reduced/increased by the program depending on the average charge distance :DIS and the relative improvement in the last cycle. In case of too large charge fluctuations (divergence and stop of the scf cycle), Q can be reduced but this can lead to stagnation. In particular Q=0.1 switches to a "slow" mode. One should rarely reduce this below 0.1. |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**line 3 (optional):** (free format)

f\_pw, f\_clm

|      |                                             |
|------|---------------------------------------------|
| f_pw | Not used, retained for input compatibility. |
|------|---------------------------------------------|

|       |                                             |
|-------|---------------------------------------------|
| f_clm | Not used, retained for input compatibility. |
|-------|---------------------------------------------|

**line 4 (optional):** (free format)

nbroyd, nuse

|        |                                             |
|--------|---------------------------------------------|
| nbroyd | Not used, retained for input compatibility. |
|--------|---------------------------------------------|

|      |                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nuse | For all Multisecant methods: Only nuse steps are used during modified broyden (this value has some influence on the optimal convergence. Usually 6-10 seems reasonable and 8 is the default). |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**line 5 (optional line):** (free format)

trust

|       |                                                                                                                               |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VSLow | For very difficult cases, where divergence (like spin-polarized systems or with many TM atoms) or endless oscillations occur. |
| SLOW  |                                                                                                                               |
| FAST  | For easy cases to accelerate (also MSR1a).                                                                                    |

In addition, **mixer** reads a "mixing factor" from file **.pratt** or **.msec**, which can be used during scf/MSR1a optimizations or at the very beginning to push convergence. You can create it using

```
echo 0.2 > .pratt
```

These files will be removed automatically once they are used. For additional documentation consult the README file in **SRC\_mixer**.



---

# 8 Programs for analysis, calculation of properties, and geometry optimization

---

## Contents

---

|      |                      |     |
|------|----------------------|-----|
| 8.1  | AIM . . . . .        | 145 |
| 8.2  | BerryPI . . . . .    | 149 |
| 8.3  | BROADENING . . . . . | 150 |
| 8.4  | DIPAN . . . . .      | 151 |
| 8.5  | ELAST . . . . .      | 153 |
| 8.6  | FILTVEC . . . . .    | 157 |
| 8.7  | FSGEN . . . . .      | 159 |
| 8.8  | IRelast . . . . .    | 159 |
| 8.9  | IRREP . . . . .      | 161 |
| 8.10 | JOINT . . . . .      | 161 |
| 8.11 | KRAM . . . . .       | 164 |
| 8.12 | LAPW3 . . . . .      | 166 |
| 8.13 | LAPW5 . . . . .      | 166 |
| 8.14 | LAPW7 . . . . .      | 169 |
| 8.15 | MINI . . . . .       | 172 |
| 8.16 | NMR . . . . .        | 175 |
| 8.17 | OPTIC . . . . .      | 175 |
| 8.18 | OPTIMIZE . . . . .   | 179 |
| 8.19 | QTL . . . . .        | 180 |
| 8.20 | SPAGHETTI . . . . .  | 182 |
| 8.21 | TELNES3 . . . . .    | 185 |
| 8.22 | TETRA . . . . .      | 192 |
| 8.23 | XSPEC . . . . .      | 195 |

---

## 8.1 AIM (atoms in molecules)

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Javier D. Fuhr and Jorge O. Sofo  
 Instituto Balseiro and Centro Atomico Bariloche  
 S. C. de Bariloche - Rio Negro, Argentina  
 email: fuhr@cab.cnea.gov.ar and sofo@cab.cnea.gov.ar

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This program analyses the topology of the electron density according to Bader's "Atoms in molecules" theory. For more information see [Bader, ] and [Sofo and Fuhr, 2001].

The original code has been significantly speeded-up by L.Marks (L-marks@northwestern.edu). There are some new optional keywords in the input (usually not needed, more for testing) and also more debugging output. All changes are described in `$WIENROOT/SRC.aim/Notes.txt`.

Basically it performs two different tasks, namely searching for "critical points" (CP) and/or determination of the atomic basins with an integration of the respective charge density.

It is important that you provide a "good" charge density, i.e. one which is well converged with respect to LMMAX in the CLM-expansion (you may have to increase the default LM-list to LM=8 or 10) and with as little "core-leakage" as possible (see `lstart`, sect. 6.4), otherwise discontinuities appear at the sphere boundary.

### 8.1.1 Execution

The program `aim` is executed by invoking the command:

```
aim aim.def or aimc aim.def or x aim [-c]
```

### 8.1.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in file `param.inc`:

|       |                                                      |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------|
| LMAX2 | highest L in in LM expansion of charge and potential |
| NRAD  | number of radial mesh points                         |
| NSYM  | order of point group                                 |

### 8.1.3 Input

The input file contains "SWITCHES", followed by the necessary parameters until an END-switch has been reached.

Examples for "critical-point" searches and "charge-integration" are given below:

```
----- top of file: case.inaim -----
CRIT
1 # index of the atom (counting multiplicity)
ALL # TWO/THRE/ALL /FOUR
3 3 3 # x,y,z nshells (of unit cells)
END
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** A4

CRIT                    Keyword to calculate critical points

**line 2:** free format

iatom                    index of the atom from where the search should be started. This count includes the multiplicity, i.e. if the first atom has MULT=2, the "second atom" has iatom=3 (Do not use simply the atom-numbers from **case.struct**)

**line 3:** A4

KEY                      TWO, THRE, ALL, or FOUR  
defines the starting point for the CP search to be in the middle of 2, 3 or 4 atoms. ALL combines option TWO and THRE together.

**line 4:** free format

nxsh, nysh, nzsh

specifies the number of nearest neighbor cells (in x,y,z direction) where atomic positions are generated.

**lines 1-4** can be repeated with different atoms or KEYs

**line 5:** A4

END                      specifies end of job.

In **case.outputaim** the critical points are marked with a label **:PC**

```
:PC a1 a2 a3 l1 l2 l3 c lap rho iat1 dist1 iat2 dist2
```

where a1,a2,a3 are the coordinates of the CP in lattice vectors; l1 l2 l3 are the eigenvalues of the Hessian at the CP; c is the character of the CP (-3, -1, 1 or 3); lap is the Laplacian of the density at the CP (lap=l1+l2+l3) and rho is the density at the CP (all in atomic units). In case of a bond critical point (c=-1) also the nearest distances (dist1, dist2) to the two nearest atoms (iat1, iat2) are given.

For convenience run **extractaim\_lapw case.outputaim** (see 5.2.12) and get in the file **critical\_points.ang** a comprehensive list of the CP (sorted and unique) with all values given in Å, e/Å<sup>3</sup>, ... (instead of bohr).

```
----- top of file: case.inaim -----
SURF
3 atom in center of surface (including MULT)
40 0.0 3.1415926536 theta, 40 points, from zero to pi
40 -0.7853981634 2.3561944902 phi
0.07 0.8 2 step along gradient line, rmin, check
1.65 0.1 initial R for search, step (a.u)
3 3 3 nshell
IRHO "INTEGRATE" rho
WEIT WEIT (surface weights from case.surf), NOWEIT
30 30 radial points outside min(RMIN,RMT)
END
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** A4

SURF Keyword to calculate the Bader surface.

**line 2:** free format

iatom index of the atom from where the search should be started. This count includes the multiplicity, i.e. if the first atom has MULT=2, the "second atom" has iatom=3 (Do not use simply the atom-numbers from **case.struct**)

**line 3:** free format

ntheta, thmin, thmax

ntheta number of theta directions for the surface determination. This (and nphi) determines the accuracy (and computing time).

thmin starting angle for theta

thmax ending angle for theta. If you have higher symmetry, you can change the angles thmin=0, thmax= $\pi$  and use only the "irreducible" part, i.e. when you have a mirror plane normal to z (see case.outputs), restrict thmax to  $\pi/2$ .

**line 4:** free format

nphi, phimin, phimax

nphi number of phi directions for the surface determination

phimin starting angle

phimax ending angle. (see comments for theta to reduce phi from the full  $0 - 2\pi$  integration).

**line 5:** free format

h0, frmin, nstep

h0 step in real space to follow the gradient ( $\sim 0.1$ )

frmin defines the radius, for which the routine assumes that the search path has entered an atom, given as "rmin = frmin \* rmt" (0.8-1.0)

nstep number of steps between testing the position being inside or outside of the surface (2-8).

**line 6:** free format

r0, dr0

r0 initial radius for the search of the surface radius (1.5)

dr0 step for the search of the surface radius(0.1)

**line 7:** free format

nxsh, nysh, nzsh

specifies the number of nearest neighbor cells (in x,y,z direction) where atomic positions are generated.

**line 8:** A4

IRHO integrate function on "unit 9" (usually **case.clmsum**) inside previously defined surface (stored in **case.surf**).

**line 9:** A4

WEIT specifies the use of weights in **case.surf**.

**line 9:** free format

npt specifies number of points for radial integration outside the MT ( 30)

**line 8:** A4

END specifies end of job.

## 8.2 BerryPI (Modern theory of polarization)

This program was contributed by:



S.J. Ahmed, J. Kivinen, B. Zaporzan, L. Curiel, S. Pichardo, O. Rubel  
 Thunder Bay Regional Research Institute, Ontario, Canada  
 Computer Physics Communications 184, 647651 (2013)  
 Sources available from: <https://github.com/spichardo/BerryPI>  
 email: rubelo@tbh.net  
 Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This program calculates the spontaneous polarization, Born effective charges or piezoelectric constants using the Berry phase approach. More details about its usage are given in Chapter 5.8.

It consists of a set of Python scripts (requires Python 2.7 and the NumPi library) and uses **wien2wannier** for the calculation of overlap integrals. The main steps of a `'berrypi -kNX:NY:NZ'` call include:

- ▶ `x kgen -fbz`  
generate a k-mesh in the full Brillouin zone
- ▶ `write_inwf`  
Prepare the input for w2w with the occupied band range
- ▶ `write_win case`  
Create the input file for w2w
- ▶ `win2nnkp.py case`  
Generate the nearest neighbor list of k-points
- ▶ `x lapw1`  
Calculate wavefunctions for the new k-list
- ▶ `x w2w`  
Calculate the overlap matrix  $S_{mn}(k_j, k_{j+1})$
- ▶ `x lapwso` and `x w2waddsp` (only in case of SO)
- ▶ `mmn2pathphase.py case x`  
Calculate the Berry phase along x-axis

## 8.3 BROADENING (apply broadening to calculated spectra)

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Joachim Luitz  
 IAST Austria  
 wien2k@luitz.at

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

The broadening program can be used in conjunction with the **TELNES3** (broadening of **case.elnes**) or the **xspec** program (broadening of **case.xspec**) to broaden theoretical spectra by applying a lorentzian broadening for core and valence life times and a gaussian broadening for spectrometer broadening. The output file will be called **case.broadspec**.

### 8.3.1 Execution

#### Execution

The program **broadening** is executed by invoking the command:

```
broadening broadening.def or x broadening [-xspec -up/-dn]
```

### 8.3.2 Input

**broadening** needs one input file - **case.inb**. When running **TELNES3** this input file is automatically created from settings given in **case.innes**.

```
GaN
ELNES
1 1 0
0.0 1.0 0.0
0.116 0.116
1 2.1500000000000000
0.6
dummy
0.0
0.0
0.0
```

| line | value              | explanation                                                                                                             |
|------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | GaN ...            | Title (of no consequence for the calculation)                                                                           |
| 2    | ELNES — ABS — EMIS | Type of input spectrum                                                                                                  |
| 3    | NC C1 C2           | specification of input file: NC number of columns to read, C1 and C2 column to broaden (only in "ELNES" mode)           |
| 4    | SPLIT XINT1 XINT2  | split energy (eV), XINT1—2 relative intensities of spectra in C1 and C2 (for overlaying L23 spectra)                    |
| 5    | GA GB              | core hole lifetime of the two edges (eV)                                                                                |
| 6    | W WSHIFT           | W: type of valence broadening (0:none, 1:linear with $E/10$ , 2:Muller like $E^2$ , 3:Moreau); WSHIFT: edge offset (eV) |
| 7    | S                  | Spectrometer broadening FWHM in eV                                                                                      |
| 8    | dummy              | dummy keyword for compatibility with <b>lorentz</b>                                                                     |
| 9-11 | E0, E1, E2         | quadratic energy dependent broadening (only used for type ELNES and EMIS when selecting valence broadening type W=2)    |

For details of broadening with  $W = 1,2,3$  see the references given in valencebroadening.f. For  $W=1$  we use  $\gamma = \text{energy}/E0$  (typically  $E0=10.0$ ). For  $W=2$ :  $\gamma E1 * (\text{energy}/E0)^2$ . Larger  $E0$  and/or smaller  $E1$  reduces broadening.

## 8.4 DIPAN (Dipolar anisotropies)

This program was contributed by:

⇒ P. Novák  
 Inst. of Physics, Acad.Science, Prague, Czeck Republic  
 email: novakp@fzu.cz

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This program calculates the magnetic dipolar hyperfine field and the dipolar magnetocrystalline anisotropy by a direct lattice summation over the magnetic moments of all sites.

The magnetic field is given by

$$\vec{B} = \frac{\mu_0 \mu}{4\pi r^3} [3(\vec{n}\hat{r})\hat{r} - \vec{n}] \quad (8.1)$$

where  $\hat{r} = \vec{r}/r$ .

$\vec{n} = \vec{M}/M$  is direction of magnetization.

$\mu_0$  is permeability of free space;  $\mu_0 = 4\pi 10^{-7}$  H/m.

$\vec{B}$  is the dipolar field in T.

$\vec{\mu}$  is magnetic dipolar moment in  $\text{Am}^2 = \text{J/T}$ , assumed to be parallel to  $\vec{n}$ .

$r$  is in m.

We want to express  $\mu$  in Bohr magnetons  $\mu_B=9.274078.10^{-24}$  J/T and

$r$  in atomic units for length  $a_0$  (Bohr radius)  $a_0=5.2917706.10^{-11}$  m.

Inserting in (1) gives

$$\vec{B} = 6.258463 \frac{\mu(\mu_B)}{r(\text{a.u.})^3} [3(\vec{n}\hat{r})\hat{r} - \vec{n}]. \quad (8.2)$$

Total dipolar field acting on atom  $i$  is given by the lattice sum

$$\vec{B}_i = 6.258463 \sum_j \frac{\mu_j}{r_j^3} [3(\vec{n}\vec{r}_j)\vec{r}_j - \vec{n}]. \quad (8.3)$$

Dipolar anisotropy energy is given by the sum

$$E_{an} = -\frac{1}{2V} \sum_j \vec{B}_j \vec{\mu}_j \quad (8.4)$$

when the sum is over atoms in the unit cell,  $V$  is the unit cell volume, Factor 1/2 appears because of the double summation.

Expressing  $B_j$  in T,  $\mu_j$  in  $\mu_B$  and  $V$  in (a.u.)<sup>3</sup> gives

$$E_{an}(\text{J/m}^3) = -\frac{3.129232 \cdot 10^7}{V(\text{a.u.})^3} \sum_j \vec{B}_j(\text{T}) \vec{\mu}_j(\mu_B) \quad (8.5)$$

### 8.4.1 Execution

The program **dipan** is executed by invoking the command:

**dipan dipan.def** or **x dipan**

### 8.4.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in files **dipan.f**:

|      |                                           |
|------|-------------------------------------------|
| NATO | number of inequivalent atoms in unit cell |
| NDIF | total number of atoms in unit cell        |

### 8.4.3 Input

An example is given below:

```
----- top of file: case.indipan -----
160. 0 Rmax (a.u.), ipr (printing option)
-0.26 Magnetic moment of 1st atom (Y) in mu_B
 1.525 Magnetic moment of 2nd atom (Co(2c))
 1.529 Magnetic moments of 3rd atom (Co(3g)) in mu_B
1381. Volume in a.u.**(-3)
 2 ndir: number of magnetization directions
 0. 0. 1. first direction for the magnetization
 1. 1. 0. second direction
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

Rmax, IPR

Rmax            max distance (bohr) for lattice summation. Vary it for convergence check.

IPR             Print switch. IPR=2 produces very large files **case.outputdipan** and **case.nn.dipan**

**line 2:** free format

mm                      Magnetic moment ( $\mu_B$ ) of first atom

**line 2** must be repeated for every non-equivalent atom in the unit cell

**line 3:** free format

VOLUME                Unit cell volume in bohr\*\*3 (grep :VOL case.scf)

**line 4:** free format

NDIR                    number of magnetization directions for which the dipolar contributions will be calculated. For  $NDIR > 1$  the differences  $E_{an}(dir_i) - E_{an}(dir_j)$  are also calculated.

**line 5:** free format

h,k,l                    direction of magnetization

**line 5** must be repeated NDIR times

## 8.5 ELAST (Elastic constants for cubic cases)

This program was contributed by:

original author: Thomas Charpin  
 Lab. Geomateriaux de l'IPGP, Paris, France  
 (In September 2001 we received the sad notice that Thomas Charpin died in a car accident).

⇒ modified by Ferenc Karsai  
 Institute for Materials Chemistry  
 TU Vienna  
 ferenc@theochem.tuwien.ac.at

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This package calculates elastic constants for cubic crystals. It is described in detail by the author in [Charpin, 2001].

### 8.5.1 Execution

The package is driven by three scripts:

► **init\_elast:**

It prepares the whole calculation and should be run in a directory with a valid **case.struct** and **case.inst** file. It creates the necessary subdirectories **elast**, **elast/eos**, **elast/tetra**, **elast/rhomb**, **elast/result**, the templates for tetragonal and rhombohedral distortion and initializes the calculations using **init\_lapw**.

- ▶ **elast\_setup:**  
It should be run in the **elast** directory, generates the distorted struct-files and **eos.job**, **rhomb.job** and **tetra.job**. These scripts must be adapted to your needs (spin-polarization, convergence,...) and run. **elast\_setup** can be run several times (for different distortions,...).
- ▶ **ana\_elast:**  
Once all calculations are done, change into **elastresult** and run this script. The final results are stored in **elastresultoutputs**.
- ▶ **genetempl, setelast, anaelast:**  
These three small programs are called by the above scripts.

The following modifications of **init\_elast**, **elast\_setup** and **ana\_elast** prepare input files for calculations of elastic constants at different pressures and analyze the results:

- ▶ **init\_elast\_pressure:**  
As in the case of **init\_elast** the script is called in the working directory with a valid **case.struct** file and requires an input file **case.inelastp1** (a template can be found at **\$WIENROOT/SRC.templates/template.inelastp1**). The script creates the directory **elast/** with the necessary subdirectories **pressure\_x/** according to the number **x** of pressure changes in the **case.inelastp1** input file and the templates for isotropic, tetragonal and rhombohedral (trigonal) distortions at each pressure (**pressure\_1/eos**, **pressure\_1/tetra**, **pressure\_1/rhomb**, **pressure\_2/eos**, ...). In each **pressure\_x/** directory a file called **z\_pressure.dat** is created with the lattice constant at each pressure given in **case.inelastp1**. In contrast to **init\_elast** the calculations are initialized using **init\_lapw** in batch mode and the necessary parameters are set in **case.inelastp1**. The following small programs and scripts are utilized by **init\_elast\_pressure**: **iniel\_pressure\_reader.pl**, **iniel\_pressure\_in2reader.pl**, **genetempl**
- ▶ **elast\_setup\_pressure:** Similar to **elast\_setup** this script has to be run in the **elast** directory and requires the input file **elast.inelastp2** (a template can be found at **\$WIENROOT/SRC.templates/elast.inelastp2**). It creates the distorted struct files and the **pressure\_x/eos.job**, **pressure\_x/rhomb.job**, **pressure\_x/tetra.job** and **pressure\_x/runjob.x** files in each directory **pressure\_x**. The three scripts **eos.job**, **rhomb.job** and **tetra.job** can either be started separately or together by **runjob.x**. The number of structure changes per pressure and the calculational parameters are set in **elast.inelastp2**. The following small programs and scripts are utilized by **elast\_setup\_pressure**: **elast\_setup\_input.pl**, **setelast\_pressure**
- ▶ **ana\_elast\_pressure:** Once all calculations are done, this script (in contrast to **ana\_elast**) has to be run in the **elast** directory. It requires the **pressure\_x/z\_pressure.dat** files created by **init\_elast\_pressure**. The final results for a given pressure are stored in **pressure\_x/elast/result/outputs**. Additionally the collective results for all pressure are stored in the directory **elast\_results**. If the script is called with the option **-plot** (eg. **ana\_elast\_pressure --plot**) then postscript files for the fits using **gnuplot** are created in the **pressure\_x/results/outputs** directory. The following small programs and scripts are utilized by **ana\_elast\_pressure**: **anaelast\_pressure**

## 8.5.2 Input

Below are examples for **case.inelastp1** and **elast.inelastp2**:

```
----- top of file: case.inelastp1 -----
15 RMT_reduction
XC_PBE V_xc_potential
-6 CORE_separation
9 RKMAX
```

```

10000 NUMBER_of_k-points
15 GMAX
NM SPIN
NM INST

7.777777 0
7.655344 10
7.553434 20
----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

|     |       |                                                             |
|-----|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| RMT |       |                                                             |
|     | 1-100 | RMT reduction by X %                                        |
|     | OLD   | RMT values taken from case.struct file in working directory |

**line 2:** free format

|          |  |                                |
|----------|--|--------------------------------|
| $V_{xc}$ |  | Exchange-correlation potential |
|----------|--|--------------------------------|

**line 3:** free format

|           |  |                                               |
|-----------|--|-----------------------------------------------|
| $E_{sep}$ |  | Energy separation for core and valence states |
|-----------|--|-----------------------------------------------|

**line 4:** free format

|       |  |             |
|-------|--|-------------|
| RKMAX |  | RKMAX value |
|-------|--|-------------|

**line 5:** free format

|        |  |                               |
|--------|--|-------------------------------|
| k-mesh |  | Number of k-points in full BZ |
|--------|--|-------------------------------|

**line 6:** free format

|      |  |            |
|------|--|------------|
| GMAX |  | GMAX value |
|------|--|------------|

**line 7:** free format

|      |      |                |
|------|------|----------------|
| SPIN | NM   | non magnetic   |
|      | SPIN | spin polarized |

**line 8:** free format

|      |     |                                                |
|------|-----|------------------------------------------------|
| INST | OLD | case.inst file is taken from working directory |
|      | NEW | new case.inst file is created                  |

**line 9:** Empty line

**line 10-x:** free format

|        |  |                                                                                                    |
|--------|--|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $a, p$ |  |                                                                                                    |
| $a$    |  | lattice constant in a.u. at pressure $p$ (determined from e.g. a previous volume optimization ...) |
| $p$    |  | pressure $p$ written in <b>pressure.x/z_pressure.dat</b>                                           |

The `elast.inelastp2` file looks like:

```

----- top of file: elast.inelastp2 -----
iso 0
tet 0
trig 5
 -2
 -1
 0
 1
 2
ec 0.00001
spin .FALSE.
parallel .TRUE.
----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1-3 (optional):** free format  
distortion,  $n$

|            |                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| distortion | if this line is given then the specified distortions will be calculated                                                                                                                      |
| iso        | isotropic distortion                                                                                                                                                                         |
| tet        | tetragonal distortion                                                                                                                                                                        |
| trig       | trigonal(rhombohedral) distortion                                                                                                                                                            |
| $n$        | number of structure changes $n$ for a given type of distortion; the exact changes in the lattice constant are given on the following $n$ lines (free format, lines 4-8 in the example above) |
| 0          | default values are taken (-10%, -9%, ..., -1%, 0%, 1%, ..., 9%, 10% - 21 values)                                                                                                             |
| > 0        | change in the lattice constant in %                                                                                                                                                          |

**line 9 (optional):** free format

|    |                                                                                              |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ec | energy convergence criterion (if this line is missing then default value of 0.00001 is used) |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**line 10 (optional):** free format

|      |                                                                                                                                          |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| spin | .FALSE. no spin polarization (default)                                                                                                   |
|      | .TRUE. spin polarization ( <b>runsp_lapw</b> used instead of <b>run_lapw</b> in <b>eos.job</b> , <b>tetra.job</b> and <b>rhomb.job</b> ) |

**line 11 (optional):** free format

|          |                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| parallel | .FALSE. default                                                                                                                                                                    |
|          | .TRUE. if <b>.machines</b> exists in the <b>elast/</b> directory then it will be copied into <b>pressure_x/eos</b> , <b>pressure_x/tetra</b> , <b>pressure_x/rhomb</b> directories |

## 8.6 *FILTVEC* (wave function filter / reduction of *case.vector*)

This program was contributed by:


 Uwe Birkenheuer  
 Max-Planck-Institut für Physik komplexer Systeme  
 Nöthnitzer Str. 38, D-01187 Dresden, Germany  
 email: birken@mpipks-dresden.mpg.de  
 and  
 Birgit Adolph  
 University of Toronto, T.O., Canada

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

The program ***filtvec*** reduces the information stored in ***case.vector*** files by filtering out a user-specified selection of wave functions. Either a fixed set of band indices can be selected which is used for all selected *k*-points (global selection mode), or the band indices can be selected individually for each selected *k*-point (individual selection mode). The complete wave function and band structure information for the selected *k*-points and bands is transferred to ***case.vectorf***. The information on all other wave functions in the original file is discarded. While the structure of the generated ***case.vectorf*** file is identical to that of the original ***case.vector*** file, the corresponding ***case.energy*** file is not updated. Hence, ***case.vectorf*** can be used as substitutes for ***case.vector*** only in ***lapw7***. To filter vector files from spin-polarized calculations, ***filtvec*** has to be run separately for both the spin-up and the spin-down files.

***filtvec*** has not yet been adapted for ***w2web***.

### 8.6.1 Execution

The program ***filtvec*** is executed by invoking the command:

```
filtvec filtvec.def or filtvecc filtvec.def or x filtvec [-c]
[-up|dn] [-hf]
```

In accordance with the file handling for ***lapw1*** and ***lapw7*** the input vector file ***case.vector*** is assumed to be located in the **WIEN** scratch directory, while the reduced output vector file ***case.vectorf*** is written to the current working directory. See ***filtvec.def*** for details.

### 8.6.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in file ***param.inc*** (***r/c***):

|       |                                                                      |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NKPT  | number of <i>k</i> -points                                           |
| LMAX  | maximum number of L values used (as in <b><i>lapw1</i></b> )         |
| LOMAX | maximum L value used for local orbitals (as in <b><i>lapw1</i></b> ) |

The parameter **LMAX** and **LOMAX** must be set precisely as in ***lapw1***; all other parameters must not be chosen smaller than the corresponding parameters in ***lapw1***.

### 8.6.3 Input file case.inf

Two examples are given below. The first uses global selection mode; the second individual selection mode.

#### I. Global Selection Mode

```

- - - - - top of file case.inf - - - - -
3 1 17 33 # number of k-point list items, k-points
2 11 -18 # number of bands, band indices
- - - - - end of file - - - - -

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows.

- line 1:** free format  
 kmax ik(1) ... ik(kmax) Number of  $k$ -point list items, followed by the list items themselves. Positive list items mean selection of the  $k$ -point with the specified index; negative list items mean selection of a range of  $k$ -points with indices running from the previous list item to the absolute value of the current one. E.g. the sequence 2 -5 stands for 2, 3, 4, and 5.
- line 2:** free format  
 nmax ie(1) ... ie(nmax) Number of band index items, followed by the list items themselves. Again, positive list items mean selection of a single band index; negative list items mean selection of a range of band indices.

#### II. Individual Selection Mode

```

- - - - - top of file case.inf - - - - -
2 : # number of k-points
17 4 11 13 15 17 # k-point, number of bands, band indices
33 3 11 -14 18 # k-point, number of bands, band indices
- - - - - end of file - - - - -

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows.

- line 1:** free format  
 kmax the number of individual  $k$ -points to be selected. This number must be followed by any text, e.g. 'SELECTIONS' or simply ':', to indicate individual selection mode.
- line 2:** free format  
 ik nmax ie(1) ... ie(nmax) First the index of the selected  $k$ -point, then the number of band index items, followed by the list items for the current  $k$ -point themselves. Positive list items mean selection of the band with the specified index; negative list items mean selection of a range of band indices running from the previous list item to the absolute value of the current one. E.g. the sequence 3 -7 stands for 3, 4, 5, and 7.  
 This input line has to be repeated  $kmax$ -times.

## 8.7 FSGEN (Fermi-surface generation)

Unfortunately there is no really versatile tool for Fermi surface generation or analyzing FS properties. We have collected here a series of small programs together with some description on how to proceed to generate 2D-Fermisurfaces within WIEN.

- ▶ As usually, you have to run an scf cycle and determine a good Fermi-energy. "Good" means here a Fermi-energy coming from a calculation with a dense k-mesh.
- ▶ You should than create a mesh within a plane of the BZ, where you want to plot the FS. Some utility programs like `sc_fs_mesh`, (fcc, bcc, cxz\_mon and hex are also available) may help you here, but only some planes of the BZ have been implemented so far. Please check these simple programs and modify them according to your needs. Copy the generated k-mesh `fort.2` to `case.klist`.
- ▶ Run `lapw1` with this k-mesh.
- ▶ Run `spaghetti` with input-options such that it prints the bands which intersect EF to `case.spaghetti.ene` (line 10, see sec. 8.20)
- ▶ Edit `case.spaghetti.ene` and insert a line at the top:  
`NX, NY, x-len, y-len, NXinter, NYinter, Invers, Flip`  
 where  
`NX, NY` are the number of points in the two directions  
`x-len, y-len` are the length of the two directions of the plane (in bohr<sup>-1</sup>, you can find this in `case.spaghetti.ene`)  
`NXinter, NYinter`: interpolated mesh, e.g. 2\*NX-1  
`Invers`: 0/1: mirrors x,y  
`FLIP`: 0/1: flips x,y to y,x
- ▶ Run `spagh2rho < case.spaghetti.ene` to convert from this format into a format which is compatible with the `case.rho` file used for charge density plotting. It generates files `fort.11, fort.12, ...` (for each band separately) and you should use your favorite plotting program to generate a contourplot of the FS (by using a `contourlevel = 0`). Alternatively you can use for plotting:
- ▶ Run `fsgen_lapw 11 xx save_filename`, which is a small shell script that can plot all fermi surfaces using the data-files `fort.11, fort.12, ... fort.xx` generated in the previous steps. It requires the public domain package `pgplot` and the contour-plot program `plotgenc`. (The latter can be obtained from [http://www.wien2k.at/reg\\_user/unsupported/](http://www.wien2k.at/reg_user/unsupported/), but you must have installed the `pgplot` library before.)

## 8.8 IRelast (Elastic constants for cubic, hexagonal, tetragonal, orthorhombic, monoclinic and rhombohedral cases)

This program was contributed by:



author: Morteza Jamal  
 Ghods City-Tehran, Iran  
 m.jamal57@yahoo.com

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This package ([Jamal et al., 2016]) calculates elastic constants for cubic, hexagonal, orthorhombic, tetragonal, monoclinic and rhombohedral symmetry, respectively. It replaces previous versions on our "unsupported\_software" page.

The package is driven by the following scripts:

- ▶ **set.elast.lapw:**  
It prepares the whole calculation and should be run in a directory with a valid **case.struct** file. It finds the symmetry (S= C(cubic), H(hexagonal), T(tetragonal), O(orthorhombic), M(monoclinic) or R(rhombohedral) of the structure defined in **case.struct** and calls **S.set.elast.lapw**. It creates the necessary subdirectories **elast-constant**, **elast-constant/c11**, **elast-constant/c22**, ... and copies information of the present working directory into those new directories. **command.init.lapw** gets information to produce **auto.init.lapw** for automatic initialization. Then it gets the options for running the scf-cycle in the job files using **S.command.run.lapw**. Finally, it generates the distorted struct-files and **symm.job** files, where **symm** stands for CUBIC, HEX, TETRA, ORTHO, MONO, and RHOM, using the **S.setupc11**, **S.setupc22**, .... programs. .
- ▶ **modifyjob.lapw:**  
allows you to edit and modify the previously created **symm.job** files. This step is not necessary when you have specified proper commandline options previously.
- ▶ **calljob.lapw:**  
will execute all produced job files in **elast-constant/c11/case**, **elast-constant/c22/case**, ... sequentially, but eventually you may run all those jobs by yourself on different machines in parallel, as these steps can take quite some time. Once all calculations are done:
- ▶ **cal.elast.lapw:**  
calls all **S.ana.elast.lapw** and **S.ana.elastic.lapw** scripts and determines the **elastic constants**  $C_{ij}$  as well as the **Voigt**, **Reuss**, **Hill**, **Bulk**, **Shear** and **Young modulus** and the **Poisson ratio** (using data from the auxiliary program **S.InverseELC**). Using data from the auxiliary programs **S.InverseELC** and **MassRho**, **S.ana.elast.lapw** calculate the **Sound Velocity** and the **Debye temperature**. The main output files are **case.output.elastic** and **INVELC-matrix**, which contains the **elastic compliance constants** (invers of the elastic constants matrix). Finally, **S.ana.elastorder.lapw** will check the sensitivity of the results to the order of the polynomial fit (stored in file **output-order**) and, for monoclinic crystals, the **TWS** program which transforms the elastic constants from **WIEN2k** to STANDARD Cartesian coordinates (in file **STDELc-matrix**).

When you know your symmetry, you can simply call the corresponding series of scripts (**S = C, H, T, O, M or R**):

- ▶ **S.set.elast.lapw**
- ▶ **S.modifyjob.lapw**
- ▶ **S.calljob.lapw**
- ▶ **S.ana.elast.lapw**

After a first run you may check your results using more datapoints (more or different displacements). This can be done conveniently by **S.setupcXX**, where **XX = 11, 12, ...**, which should be run in the corresponding **elast-constant/cXX/case** directory. When you specify in addition to new datapoints also your "old" displacements, these old results will be automatically taken into account in the analysis without recalculating them.

On the other hand, when you want to change some computational parameters (RKmax, k-mesh, XC-potential) you can call **command.init.lapw** after **S.setupcXX** and then modify your **symm.job** file specifying "**set ansWSCF=no**" and a modified "**savename**" (eg. **\_pbe\_rkm8**).

After these preparations, you can rerun **symm.job** and **S.ana.elast.lapw** and check if your elastic constants are converged with respect to computational parameters.

Additional information can be found in **\$WIENROOT/SRC.IRelast/guide**.

## 8.9 IRREP (Determine irreducible representations)

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Clas Persson  
 Condensed Matter Theory Group, Department of Physics,  
 University of Uppsala, Sweden  
 email: Clas.Persson@fysik.uu.se

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This program determines the irreducible representation for each eigenvalue and all your k-points. It is in particular useful to analyse energy bands and their connectivity.

You need a valid vector file, but no other input is required. The output can be found in **case.outputir** and **case.irrep**. For nonmagnetic SO calculations you must set IPR=1 in **case.inso**.

The output of this program is needed when you want to draw bandstructures with connected lines (instead of "dots").

It will not work in cases of non-symmorphic spacegroups AND k-points at the surface of the BZ. See also **\$WIENROOT/SRC\_irrep/README**.

### 8.9.1 Execution

The program **irrep** is executed by invoking the command:

```
irrep [up/dn]irrep.def or x irrep [-so -up/dn -hf]
```

### 8.9.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in file **param.inc**:

|         |                                                                       |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LOMAX   | max. no. of local orbital. should be consistent with lapw1 and lapwso |
| NLOAT   | number of different types of LOs                                      |
| MSTP    | max. step to describe k as a fraction                                 |
| MAXDG   | max. no. of degenerate eigenfunctions                                 |
| MAXIRDG | max. no. of degenerate irr. representations                           |
| FLMAX   | size of flag (FL) array (should be 4)                                 |
| MAXIR   | max. no. of irreducible representations                               |
| NSYM    | max. no. of symmetry operations                                       |
| TOLDG   | min. energy deviation of degenerate states, in units of Rydberg       |

## 8.10 JOINT (Joint Density of States)

This program was contributed by:


 Claudia Ambrosch-Draxl  
 Atomistic Modelling and Design of Materials  
 University Leoben  
 A-8700 Leoben, AUSTRIA  
 email: cad@unileoben.ac.at  
 Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This program carries out the BZ integration using the momentum matrix elements **case.symmat** calculated before by **opti.c**. The interband or the intraband contributions to the imaginary part of the dielectric tensor ( $\epsilon_2$ ) can be computed. Alternatively, the DOS or the joint DOS can be derived.

The output in **case.joint** can be plotted with any xy-plotting package or **opticplot\_lapw** or **Curve.lapw**.

*Warning: Negative values for  $\epsilon_2$  may occur due to negative weights in Blöchl's tetrahedron method.*

For optional XMCD calculations (see OPTICS) an integration of the Brillouin zone is carried out using the momentum matrix elements from **case.symmat1up** and **case.symmat2up** (if both edges are present, otherwise only from **case.symmat1up**). The broadened and unbroadened spectra are written in files **case.xmcd** and **case.rawxmcd**: in these files, the first column is the energy mesh, the second and third columns the left and right polarized absorption spectra, the fourth column the XMCD and the last is the XAS. For  $L_{2,3}$ ,  $M_{2,3}$ , and  $M_{4,5}$  edges, the broadened and unbroadened spectra for the single edges (useful for the application of Carra's and Thole's sum rules) are stored in **case.broad1** and **case.broad2** and **case.raw1** and **case.raw2**, respectively, where "1" and "2" are referred to the higher and lower energy core state.

### 8.10.1 Execution

The program **joint** is executed by invoking the command:

```
joint joint.def or x joint [-up|dn] [-hf]
```

### 8.10.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameter is listed in files **param.inc**:

```

NSYM order of point group
MG0 number of columns (usually 9)

```

### 8.10.3 Input

An example is given below:

```

----- top of file: case.injoint -----
 1 9999 8 : LOWER,UPPER,upper-valence BANDINDEX
-0.0000 0.00100 2.0000 : EMIN DE EMAX FOR ENERGYGRID IN ryd
eV : output units eV / ryd
XMCD : omitt these 4 lines for non-XMCD
-49.88 -50.80 : core energies in Ry (grep :2P case.scfc)
 1.6 0.6 : core-hole broadening (eV) for both core states
 0.1 : spectrometer broadening (eV)
 4 : SWITCH
 2 : NUMBER OF COLUMNS

```

```

0.1 0.1 0.3 : BROADENING (FOR DRUDE MODEL - switch 6,7)
----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

b1, b2, lower, upper and (optional) upper-valence band-index (Setting b3 may  
b3 allow for additional analysis (restricting the occupied bands from b1-  
b3) and in big cases it will reduce memory requirements. Otherwise set  
b3 equal b2)

**line 2:** free format

emin, Energy window and increment in Ry (emin must not be negative)  
de,  
emax

**line 3:** free format

units eV output in units of eV  
Ry output in units of Ry

**line 4:** optional line for XMCD, must be omitted for ``normal`` optic; free format

XMCD keyword for XMCD calculation, requires 3 more lines

**line 4xmcd:** must be omitted for ``normal`` optic; free format

E\_core1, lower and higher core energies (in Ry, get them using eg. "grep :2P  
E\_core2 case.scf")

**line 4xmcd:** must be omitted for ``normal`` optic; free format

broad\_core1, lifetime broadening (eV) of lower and higher core state  
broad\_core2

**line 4xmcd:** must be omitted for ``normal`` optic; free format

broad spectrometer (Gaussian) broadening (eV)

**line 4+:** free format

switch 0 joint DOS for each band combination  
1 joint DOS as sum over all band combinations  
2 DOS for each band  
3 DOS as sum over all bands  
4 imaginary part of the dielectric tensor ( $\epsilon_2$ )  
5 imaginary part of the dielectric tensor for each band combination  
6 intraband contributions: number of "free" electrons per unit cell as-  
suming bare electron mass (calculated around  $E_F \pm 10 * de$  as defined  
in input line 4), plasma-frequency

- 7 in addition to switch 6 the contributions from different bands to the plasma frequency are analyzed.

**line 5:** free format

ncol number of columns

**line 6:** free format

broadening

x,y,z broadening parameters (in units defined in line 3) for Drude-model

The band analysis for all options (switches 0, 2, 5, and 7) has been improved: For each tensor component additional files are created, where each column contains the contributions from a single band or band combination. The file names are e.g. `.Im_eps_xx_1`, `.Im_eps_xx_2`, or `.jdos_1` etc. where the number of files depend on the number of bands/band combinations.

*Warning: The number of band combinations might be quite large!*

## 8.11 KRAM (Kramers-Kronig transformation)

This program was contributed by:



Claudia Ambrosch-Draxl  
Atomistic Modelling and Design of Materials  
University Leoben  
A-8700 Leoben, AUSTRIA  
email: cad@unileoben.ac.at

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

The Kramers-Kronig analysis is carried out for the actual number of columns contained in the `case.joint[up|dn]` file. For each real component its imaginary counterpart is created and vice versa. All dielectric tensor components can be found in file `case.epsilon[up|dn]`. The real and imaginary parts of the optical conductivity (in  $10^{15}/s$ ) are written to file `case.sigmak[up|dn]`. In addition, file `case.aborp` contains the real parts of the optical conductivity (in  $1/(\Omega cm)$ ) and the absorption coefficients. The loss function is also calculated (`case.eloss`), where for the previously calculated Plasma-frequency the intraband contributions can be added.

Please note, that for spin-polarized calculations (without spin-orbit), the Kramers-Kronig analysis is NOT really additive, i.e. most quantities (like  $\epsilon_1$ ) cannot be obtained by simply adding the spin-up and dn results to get the total contribution (see equations in Ambrosch 06). Thus, one should add up both spin contributions of  $\epsilon_2$  (in `case.jointup` and `case.jointdn`) using `addjoint-updn.lapw` (this will produce `case.joint`) before calling (non-spinpolarized) `x kram`. (For a metal, the Plasma-frequencies (intraband transitions) for up and dn should be added, but then divided by  $\sqrt{2}$ , before using `x kram`.)

The 3 sumrules are also checked and written to `case.sumrules`.

The output in `case.epsilon[up|dn]` and `case.sigmak[up|dn]` can be plotted with any xy-plotting package, `opticplot.lapw` or the "OPTIC"-task in `w2web`.

### 8.11.1 Execution

The program **kram** is executed by invoking the command:

```
kram kram.def or x kram [-up|dn]
```

### 8.11.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in files **param.inc**:

|       |                                         |
|-------|-----------------------------------------|
| MAXDE | maximum number of points in energy mesh |
| MPOL  | fixed at 6                              |

### 8.11.3 Input

An example is given below:

```
----- top of file: case.inkram -----
0.0 gamma for Lorentz broadening (in units selected in joint)
0.0 energy shift (scissors operator) (in units selected in joint)
 1 add intraband contributions? yes/no: 1/0
12.60 plasma frequencies (for each ``column'' in case.injoint)
 0.20 Gammas for Drude terms (for each ``column'' in case.injoint)
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

|       |                                                        |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| EGAMM | Lorentz broadening (in energy units selected in joint) |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------|

**line 2:** free format

|        |                                                                      |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ESHIFT | Energy shift (scissors operator) (in energy units selected in joint) |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|

**line 3:** free format

|       |   |                                                                                                             |
|-------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| INTRA | 0 | Intraband contributions are not added                                                                       |
|       | 1 | Intraband contributions are added (requires plasma-frequencies calculated by <b>joint</b> using switch "6") |

**line 4:** free format

|     |                                                                                |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EPL | Plasma-frequencies (calculated by <b>joint</b> using SWITCH=6 for all columns) |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**line 5:** free format

|      |                                              |
|------|----------------------------------------------|
| EDRU | Broadening for Drude terms (for all columns) |
|------|----------------------------------------------|

## 8.12 LAPW3 (X-ray structure factors)

This program calculates X-ray structure factors from the charge density by Fourier transformation. You have to specify interactively valence or total charge density (because of the different normalization of `case.clmsum` and `case.clmval`) and a maximum  $\sin\theta/\lambda$  value.

### 8.12.1 Execution

The program `lapw3` is executed by invoking the command:

```
lapw3 lapw3.def or lapw3c lapw3.def or x lapw3 [-c]
```

### 8.12.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in file `param.inc.r` or `param.inc.c`:

|       |                                                      |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------|
| LMAX2 | highest L in in LM expansion of charge and potential |
| NCOM  | number of LM terms in density                        |
| NRAD  | number of radial mesh points                         |

## 8.13 LAPW5 (electron density plots)

This program generates the charge density (or the potential) in a specified plane of the crystal on a two dimensional grid which can be used for plotting with an external contour line program of your choice. Depending on the input files one can generate valence (`case.clmval`) or difference densities (i.e. crystalline minus superposed atomic densities) using the additional file (`case.sigma`). In spinpolarized cases one can produce up-, dn- and total densities but also spin densities (difference up-dn). It is also possible to plot total densities (`case.clmsum`), Coulomb (`case.vcoul`), exchange-correlation (`case.r2v`) or total (`case.vtotal`) potentials, but in those cases the file `lapw5.def` has to be edited and you must replace `case.clmval` by the respective filename. The file `case.rho` contains in the first line

```
npx, npy, xlength, ylength;
```

and then the density (potential) written with:

```
write(21,11) ((charge(i,j), j=1, npy), i=1, npx)
11 format(5e16.8)
```

In order to get 3D-data for plotting with `xcrysden`, you can also use the script `prepare_xsf_lapw` (see Sect. 5.10.10).

A recent extension by L.D. Marks allows to calculate STM images (constant current) according to the Tersoff-Hamman approximation. Before doing this, you have to run `lapw2` with a suitable energy window around the Fermi energy, which should correspond to the experimental bias voltage (`x lapw2 -a11 EMIN EMAX`). The output contains the z-position (height) of the "tip", i.e. the position where the density has the specified value.

It is strongly recommended that you use "Run Programs  Tasks  Electron density plots" from `w2web`, see the TiC example in Fig.3.6 .

### 8.13.1 Execution

The program `lapw5` is executed by invoking the command:

```
lapw5 lapw5.def or lapw5c lapw5.def or x lapw5 [-c -up|dn]
```

### 8.13.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in file `param.inc`:

|       |                                                      |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------|
| LMAX2 | highest L in in LM expansion of charge and potential |
| NCOM  | number of LM terms in density                        |
| NRAD  | number of radial mesh points                         |
| NPT00 | number of radial mesh points beyond RMT              |
| NSYM  | order of point group                                 |

### 8.13.3 Input

An example is given below. You may want to use XCRYSDEN by T.Kokalj to generate this file (see sect. 9.29.2).

```
----- top of file: case.in5 -----
0 0 0 1 # origin of plot: x,y,z,denominator
1 1 0 1 # x-end of plot
0 0 1 2 # y-end of plot
3 3 3 # x,y,z nshells (of unit cells)
100 100 # nx,ny
RHO # RHO/DIFF/OVER; ADD/SUB or blank
ANG VAL NODEBUG # ANG/ATU, VAL/TOT, DEBUG/NODEBUG
NONORTHO # optional line: ORTHO|NONORTHO
GAUSS # this and the following lines are for STM mode
0.5 0 0.5 0.0 0.0 0.05 # vibrational tensor
STM 4.0D-5 3 # STM mode, density-level, axis (3=z-axis)
SEMPER # optional output format for semper7 code
FAST # optional, useful for a first crude check
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ix,iy,iz,idv</code> | The plane and section of the plot is specified by three points in the unit cell, an origin of the plot, an x-end and an y-end. The first line specifies the coordinates of the origin, where $x=ix/idv$ , ... in fractional units of the lattice vectors (except <i>fc</i> , <i>bc</i> and <i>c</i> lattices, where the lattice vectors of the conventional cell are used). Note the special meaning for STM mode described below. |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**line 2:** free format

|                           |                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| <code>ix,iy,iz,idv</code> | coordinates of x-end |
|---------------------------|----------------------|

**line 3:** free format

ix,iy,iz,idv coordinates of y-end (The two directions x and y must be orthogonal to each other unless NONORTHO is selected). Since it is quite difficult to specify those 3 points for a rhombohedral lattice, an auxiliary program **rhomb.in5** is provided, which creates those points when you specify 3 atomic positions which will define your plane. The most convenient way to specify this plane (for a more complex structure) is using XCrystal, where you can simply click on 3 atoms which will span the plane.

**line 4:** free format

nxsh, specifies the number of nearest neighbor cells (in x,y,z direction) where  
nysh, atomic positions are generated (needs to be increased for very large plot  
nzsh sections, otherwise some "atoms" are not found in the plot)

**line 5:** free format

npv, specifies number of grid points in plot. npv=1 produces a file  
npy **case.rho.onedim** containing the distance r (from the origin) and the  
respective density, which can be used in a standard x-y plotting program.

**line 6:** format (2a4)

switch, addsub

|        |      |                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| switch | RHO  | charge (or potential) plots, no atomic density is used (regular case)                                                                                  |
|        | DIFF | difference density plot (crystalline - superposed atomic densities), needs file <b>case.sigma</b> (which is generated with LSTART, see section 6.4)    |
|        | OVER | superposition of atomic densities, needs file <b>case.sigma</b>                                                                                        |
| addsub | NO   | (or blank field): use only the file from unit 9                                                                                                        |
|        | ADD  | adds densities from units 9 and 11 (if present), e.g. to add spin-up and down densities.                                                               |
|        | SUB  | subtracts density of unit 11 (if present) from that of unit 9 (e.g. for the spin-density, which is the difference between spin-up and down densities). |

**line 7:** format (3a4)

iunits, cnorm, debug

|        |      |                                                                     |
|--------|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| iunits | ATU  | density (potential) in atomic units e/a.u. <sup>3</sup> (or Ry)     |
|        | ANG  | density in e/Å <sup>3</sup> (do not use this option for potentials) |
| cnorm  |      | determines normalization factor                                     |
|        | VAL  | used for files <b>case.clmval, r2v, vcoul, vtotal</b>               |
|        | TOT  | used for files <b>case.clmsum</b>                                   |
| debug  | DEBU | debugging information is printed (large output)                     |

**line 8 (optional):** free format

north1 ORTHO (default) enforces directions to be orthogonal  
NONORT directions can be arbitrary; use this option only if your plotting program supports non orthogonal plots (e.g. for XCRYSDENS).

**line 9 (this and the following lines are optional for the STM mode):** free format

VIBR    GAUSS    suggested mode of vibrational smearing

**line 10:** free format

V11,V12,V22,V13,V23,V33

the size matrix components of the vibration tensor in units of distance squared, where the units are either ANG or ATU as defined earlier

**line 11:** free format

MODE, level, axis

MODE    STM    enables STM mode

level    the density level (typically  $10^4 - 10^5 e^- / \text{ang}^3$ ). If this value is inappropriately chosen, the code will terminate with a statement: "Cannot Bracket, sorry".

axis    the axis normal to the surface (e.g. 3 for z-axis). Note that in STM mode the z-coordinate specified in the first 3 lines is used as a starting value for the search of the z-position where the density has the value of "level". This starting z-value has to be in the interstitial (vacuum) region.

**line 12 (optional):** free format

SEMPER    this keyword puts the output in a format readable by the semper7 code (exchange of x,y order).

**line 13 (optional):** free format

FAST    this keyword performs a fast approximate calculation for checking if your input (in particular the density level) is reasonable.

In order to plot total densities or potentials (see cnorm as above) you have to create `lapw5.def` using `x lapw5 -d`, then edit `lapw5.def` and insert proper filenames (`case.clmval`, `case.r2v`, `case.vcoul`, `case.vtotal`) for units 9 and 11, and finally run `lapw5 lapw5.def`.

## 8.14 LAPW7 (wave functions on grids / plotting)

This program was contributed by:



Uwe Birkenheuer  
 Max-Planck-Institut für Physik komplexer Systeme  
 Nöthnitzer Str. 38, D-01187 Dresden, Germany  
 email: birken@mpipks-dresden.mpg.de  
 and  
 Birgit Adolph,  
 University of Toronto, T.O., Canada

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

The program **lapw7** generates wave function data on spatial grids for a given set of  $k$ -points and electronic bands. **lapw7** uses the wave function information stored in **case.vector** (or in reduced (filtered) form in **case.vectorf** which can be obtained from **case.vector** by running the program **filtvec**). Depending on the options set in the input file **case.in7(c)** one can generate the real or imaginary part of the wave functions, it's modulus (absolute value) or argument, or the complex wave function itself. For scalar-relativistic calculations both the large and the small component of the wave functions can be generated (only one at a time). The wave functions are generated on a grid which is to be specified in the input file(s). The grid can either be any arbitrary list of points (to be specified free-formatted in a separate file **case.grid**) or any  $n$ -dimensional grid ( $n = 0..3$ ). The operating mode and grid parameters are specified in the input file **case.in7(c)**. As output **lapw7** writes the specified wave function data for further processing – e.g. for plotting the wave functions with some graphical tools such as gnuplot – in raw format to **case.psink**. For quick inspection, a subset of this data is echoed to the standard output file **case.outputf** (the amount of data can be controlled in the input). In case, **lapw7** is called many times for one and the same wave function, program overhead can be reduced, by first storing the atomic augmentation coefficients  $A_{lm}$ ,  $B_{lm}$  (and  $C_{lm}$ ) to a binary file **case.abc**. For the spin-polarized case two different calculations have to be performed using either the spin-up or the spin-down wave function data as input.

It should be easy to run **lapw7** in parallel mode, and/or to apply it to wave function data obtained by a spin-orbit interaction calculation. None of these options have been implemented so far. Also, **lapw7** has not yet been adapted for **w2web**.

### 8.14.1 Execution

The program **lapw7** is executed by invoking the command:

```
lapw7 lapw7.def or lapw7c lapw7.def or x lapw7 [-c] [-up|dn] [-sel]
[-hf]
```

With the **-sel** option **lapw7** expects data from the reduced (filtered) wave function file **case.vectorf**, otherwise the standard wave function file **case.vector** is used. The reduced vector file **case.vectorf** is assumed to resist in the current working directory, while the standard vector file **case.vector** (which may become quite large) is looked for in the WIEN scratch directory. For details see **lapw7.def**.

### 8.14.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in file **param.inc\_(r/c)**:

|       |                                                  |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------|
| NRAD  | number of radial mesh points                     |
| NSYM  | order of point group                             |
| LMAX7 | maximum L value used for plane wave augmentation |
| LOMAX | maximum L value used for local orbitals          |

The meaning of LMAX7 is the same as that of LMAX2 in **lapw2** and that of LMAX-1 in **lapw1**. Rather than being an upper bound it directly defines the number of augmentation functions to be used. It may be set different to LMAX2 in **lapw2** or LMAX-1 in **lapw1**, but it must not exceed the latter one. Note that, the degree of continuity of the wave functions across the boundary of the muffin tin sphere is quite sensitive to the choice of the parameter LMAX7. A value of 8 for LMAX7 turned out to be a good compromise.

### 8.14.3 Input

A sample input is given below. It shows how to plot a set of wave functions on a 2-dim. grid.

```

----- top of file -----
2D ORTHO # mode O (RTHOGONAL) | N (ON-ORTHOGONAL)
0 0 0 2 # x, y, z, divisor of origin
3 3 0 2 # x, y, z, divisor of x-end
0 0 3 2 # x, y, z, divisor of y-end
141 101 35 25 # grid points and echo increments
NO # DEP (HASING) | NO (POST-PROCESSING)
RE ANG LARGE # switch ANG|ATU|AU LARGE|SMALL
1 0 # k-point, band index
----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows.

**line 1:** A3,A1

mode flag

|                |         |                                                                  |
|----------------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mode           |         | the type of grid to be used                                      |
|                | ANY     | An arbitrary list of grid points is used                         |
| 0D,1D,2D or 3D |         | An $n$ -dim. grid of points is used. $n = 0, 1, 2,$ or $3.$      |
| flag           |         | orthogonality checking flag (for $n$ -dim. grids only)           |
|                | N       | The axes of the $n$ -dim. grid are allowed to be non-orthogonal. |
|                | O or    | The axes of the $n$ -dim. grid have to be mutual orthogonal.     |
|                | <blank> |                                                                  |

**line 2:** free format — (for  $n$ -dim. grids only)

ix iy iz idiv

Coordinates of origin of the grid, where  $x=ix/idv$  etc. in units of the *conventional* lattice vectors.

**line 3:** free format — (for  $n$ -dim. grids with  $n > 0$  only)

ix iy iz idiv

Coordinates of the end points of each grid axis. This input line has to be repeated  $n$ -times.

**line 4:** free format — (not for 0-dim. grids)

|         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| np ...  | In case of an $n$ -dim. grid, first the number of grid points along each axis, and then the increments for the output echo for each axis. Zero increments means that only the first and last point on each axis are taken. In case of an arbitrary list of grid points, the total number of grid points and the increment for the output echo. Again a zero increments means that only the first and last grid point are taken. Hence, for $n$ -dim. grids, altogether, $2 * n$ integers must be provided; for arbitrary lists of grid points two integers are expected. |
| npo ... |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

**line 5:** format(A3)

|      |     |                                                                                                                                                      |
|------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| tool |     | post-processing of the wave functions                                                                                                                |
|      | DEP | Each wave function is multiplied by a complex phase factor to align it (as most as possible) along the real axis (the so-called DEP(hasing) option). |
|      | NO  | No post-processing is applied to the wave functions.                                                                                                 |

**line 6:** format(A3,1X,A3,1X,A5)

switch iunit whpsi

|        |              |                                                                    |
|--------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| switch |              | the type of wave function data to generate                         |
|        | RE           | The real part of the wave functions is evaluated.                  |
|        | IM           | The imaginary part of the wave functions is evaluated.             |
|        | ABS          | The absolute value of the wave functions is evaluated.             |
|        | ARG          | The argument the wave functions in the complex plane is evaluated. |
|        | PSI          | The complex wave functions are evaluated.                          |
| iunit  |              | the physical units for wave function output                        |
|        | ANG          | Å units are used for the wave functions.                           |
|        | AU or<br>ATU | Atomic units are used for the wave functions.                      |
| whpsi  |              | the relativistic component to be evaluated                         |
|        | LARGE        | The large relativistic component of wave function is evaluated.    |
|        | SMALL        | The small relativistic component of wave function is evaluated.    |

**line 7:** free format

iskpt iseig

|       |  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------|--|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| iskpt |  | The $k$ -points for which wave functions are to be evaluated. Even if the wave function information is read from <b>case.vectorf</b> , iskpt refers to the index of the $k$ -point in the original <b>case.vector</b> file! If iskpt is set to zero, all $k$ -points in <b>case.vector (f)</b> are considered.                              |
| iseig |  | The band index for which wave functions are to be evaluated. Even if the wave function information is read from <b>case.vectorf</b> , iseig refers to the band index in the original <b>case.vector</b> file! If iseig is set to zero, all bands (for the selected $k$ -point(s)) which can found in <b>case.vector (f)</b> are considered. |

**line 8:** format(A4) — this line is optional

|        |      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| handle |      | augmentation coefficient control flag                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|        | SAVE | Augmentation coefficients are stored in <b>case.abc</b> ). No wave function or data is generated in this case. This option is only allowed if a <i>single</i> STOR(E) wave function is selected in the previous input line.                                                  |
|        | READ | Previously stored augmentation coefficients are read in (from or RE- <b>case.abc</b> ). This option is only allowed if the <i>same</i> single wave function as the one who's augmentation coefficients are stored in <b>case.abc</b> is selected in the previous input line. |
|        | PLOT | anything Augmentation coefficients are generated from the wave function information in <b>case.vector (f)</b> .                                                                                                                                                              |
|        | else |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

## 8.15 MINI (Geometry minimization)

This program is usually called from the script **min.lapw** and performs movements of the atomic positions according to the calculated forces (please read Sec. 5.3.2). It generates a new **case.struct** file which can be used in the next geometry/time step. Depending on the input options, **mini** helps to find the equilibrium positions of the atoms or performs a molecular dynamics simulation (which might take very long time).

For finding the equilibrium positions different methods are available. We recommend PORT, a “reverse-communication trust-region Quasi-Newton method” from the Port library [Gay, 1983],

which was implemented by L.D.Marks (L-marks@northwestern.edu, <http://www.numis.northwestern.edu>). It minimizes the total energy and NOT the forces (using the forces as derivative of E vs. atomic positions). In cases when energy and forces are not "compatible", eg. because of numerical noise due to limited scf convergence, small RKmax or crude k-mesh, PORT may fail. An interesting alternative is a sophisticated modified steepest-descent method (NEW1), which minimizes the forces (does not use the total energy). Eventually a damped Newton dynamics is also available.

The forces are read from a file `case.finM`, while the "history" of the geometry optimization or MD is stored in `case.tmpM`

One can constrain individual positions in `case.inM` or define linear constrains for several positions using `case.constraint` (thanks to B.Yanchitsky (Kiev, yan@imag.kiev.ua); for details see comments in the SRC\_templates/template.constraint file). In case of calculations with linear constrains one should use NEW1 (in `case.inM`). When constraining individual positions and using PORT, one should after modifications in `case.inM` rerun `x pairhess -copy` (which copies `.minpair` to `.minrestart` and `.min.hess`).

### 8.15.1 Execution

The program `mini` is executed by invoking the command:

```
mini mini.def or x mini
```

### 8.15.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following dimensioning parameters are collected in the file `param.inc`:

|       |                                    |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| MAXIT | maximum number of geometry steps   |
| NRAD  | number of radial mesh points       |
| NCOM  | number of LM terms in density      |
| NNN   | number of neighboring atoms for nn |
| NSYM  | order of pointgroup                |

### 8.15.3 Input

Two examples are given below; one for a PORT geometry optimization, and one for molecular dynamics using a NOSE thermostat:

#### Input for geometry optimization:

```
----- top of file: xxx.inM -----
PORT 2.0 0.25 (PORT/NEWT tolf step0 (a4,2f5.2))
1.0 1.0 1.0 3.0 (1..3:delta, 4:BO/eta(1=friction zero))
1.0 1.0 1.0 6.0 (1..3=0 constraint)
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows.

**line 1:** format(a4,2f5.2)

|        |                                                                                                                               |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MINMOD | Modus of the calculation                                                                                                      |
| PORT   | Geometry optimization with reverse-communication trust-region Quasi-Newton routine from the Port library. Recommended option. |

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NEW1  | Performs geometry optimization with "sophisticated" steepest-descent method with automatic adaptation of stepsize (still experimental, but when PORT fails, an interesting alternative)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| NEWT  | Performs geometry optimization with damped Newton scheme according to<br>$R_m^{\tau+1} = R_m^\tau + \eta_m(R_m^\tau - R_m^{\tau-1}) + \delta_m F_m^\tau$ where $R_m^\tau$ and $F_m^\tau$ are the coordinate and force at time step $\tau$ . When the force has changed its direction from the last to the present timestep (or is within the tolerance TOLF), $\eta_m$ will be set to $1 - \eta_m$ . Please see also the comments in Sect. 5.3.2 |
| BFGS  | Performs geometry optimization with the variable metric method of BFGS. This option works only when a quadratic approximation is a good approximation to the specific potential surface. Obsolete.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| TOLF  | Force tolerance, geometry optimization will stop when all forces are below TOLF.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| STEP0 | Initial "Trust-region radius". Determines size of first geometry step.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

**line 2:** free format

|            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| DELTA(1-3) | For PORT (and BFGS): Precondition parameters: rescales the gradient and thus determines the size of the geometry steps<br>For NEWT/NEW1: x,y,z-delta parameters. Determines speed of motion. Good values must be found for each individual system. They depend on the atomic mass, the vibrational frequencies and the starting point (see Sect. 5.3.2).<br>DELTA(i) = 0 constrains the corresponding i-th coordinate (for PORT: after setting a DELTA(i)=0, also rerun pairhess to set a proper Hessian). The delta-x,y,z correspond to the global coordinates (the same as the positions in <b>case.struct</b> and the forces <b>:FGL</b> from <b>case.scf</b> ).<br><i>Whenever you change these DELTA(i) you must remove file <b>case.tmpM</b>!</i> |
| ETA        | For NEWT: damping (friction) parameter. ETA=1 means no friction, ETA=0 means no speed from previous time steps<br>PORT: changes the strength of the bonds when running pairhess and ZWEIGHT is negative (see the pairhess description), otherwise not used<br>NEW1: ETA is not used                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

>>> **line 2:** must be repeated for every atom

**Input for Molecular dynamics:**

```

----- top of file: nbc.inM -----
NOSE (NOSE/MOLD (a4))
58.9332 400. 1273. 5.0 (Masse, delta t, T, nose-frequency)
58.9332 400. 1273. 5.0
58.9332 400. 1273. 5.0
58.9332 400. 1273. 5.0
58.9332 400. 1273. 5.0
58.9332 400. 1273. 5.0
----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows.

**line 1:** format(a4,f5.2)

|        |                                                                   |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MINMOD | Modus of the calculation                                          |
| MOLD   | Performs next molecular dynamics timestep                         |
| NOSE   | Performs next molecular dynamics timestep using a NOSE thermostat |

**line 2:** free format

|          |                                                                               |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MASS     | Atomic mass of $i^{th}$ atom                                                  |
| TIMESTEP | Time step of MD (in atomic units, depends on highest vibrational frequencies) |
| TEMP     | Simulation Temperature (K)                                                    |
| NOSF     | Nose-frequency                                                                |

>>>**line 2:** must be repeated for every atom

## 8.16 NMR (chemical shielding)

This program was contributed by:



Robert Laskowski  
Inst.Materials Chemistry  
TU Vienna  
A-1060 Vienna, AUSTRIA

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This program calculates the orbital contribution to the NMR (chemical) shielding (the total shielding for insulators). It will first calculate the perturbation of the wave functions due to the magnetic field (first order perturbation theory) and the resulting current. This induced current is then integrated (via the Biot-Savart law) to obtain the magnetic shielding at a nucleus. For details see [Laskowski and Blaha, 2012a, Laskowski and Blaha, 2012b, Laskowski et al., 2013, Laskowski and Blaha, 2014].

The program does not need to be called by the user, but it is interfaced with the script `x.nmr.lapw` (all details can be found in sect. 5.6), where the different modes/options can be selected as switches. It can run in k-point as well as in mpi-parallel mode.

It does not have its own input file, but a modified `case.in1` is necessary, which needs to be generated by `x.nmr.lapw -mode in1`. We need an extended basis set with several local orbitals (up to very high energies) for all " $l + 1$ " states, where " $l$ " refers to the maximal "chemical  $l$ " of the specific atom ( $l=1$  for C, but 2 for Fe, ..). In addition ALL eigenvalues must be calculated, which increases the cpu-time of lapw1 as compared to a normal scf-calculation. In addition `lapw1/2` and `nmr` is run for 7 different k-meshes, an unshifted one as well as plus/minus shifted meshes in x, y and z direction.

## 8.17 OPTIC (calculating optical properties)

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Claudia Ambrosch-Draxl  
 Atomistic Modelling and Design of Materials  
 University Leoben  
 A-8700 Leoben, AUSTRIA  
 email: cad@unileoben.ac.at

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

The theoretical background is described in detail in [Abt et al., 1994] and [Ambrosch-Draxl and Sofo, 2006] (Please cite the latter when publishing optics results!). The calculation of optical properties requires a dense mesh of eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenvectors. For that purpose start **kgen** and generate a fine k-mesh (with many k-points). Run **lapw1** and then **lapw2** with the option FERMI (*Note: You must also put TETRA / with value=101. for metallic systems case.in2*) in order to generate the weight-file. After the vector-file has been generated by **lapw1** run **optic** in order to produce the momentum matrix elements. Then the program **joint** carries out the BZ integration and computes the imaginary part of the complex dielectric tensor. In order to obtain the real part of the dielectric tensor **kram** may be executed which uses the Kramers-Kronig relations.

The program **optic** generates the symmetrized squared momentum matrix elements

$$M_i = \langle n'\vec{k} | \vec{p} \cdot \vec{e}_i | n\vec{k} \rangle^2$$

between all band combinations for each k-point given in the vector-file and stores them in **case.symmat**. For the orthogonal lattices the squared diagonal components can be found in the file **case.mat.diag**. For non-orthogonal systems all 6 components  $(M_j)^* M_k$  can be calculated according to the symmetry of the crystal. In systems without inversion symmetry the complex version **opticc** must be executed.

The matrix elements (and the imaginary part of the dielectric tensor) are given per spin in case of the spin-polarized calculation and as a sum of both spin directions if the calculation is non-spinpolarized.

Due to spin-orbit coupling imaginary parts of the nondiagonal elements may occur in spinpolarized cases. Thus in general, up to 9 components can be calculated at the same time.

Since version WIEN2k\_11.1 an option for the calculation of **XMCD** (X-ray magnetic circular dichroism) has been added by Lorenzo Pardini (loren.pard@gmail.com). Please cite [Pardini et al., 2012] when using XMCD and check the paper for further details. In the case of the XMCD calculation, the momentum matrix elements in the dipole approximation between the selected core state and conduction states are stored in case.symmat1up (higher energy core state, eg. L<sub>3</sub>) and case.symmat2up (lower energy core state, eg. L<sub>1</sub>) for each k-point and every band. For K, L<sub>1</sub>, and M<sub>1</sub> edges, only **case.symmat1up** is written, since in these cases there is only one edge, whereas both **case.symmat1up** and **case.symmat2up** are written for the remaining cases.

**XMCD calculation can be only performed for system with spin-polarized AND spin-orbit set up.**

In order to calculate XMCD and x-ray absorption spectra, eigenvalues must be evaluated over a mesh in the whole Brillouin zone; for that porpouse, the following procedure should be followed:

- ▶ copy **case.struct** to **case.ksym** (**cp case.struct case.ksym**);
- ▶ generate a k-mesh in the whole Brillouin zone (**x kgen -so -fbz**);
- ▶ change TOT to FERMI in **case.in2c**;
- ▶ set IPRINT=1 in **case.inc** to activate core-wavefunction output;
- ▶ for metallic systems, put **TETRA** with value 101;
- ▶ execute **x lapw1 -up / -dn**;

- ▶ execute **x lapwso -up**;
- ▶ execute **x lapw2 -fermi -up / -dn**;
- ▶ execute **x lcore -up / -dn**;
- ▶ run optic: **x optic -so -up**;
- ▶ run joint: **x joint -up**.

You must not use  $p-1/2$  "relativistic" LOs in **LAPWSO** and no HDLOs in **lapw1**, since this basis is not supported on **OPTICS** yet. However, you can use multiple LOs (high-energy LOs) provided you do not use the XMCD option.

### 8.17.1 Execution

The program **optic** is executed by invoking the command:

```
optic(c) optic.def or x optic [-c -up|dn -so -p -hf]
```

Recommended procedure for spin-orbit coupling:

In order to get the correct matrix elements, the files **case.vectorso[up|dn]** have to be used. For that purpose the following procedure is recommended:

- ▶ run SCF cycle: **run[sp]\_lapw -so**
- ▶ generate a fine k-mesh for the optics part: **x kgen [-so (if case.ksym has been created by symmetso) ]**
- ▶ change TOT to FERMI in **case.in2c**
- ▶ execute **run[sp]\_lapw -so -s lapw1 -e lcore** with this fine k-mesh
- ▶ run optic: **x opticc -so [-up]**
- ▶ run joint: **x joint [-up]**
- ▶ run kram: **x kram [-up]**

In cases of non-spinpolarized spin-orbit calculations WITHOUT inversion symmetry one must do some tricks and "mimick" a spinpolarized calculation:

- ▶ cp case.vsp case.vspup
- ▶ cp case.vsp case.vspdn
- ▶ cp case.vectorso case.vectorsoup
- ▶ x lapw2 -fermi -so -c
- ▶ cp case.weight case.weightup
- ▶ cp case.weight case.weightdn
- ▶ x optic -so -up
- ▶ x joint -up

Due to the "paramagnetic" weight files (which are normalized to 2 electrons per band instead of one) all your results (joint/sigma...) must be divided by a factor of two.

*Note: In spin-polarized cases with spin-orbit only one call to **optic**, **joint** and/or **kram** (either up or down) is necessary, since the spins are not independent any more and both vector-files are used at the same time.*

### 8.17.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following dimensioning parameters (listed in **param.inc\_r** and **param.inc\_c**) are used:

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LMAX  | highest l+1 in basis function inside sphere (reducing LMAX to 4 or 5 may dramatically speed-up optics for large cases, but of course the matrix elements will be truncated and do not have full precision) |
| LOMAX | highest l for local orbital basis (consistent with input in case.in1)                                                                                                                                      |
| NRAD  | number of radial mesh points                                                                                                                                                                               |
| NSYM  | order of point group                                                                                                                                                                                       |

### 8.17.3 Input

An example is given below:

```

----- top of file: case.inop -----
99999 1 : NKMAX, NKFIRST
-5.0 2.0 18 : EMIN, EMAX, NBvalMAX
XMCD 1 L23 : optional line: for XMCD of 1st atom and L23 spectrum
2 : number of choices (columns in *symmat)
1 : Re xx
3 : Re zz
OFF : ON/OFF writes MME to unit 4
----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

#### line 1: free format

|         |                                                                     |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nkmax,  | maximal number of k-points , number of k-point to start calculation |
| nkfirst |                                                                     |

#### line 2: free format

|          |                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| emin,    | absolute energy range (Ry) for which matrix elements should be calculated                                                                                                  |
| emax     |                                                                                                                                                                            |
| nbvalmax | optional input. Setting this to the number of occupied bands (see case.output2) will reduce cpu-time of optics (for large cases, MM only between occupied and empty bands) |

#### line 3: optional line, must be omitted for ``normal'' optic; free format

|       |                                                                                |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| XMCD  | fixed keyword to indicate XMCD calculation. You should also use NCOL=6         |
| natom | atom number (from <b>case.struct</b> file) for which XMCD should be calculated |
| edge  | specify the edge: must be K, L1, L23, M1, M23 or M45                           |

#### line 3+: free format

|      |                                            |
|------|--------------------------------------------|
| ncol | number of choices (columns in case.symmat) |
|------|--------------------------------------------|

#### line 4+: free format

|       |                                          |
|-------|------------------------------------------|
| icol  | column to select. Choices are:           |
| 1 ... | Re $\langle x \rangle \langle x \rangle$ |
| 2 ... | Re $\langle y \rangle \langle y \rangle$ |
| 3 ... | Re $\langle z \rangle \langle z \rangle$ |
| 4 ... | Re $\langle x \rangle \langle y \rangle$ |
| 5 ... | Re $\langle x \rangle \langle z \rangle$ |

6 ... Re  $\langle y \rangle \langle z \rangle$

7 ... Im  $\langle x \rangle \langle y \rangle$

8 ... Im  $\langle x \rangle \langle z \rangle$

9 ... Im  $\langle y \rangle \langle z \rangle$

Options 7-9 apply only in presence of SO, options 4-6 only in non-orthogonal cases.

**line 5:** free format

IMME, NATOMS (optional input)

|        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IMME   | OFF/ON; optionally prints unsquared momentum matrix elements to unit 4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| NATOMS | number of atoms for which the opt. matrix elements should be calculated (The index of the atoms is read in the next line). Please note, that since we need the squared matrix elements, the sum of $\epsilon_2$ using atom "1" and atom "2" separately is NOT the same as using atom "1 and 2" together, since we miss crossterms. Nevertheless this can be a useful option to analyze the origin of certain peaks in $\epsilon_2$ . I recommend to repeat this analysis for all possible combinations, and also for a list of "all" atoms, since this shows the effect of the interstitial (and crossterms involving the interstitial). |

**line 6: (optional)** free format

|        |                                                                                           |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IATOMS | List of NATOMS atoms for which the opt. matrix elements should be calculated (see above). |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 8.18 OPTIMIZE (Volume, c/a or 2-4 dimensional lattice parameter optimization)

This program generates a series of new struct files corresponding to different volumes, c/a ratios, or otherwise different lattice parameters (depending on your input choice) from an existing struct file (either `case_initial.struct` or `case.struct`). (When `case_initial.struct` is not present, it will be generated from the original `case.struct`).

Furthermore it produces a shell script `optimize.job`. You may modify this script and execute it. Further analysis of the results (at present only equilibrium volume or c/a ratio are supported in w2web) allows to find the corresponding equilibrium parameters (see Sec.5.3.1).

### 8.18.1 Execution

The program `optimize` is executed by invoking the command:

```
optimize optimize.def or x optimize
```

### 8.18.2 Input

You have to specify interactively which task should be performed (volume, c/a, b/a optimization, or full optimization for tetragonal, orthorhombic or monoclinic structure), how many cases you want to do and how large the change (+/- xx %) should be for each case.

## 8.19 QTL (calculates special partial charges and population matrices)

This program was contributed by:

⇒ P. Novák and J.Kuneš  
 Inst. of Physics, Acad.Science, Prague, Czeck Republic  
 email: novakp@fzu.cz

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

**qtl** creates the input for calculating total and projected density of states of selected atoms (with a limit of 28 different atoms) and selected  $l$ -subshells. It thus provides similar data as **lapw2 -qtl**, but it allows for additional options. In particular it supports calculation of DOS projected on relativistic states  $p_{1/2}, p_{3/2}, d_{3/2}, d_{5/2}, f_{5/2}, f_{7/2}$ , DOS projected on states in a rotated coordinate system and DOS projected on individual  $f$  states. **qtl** also allows to calculate population matrix and energy resolved population matrix. Comparing to **lapwdm** population matrix, the matrix created by **qtl** may contain also the cross terms between different orbital and spin numbers and it can be energy resolved. Important option of the **qtl** is the symmetrization that makes the calculation longer, but must be switched on whenever the quantities, which are not invariant are calculated. Detailed description may be found in *QTL - technical report* by P. Novák. The calculation is based on the spectral decomposition of a density matrix on a given atomic site and its transformation to the required basis.

The output is written to **case.qtl [up/dn]**. For the DOS calculation the file **case.qtltext [up/dn]** is created in which the ordering of partial charges is given. *Please note, that in contrast to case.qtl [up/dn] from x lapw2 -qtl the total partial charge of an atom is NOT multiplied with its "multiplicity" and contains only the sum of the requested  $l,m$  terms (eg. s,p,d) and thus not all contributions. Also the interstitial charge will usually be NOT correct.*

### 8.19.1 Execution

The program **qtl** is executed by invoking the command:

```
x qtl [-up/dn -so -p -hf] or
qtl qtl.def
```

### 8.19.2 Input

A sample input (a default is created automatically during **init\_lapw** for **case.inq** is given below.

```
----- top of file: case.inq -----
-7. 2. Emin Emax
2 number of selected atoms
1 2 0 0 iatom1 qsplitt1 symmetrize loro
2 1 2 nL1 p d
3 3 1 1 iatom2 qsplitt2 symmetrize loro
4 0 1 2 3 nL2 s p d f
1. 1. 1. new axis z
----- bottom of file -----
```

Table 8.93: Possible values of QSPLIT and their interpretation

| QSPLIT | meaning                                                                          |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -2     | DOS in basis according to ISPLIT from case.struct                                |
| -1     | DOS in relativistic $ j, l, s, m_j\rangle$ basis                                 |
| 0      | DOS in relativistic $ j, l, s, m_j\rangle$ basis, summed over $m_j$              |
| 1      | DOS in $ l, m_l\rangle$ basis (no symmetry)                                      |
| 2      | DOS in basis of real orbitals (no symmetry)                                      |
| 3      | axial symmetry                                                                   |
| 4      | hexagonal symmetry                                                               |
| 5      | cubic symmetry                                                                   |
| 6      | user written unitary transformation                                              |
| 88     | population matrix, no $\langle l l'\rangle$ crossterms corresponds to ISPLIT=88  |
| 99     | full population matrix including $\langle l l'\rangle$ crossterms (as ISPLIT=99) |

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

emin,emax

energy window

**line 2:** free format

natom

number of atoms selected for calculation (max. 28, if more are needed you have to run qtl in "junks")

**line 3:** free format

iatom, QSPLIT, symmetrize, loro

iatom

integer, index of atom

QSPLIT

integer, analog of ISPLIT in **case.struct**: see below

symmetrize

integer, =0 (no symmetrization), 1 (symmetrization)

loro

integer =0 original coord. system preserved

=1 (new z axis)

=2 (new z and x axes)

**line 4:** free format

Nl(iatom), (l(iatom,i),i=1,Nl(iatom))

Nl

number of orbital numbers selected for calculation

l

orbital numbers selected for calculation for atom iatom

**line 5:** free format

hz, kz, lz

real\*8, direction of new axis z (if loro=1,2)

Lines starting from line 3 are repeated for each selected atom. Line 5 only appears when calculation in new coordinate system is required (loro  $\neq$  0). Axis z in this system is along hz,kz,lz (in units of the lattice vectors, need not be normalized). If not only the z axis, but also the x axis need to be specified, then loro must be equal to 2 and additional line

hx, kx, lx (real\*8)

giving the direction of the new axis x, perpendicular to the new axis z must appear. For relativistic splitting (QSPLIT=0,-1) this rotation is ignored and z points along the direction of magnetization as defined in **case.inso**.

Indices of selected atoms, as well as the orbital numbers, must form an ascending sequence.

For QSPLIT=6 (unitary transformation prepared by user) the unitary matrices are read as in WIEN2k.07 **qtl**: For the i-th atom selected for qtl calculation, they are stored in **case.cf*fi*** and

ordered according to increasing  $l$ . The unitary transformation matrix must rotate from the standard  $l_{ms}$ -basis to the desired one. A few examples (e.g.  $jj_z$ ,  $l_{ms}$ , or  $e_g - t_{2g}$ ) are supplied with the code in `$WIENROOT/SRC_templates/template.cf*` and must be copied to `case.cf$i`. For less common cases these must be generated by hand.

### 8.19.3 Output

The results in file `case.qtl[up/dn]` are written in the same format as `lapw2` file `case.qtl[up/dn]` and thus they may be directly used by `tetra`.

The data for the interstitial DOS correspond to  $n = nat + 1$  ( $nat$  is number of atom types). The ordering of densities for all selected atoms is summarized in the file `case.qtltext[up/dn]`. The `qtltext` file that corresponds to the input data given above is:

```
Ordering of DOS in QTL file for: HoMnO3 (Munoz)

atom 1 ordering of projected DOS
p,px,py,pz, real basis
d,dz2,d(x2-y2),dxy,dxz,dyz, real basis

atom 3 ordering of projected DOS
s
p,pxy,pz, axial basis
d,dz2,d(x2-y2),d(yz+xz),dxy, axial basis
f,A2,[x(T1)+y(T1)],z(T1),[ksi(T2)+eta(T2)],zeta(T2), axial basis
 A2=xyz x(T1)=x(x2-3r2/5) y(T1)=y(y2-3r2/5) z(T1)=z(z2-3r2/5)
 ksi(T2)=x(y2-z2) eta(T2)=y(z2-y2) zeta(T2)=z(x2-y2)

Data for interstitial DOS correspond to atom index 8
```

The output for the population matrix integrated over energy is written to `case.dmat [up/dn]` that has the same format as analogous file calculated by `lapwdm`.

## 8.20 SPAGHETTI (energy bandstructure plots)

This program generates an energy bandstructure plot (postscript file `case.spaghetti.ps` and xmgrace file `case.bands.agr`) using the eigenvalues printed in `case.output1` or `case.outputso` (with switch `-so`) or `case.energy` (with switch `-enfile`). Using the SCF potentials one runs `x lapw1 -band` with a special k-mesh (`case.klist_band`) along some high-symmetry lines (some sample inputs can be found in `SRC_templates/*.klist` or you create your own k-mesh using `Xcrysden`). As an option, one can emphasize the character of the bands by additionally supplying corresponding partial charges (file `case.qt1` which can be obtained using `x lapw2 -qt1 -band`, see 7.8). This will be called “band-character plotting” below, in which each energy is drawn by a circle whose radius is proportional to the specified character of that state. It allows to analyze the character of bands (see also figures 3.12 and 3.13).

The file `case.bands.agr` can be opened directly with `xmgrace`. Within `xmgrace`, all features of the plot, such as the plot range, the plot size, line properties (style, thickness and color), axis properties, labels, etc. can easily be changed by either using the menu (submenus of the “Plot” menu) or double-clicking on the corresponding part of the figure. The size of the characters for a “band-character plot” can be changed in the menu “Plot / Graph appearance / Z normalization”.

The figures can directly be printed or exported in eps, jpg, png and other formats, via the menus "File / Print setup" and "File / Print".

C.Persson has modified this program and it allows now also to draw connected lines. For this purpose it uses the irreducible representations (from file **case.irrep** produced by program **irrep** together with a table of "compatibility relations" to decide which points should be connected (non-crossing rule !). (Note: This option will NOT work on the surface of the BZ for non-symmorphic space-groups, because the corresponding group-theory has not been implemented.)

The presence of "incompatible" **case.irrep** or **case.qt1** files (from a previous run or qt1s from a DOS calculation) may crash **spaghetti**. In such cases it is necessary to remove these files explicitly.

It is strongly recommended that you use "Run Programs  $\square$  Tasks  $\square$  Bandstructure" from **w2web**.

### 8.20.1 Execution

The program **spaghetti** is executed by invoking the command:

```
spaghetti spaghetti.def or x spaghetti [-up|dn] [-so] [-p] [-hf]
[-enefile]
```

The -p switch directs spaghetti to use the **case.output1.\*** files of a k-point parallel lapw1.

### 8.20.2 Input

An example is given below:

```
----- top of file: case.insp -----
Figure configuration
 5.0 3.0 # paper offset of plot
10.0 15.0 # xsize,y size [cm]
 1.0 4 # major ticks, minor ticks
 1.0 1 # character height, font switch
 1.1 2 4 # line width, line switch, color switch
Data configuration
-25.0 15.0 2 # energy range, energy switch (1:Ry, 2:eV)
 1 0.74250 # Fermi switch, Fermi-level (in Ry units)
 1 999 # number of bands for heavier plotting 1,1
 0 1 0.02 # jatom, jcol, size of heavier plotting
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

#### line 1: free format

```
test
```

```
test
```

line must start with '###'. Begin of figure description. This tests also if you use the new input (different from WIEN97 or early WIEN2k versions)

#### line 2: free format

```
xoffset, yoffset
```

```
xoffset
```

```
yoffset
```

x offset (in cm) of origin of plot

y offset (in cm) of origin of plot

#### line 3: free format

xsize,ysize

xsize            plotsize in x direction (cm)  
ysize            plotsize in y direction (cm)

**line 4:** free format  
eincr, mtick

eincr            energy increment where y-axis labels are printed (major ticks)  
mtick            number of minor ticks of y-axis

**line 5:** free format  
charh, font

charh            scaling factor for size of labels  
font            0    no text  
                  1    Times and Symbol  
                  2    Times,Times-Italic and Symbol  
                  3    Helvetica, Symbol, and Helvetica-Italic  
                  4    include your own fonts in defines.f

**line 6:** free format  
linew, ilin, icol

linew            line width  
ilin            0    dots or open circles  
                  1    lines  
                  2    lines and open circles  
                  3    lines and filled circles  
icol            0    black  
                  1    one-color plot  
                  2    three-color plot  
                  3    multi-color plot  
                  4    multi-color plot,one color for each irred. representation

**line 7:** free format  
test

test            line must start with '###'. Begin of data description.

**line 8:** free format  
emin, emax, iunits

emin            energy minimum of plot  
emax            energy maximum of plot  
iunits            1    energies in Ry (internal scale)  
                  2    energies in eV with respect to  $E_f$

**line 9:** free format  
iferm, efermi

iferm            0    no line at EF  
                  1    solid line at EF

|        |   |                                                                                                                                            |
|--------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | 2 | dashed line at EF                                                                                                                          |
|        | 3 | dotted line at EF                                                                                                                          |
| efermi |   | Fermi energy (Ry); can be found in the respective <b>case.scf</b> file. If set to 999., $E_f$ is not plotted (and iunits=2 cannot be used) |

**line 10:** free format

|                   |  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nband1,<br>nband2 |  | lower and upper band index for bands which should show “band-character plotting” (if <b>case.qt1</b> is present and the proper switch is set, see below). In addition the corresponding x and y coordinates are written to file <b>case.spaghetti_ene</b> (which can be used for plotting with an external xy-plotting program). |
|-------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**line 11:** free format

|                    |  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| jatom, jcol, jsize |  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| jatom              |  | If a <b>case.qt1</b> file is present, jatom indicates the atom whose character (selected by jcol) is used for “band-character plotting” (dots are replaced by circles with radii proportional to the corresponding weight, requires ilin=0,2,3). If set to zero or if <b>case.qt1</b> is not present, “band-character plotting” does not occur. |
| jcol               |  | specifies the column to be used in the respective QTL-file. 1 means total, 2...s, 3...p, ... The further assignment depends on the value of ISPLIT set in <b>case.struct</b> . (ignored for jatom=0). The description can be found in the header of <b>case.qt1</b> .                                                                           |
| jsize              |  | size factor for radii of circles used in “band-character plotting”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

if **line 11** is repeated, one can average the QTLs for different atoms (but with identical jcol and jsize).

## 8.21 TELNES3 (calculation of energy loss near edge structure)

This program was contributed by:

|   |                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ⇒ | Kevin Jorissen and Cécile Hébert<br>Ecole Polytechnique Federale de Lausanne                                                                     |
|   | Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors. |

The TELNES3 program calculates the double differential scattering cross section (DDSCS) on a grid of energy loss values and impulse transfer vectors. This double differential cross section is integrated to yield a differential cross section, which is written to file. The differential cross section is either a function of energy (ELNES integrated over impulse transfer  $q$ ); or a function of impulse transfer (ELNES integrated over energy loss  $E$ ), which shows the angular behavior of scattering.

The DDSCS is calculated as described in a forthcoming publication by K. Jorissen, C. Hebert, and J. Luitz. (The Ph.D. thesis of K. Jorissen ([http://www.wien2k.at/reg\\_user/textbooks/](http://www.wien2k.at/reg_user/textbooks/)) also describes the formalism onto which TELNES3 is built in great detail.) This formalism allows calculation of relativistic EELS including transitions of arbitrary order (i.e., non-dipole transitions).

It takes into account the relative orientation between sample and beam. If this is not necessary (because the crystal is isotropic, or the sample is polycrystalline), the formula may be integrated over  $4\pi$ , simplifying the calculation. Both scenarios are implemented in TELNES3.

A note to our faithful fans from the early days: it used to be necessary to play such tricks as recompiling **lapw2** with `lxdos=3` ; to create k-meshes without symmetry ; and to edit `case.struct` and set `ISPLIT` to 99. This is no longer necessary. Just sit back, relax, and press the buttons in `w2web`. The integration with the package **qt1** will do the job.

### 8.21.1 Execution

#### Execution

The program **telnes3** is executed by invoking the command:

```
telnes3 telnes3.def or x telnes3 [-up|-dn]
```

### 8.21.2 Input

TELNES3 requires one input file - **case.innes**. We recommend using **InnesGen<sup>TM</sup>** of **w2web** to create this input file in a clear and intuitive way. If you wish to manually edit the file, please refer to the following description. Please note that input files created for TELNES2 may or may not work with TELNES3, depending on which optional keywords were used. There isn't a shred of compatibility with the old TELNES program.

The file **case.innes** consists of two parts: a first block with required input, and a second block with optional input. In fact, the second part may be omitted altogether. The simplest input file looks like this:

```
Graphite C K edge of first atom.
1 (atom)
1, 0 (n, l core)
285 (E-Loss of 1st edge in eV)
300 (energy of the incident electrons in keV)
0.0 20.0 0.1 (the energy mesh)
5.0 1.87 (collection semiangle, convergence semiangle, both in mrad)
10 1 (NR, NT, defining the integration mesh in the detector plane)
0.8 (spectrometer broadening in eV)
END
```

This first part of the file is not formatted and contains the following information:

| line | value          | explanation                                                                                                                                |
|------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | 'Graphite ...' | Title (of no consequence for the calculation)                                                                                              |
| 2    | 1              | Atom number as given in case.struct (the index which numbers inequivalent atoms)                                                           |
| 3    | 1 0            | main and orbital quantum number n and l of the core state; eg. 1 0 stands for 1 s                                                          |
| 4    | 285            | energy of the edge onset in eV (here for the C K edge)                                                                                     |
| 5    | 300            | beam energy in keV                                                                                                                         |
| 6    | 0.0 20.0 0.1   | energy mesh given as $E_{min} E_{max} E_{step}$ ; all values in eV. 0.0 is the edge threshold.                                             |
| 7    | 5.0 1.87       | detector collection semiangle and microscope convergence semiangle in mrad                                                                 |
| 8    | 10 1           | parameters NR and NT which determine the mesh used for sampling the distribution of Q-vectors allowed by collection and convergence angles |
| 9    | 0.8            | spectrometer broadening FWHM in eV                                                                                                         |
| 10   | END            | keyword telling the program that there is no more input to read. <b>Optional keywords and values must be inserted before this line!</b>    |

There are many other parameters that control the calculation, most of which are set to reasonable default values. To use these advanced parameters, add corresponding keywords **before** the END keyword. We recommend using **InnesGen<sup>TM</sup>** of **w2web** to create this input file.

Currently, the keywords listed below may be used. Although only the first four characters of each keyword are read, we recommend using the full keyword for clarity.

#### VERBOSITY

n eg. : 1

Specifies how much output you'll get. n must be 0 (only basic output; default), 1 (medium output) or 2 (full output, including more technical information).

#### ATOMS

n1 n2 eg. : 1 3 (default : 1 0 == 1 mult(natom) )

The atom number on line 2 (see above) corresponds to a class of equivalent atoms in case.struct. Equivalent positions n1 to n2 will contribute to the spectrum (default : sum over all atoms in the equivalency class). Since all equivalent atoms have identical electronic structure up to a symmetry operation, this will simply yield a prefactor (n2-n1+1) for the orientation averaged spectrum, but as each equivalent atom has a different orientation with respect to the beam, this setting will influence the shape of an orientation sensitive spectrum.

#### DETECTOR POSITION

theta\_x theta\_y eg. : 0.5 0.5 (default : 0 0)

By default, the detector is aligned with the incoming beam - i.e., source, sample, and detector are connected by a straight line. This card shifts the detector in a plane perpendicular to the incoming beam. The shift is expressed as an angle in mrad. If one draws a line between source and sample, and another line from the sample to the center of the detector aperture, these 2 lines will form an angle of  $\sqrt{\theta_x^2 + \theta_y^2}$  mrad.

#### MODUS

m eg. : angles (default is energy)

The output is a spectrum as a function of energy if m=energy. The output is a spectrum as a function of impulse transfer/scattering angle if m=angle.

## SPLIT

splitting energy eg. : 2.7

If the initial state has an orbital quantum number larger than 0, it will generate two superposed edges: one corresponding to  $j = l - 1/2$ , and one corresponding to  $j = l + 1/2$  (eg., for the 2p initial state we have a L3 and a L2 edge). The splitting energy sets the energy separation of the two edges and should be given in eV (here, L3 is at the energy specified in the beginning of case.innes, and L2 is 2.7 eV higher). By default (keyword omitted), the splitting energy is calculated by the program. It is generally quite accurate.

## BRANCHING RATIO

branching ratio eg. : 1.4

The branching ratio is a scaling factor (eg., here the ratio of intensities L3/L2 would be set to 1.4). By default (keyword omitted), the branching ratio is set to its statistical value of  $(2l + 2)/2l$ .

## NONRELATIVISTIC

This key tells the program not to use the relativistic corrections to the scattering cross section. This option generates spectra identical to output of the old TELNES program. This produces incorrect results in many cases. By default, relativistic calculations are done.

## INITIALIZATION

make\_dos            write\_dos            eg. N N (default : Y Y)  
make\_rot.mat. write\_rot.mat    eg. Y N (default : Y Y)

TELNES3 needs many ingredients for its calculations, and this key defines how it gets two of them: the density of states, and the rotation matrices (used for transforming q-vectors from one atom to an equivalent atom). The first entry says whether or not the ingredient has to be calculated (Y : calculate; N : read from file), and the second entry says whether or not the ingredient has to be written to file (Y : write; N : don't write). If make\_dos=Y, a file case.qtl must be present from which the dos will be calculated. If make\_dos=N, then either a file **case.dos** or a file **case.xdos** containing the (x)dos must exist. If make\_rot.mat=N, a file **case.rotij** containing the rotation matrices must exist. If write\_rot.mat=Y, a file **case.rotij** is written. If write\_dos=Y, a file **case.dos** or **case.xdos** is written. The calculation of the rotation matrices is computationally negligible, but it is recommended to write the xdos to file and not calculate it over and over again.

## QGRID

qmodus                    eg. L            (U by default)  
theta\_0                    eg. 0.05 (no default value) )

A collection angle  $\alpha$  and convergence angle  $\beta$  allow scattering angles up to  $\alpha + \beta$  and a corresponding set of Q-vectors. This set (a disk of radius  $\alpha + \beta$ ) is sampled using a discrete mesh. Three types of meshes are implemented :

**U** a uniform grid, where each Q-vector samples an equally large part of the disk. Sampling is set up by drawing NR equidistant circles inside the big circle, and choosing  $(2i - 1)NT$  points on circle  $i$ , giving  $NR^2 * NT$  points in total.

- L** a logarithmic grid with  $NR$  circles. The distance between circles increases exponentially. There are  $(2i - 1)NT$  points on circle  $i$ , and  $NR^2NT$  points in total. Circle  $i$  is at radius  $\theta_0 e^{(i-1)dx}$ , where  $dx$  depends on  $NR$ ,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .
- 1** a one dimensional logarithmic mesh; there are  $NR$  circles at exponential positions, and only one point on each circle (so  $NR$  points in total). This means we sample a line in the detector\*beam plane. An economic way of getting spectra as a function of scattering angle in cases with symmetric scattering.

The line specifying  $\theta_0$  is to be omitted for the U grid.

#### ORIENTATION SENSITIVE

g1 g2 g3 (eg. 0.0 40.0 0.0) (no default value)

This key tells the program not to average over sample to beam orientations, but to use the particular sample to beam orientation defined by the three Euler angles (to be given in degrees). The Euler angles (0,0,0) means that the electron beam is parallel to the c-axis of the crystal and the 3 angles rotate with respect to the x-, y- and z-axes, respectively. Most likely, this option needs larger  $NR$  (and  $NT$ ). If the ORIENTATION SENSITIVE key is not set, the program will average over all orientations (default).

#### SELECTION RULE

type (eg. : q) (default : n)

The formula for the DDSCS contains an exponential factor in  $q$ , which we expand using the Rayleigh expansion. We identify each term in the expansion by the order  $\lambda$  of the spherical Bessel function  $j_\lambda(q)$  it contains. This key keeps some terms and discards others. This can be useful to eliminate unwanted transitions ; to study a spectrum in greater detail ; or simply to speed up the calculation significantly. Possible settings for 'type' are :

```
m : use lambda = 0 only
d : use lambda = 1 only
q : use lambda = 2 only
o : use lambda = 3 only
n : no selection rule, calculate all transitions
0-3 : all transitions up to lambda (eg., 1 means lambda = 0 and 1)
```

Be aware that the availability of the DOS limits the possible transitions (WIEN2k gives us the DOS only up to  $l=3$ ). In the nonrelativistic limit, the SELECTION RULE and LSELECTION RULE coincide i.e., the  $\lambda = 1$  terms correspond to dipole transitions etc. This is no longer true in the relativistic case.

#### LSELECTION RULE

type (eg. : q) (default : d)

Whereas the previous key selects transitions by the order of the interaction potential, this key selects them by the L-character of the final states. Possible settings for 'type' are (the orbital momentum of the initial state being denoted with  $l$ ):

```
m : L=1
d : L=1 +/- 1
q : L=1 +/- 2
o : L=1 +/- 3
n : no selection rule, calculate all transitions
0-3 : |L-1| <= type
```

Be aware that the availability of the DOS limits the possible transitions (WIEN2k gives us the DOS only up to  $l=3$ ). In the nonrelativistic limit, the SELECTION RULE and LSELECTION RULE coincide i.e., the  $\lambda = 1$  terms correspond to dipole transitions etc. This is no longer true in the relativistic case.

## EXTEND POTENTIALS

Rmax sampling lmax refine (e.g.: 3.0 15 0 1.0) (no defaults)

Calculate matrix elements beyond the muffin tin radius up to  $r = r_{\text{max}}$  (in Bohr units). Refine the radial grid by a factor refine (1 means default sampling density). This is done by evaluating the potential as given in case.vtotal, which must be present for this type of calculation, and reexpanding it in spherical harmonics, using an angular grid with step of sampling degrees, and expanding up to  $l=l_{\text{max}}$ . Currently, users should keep lmax to 0 and almost certainly refine to 1.0. However, advanced users can play around with the software and tweak it to do interesting things if they wish. TELNES3 only requires the spherical potential  $l=0$ .

## FERMI ENERGY

Ef (e.g. 0.75)

Manually set the Fermi energy to Ef (needs to be given in Rydberg units). (The default behavior is to get Ef from the header of case.qtl.)

## CORE WAVEFUNCTION

filename (e.g. case.cwf)

Read the wave function of the initial state from file. (Default behavior is to calculate it instead.)

## FINAL STATE WAVEFUNCTION

filename (e.g. case.finalwf)

Read the radial wave functions of the final state from file. (Default behavior is to calculate it instead.)

## RELATIVISTIC

Itype (e.g. 1)

Determines which flavor of relativity to use : 0 means nonrelativistic (as in TELNES), 1 means fully relativistic (default), 2 means using the contracted q-vector (only valid for dipole transitions ; as in TELNES2).

## NOHEADERS

Don't put headers in output files. This can be helpful if your plotting program doesn't like the headers. (Gnuplot doesn't mind them.)

## DOSONLY

Don't calculate the EELS spectrum halt the program after the calculation of the density of states is finished.

## NBTOT

nb (e.g. 200 )

Arrays for the DOS are first allocated at some initial size, and then reallocated at larger size if necessary. Unfortunately, these reallocation routines appear unstable in some circumstances. This card allows the user to set an array size manually and avoid the need to reallocate (nb is the number of bands). However, very large systems may lead the system to run out of memory and cause a crash.

The following cards are not yet activated (placeholders): TABULATE, SPIN

The following cards are no longer active and must be removed or renamed: XQTL, WRONG.

### 8.21.3 Practical considerations

A typical ELNES calculation consists of the following steps:

- ▶ initialize (`init_lapw`) and converge a SCF calculation (`run_lapw`)
- ▶ provide a suitable `case.innes` file
- ▶ if more excited states are needed than given by the SCF calculation, raise the upper energy limit in `case.in1` and run `x lapw1`
- ▶ create the `case.qt1` file using `x qt1 -telnes`
- ▶ calculate the EELS spectrum using `x telnes3`. It is generally a smart move to make the program calculate the DOS on the biggest energy grid you will ever need, save this to file, and simply read it from file for all future calculations (INITIALIZATION key). The same should be done for calculations using EXTEND POTENTIAL (use CORE WAVEFUNCTION key to save to file). This saves time. (In case of disk space problems, once the `case.qt1` file has been created, the `case.vector` files can be deleted. Similar, the `case.qt1` file can be deleted or compressed once the `case.dos` file exists.)
- ▶ add broadening to the spectrum using `x broadening`. If you wish, editing the `case.inb` file allows tweaking of the broadening.
- ▶ study the output (`case.elnes` or `case.broadspec` are the place to start).
- ▶ if you wish to do more calculations, save the current results using `save_eels -d calculation1`. Edit `case.innes` and run `x telnes3` again.

This sequence can conveniently be executed using `w2web` by simply clicking one button after the other.

### 8.21.4 Files

TELNES3 uses a lot of files. Many output files are only written if VERBOSITY is set to a high level. Many input files are required only for certain input settings in `case.innes`. We list here all files possibly used by TELNES3 (and listed in `telnes3.def`). Each filename is followed by I or O (input/output), a short description of the file content, and a comment on when the file is used.

- ▶ `case.innes` (I). Defines the ELNES calculation. Always read.
- ▶ `case.struct` (I). Defines the crystal. Always read.
- ▶ `case.vsp` (I). Spherical component of the crystal potential. Read unless core and final state wavefunctions are read from file.
- ▶ `case.vtotal` (I). Total crystal potential (can be generated by `lapw0`). Read if EXTEND POTENTIAL is used.
- ▶ `case.rotij` (I). Rotation matrices that transform q-vectors between equivalent atoms. Read if INITIALIZATION tells the program to do so.
- ▶ `case.dos` (IO). l-resolved density of states. Read or written depending on INITIALIZATION settings.

- ▶ `case.xdos` (IO).  $l_m, l'_m$ -resolved density of states. Read or written depending on `INITIALIZATION` settings; only if the calculation is orientation resolved.
- ▶ `case.qtl` (I). contains partial charge components and Fermi energy. Read if DOS needs to be calculated (`INITIALIZATION`) or if Fermi energy is not specified using `FERMI`.
- ▶ `case.inc` (I). Specifies core states. Only read if core states are calculated.
- ▶ `case.kgen` (I). contains k-mesh to sample the Brillouin Zone. Read if DOS needs to be calculated.
- ▶ `case.outputelnes` (O). Main log file. Always written. Content depends on `VERBOSITY`.
- ▶ `case.elnes` (O). Total spectrum. Always written.
- ▶ `case.sdlm` (O). Partial  $(l, m)$  spectra. Written if `verbosity > 0`.
- ▶ `case.ctr` (O).  $(l, m, l'_m)$  crossterms. Written if `verbosity > 0` and calculation is orientation sensitive.
- ▶ `case.corewavef` (O). Contains core wavefunctions. Written if core wavefunctions were calculated and `verbosity > 1`.
- ▶ `case.final` (O). Contains APW radial basis functions for final states at selected energies. Written if `verbosity > 1`.
- ▶ `case.ortho` (O). Contains scalar products of initial and final states. Written if `verbosity > 1`.
- ▶ `case.matrix` (O). Proportionality between partial DOS and spectrum for each  $l$ -value. Written if `verbosity > 0` and `MODUS` is energy.
- ▶ `case.cdos` (O). Selected  $(l, m, l'_m)$  cross-DOS terms. Written if calculation is orientation sensitive and `verbosity > 1` or `INITIALIZATION` causes DOS to be written to file.
- ▶ `case.sp2` (O). Integrated cross sections as a function of collection angle for all  $l$ -values. Written if calculation is orientation sensitive, `MODUS` is set to angle and `verbosity > 1`.
- ▶ `case.angular` (O). Differential cross section as a function of scattering angle for all  $l$ -values. Written if calculation is orientation sensitive, `MODUS` is set to angle and `verbosity > 1`.
- ▶ `case.inb` (O). Settings for the broadening program. Always written.
- ▶ `case.eelstable` (O). Placeholder. Not currently used.
- ▶ `telnes3.def` (I). List of files used by `TELNES3`. Always read.
- ▶ `telnes3.error` (O). Error file containing current error message; empty after successful calculation. Always written.

## 8.22 TETRA (density of states)

This program calculates total and partial density of states (DOS) by means of the modified tetrahedron method [Blöchl et al., 1994]. Please note, the tetrahedron method will not work with just one k-point and `tetra` will automatically switch to a Gaussian broadening scheme (with default broadening of 0.01 Ry). The broadening schemes can also be selected by input (see below), but is not recommended for small unit cells.

It uses the partial charges in `case.qtl` generated by the programs `lapw2` (switch `QTL`) or `qt1` and generates the DOS in states/Ry(cell) (files `case.dos1/2/3/. . .`) and in states/eV(cell) (with respect to the Fermi energy; files `case.dos1/2/3ev`). In spin-polarized calculations the DOS is given in states/Ry/spin (or states/eV/spin).

Alternatively and for the total DOS only, you can use the switch `-enefile` which does not require `case.qtl`, but uses `case.energy` and `case.scf2` (in case of parallel `lapw1` use “cat case.energy\_1 case.energy\_2 ... ; case.energy”).

Please note: The total DOS is equal to the sum over the atoms of the total-atomic DOS (inside spheres) and the interstitial-DOS. (Thus in the total-atomic DOS the “multiplicity” of an atom is considered). On the other hand, in the partial ( $l_m$ -like) DOS the multiplicity is not considered and one obtains the total-atomic DOS as a sum over all partial DOS times the multiplicity.

The “ $m$ -decomposed” DOS (e.g.  $p_z, p_y, p_x$ ) is given with respect to the local coordinate system for each atom as defined by the local rotation matrix (see Appendix A), unless you have used `x qt1`

to generate the `case.qt1` and specified a specific coordinate system in `case.inq` (see Chapter 8.19).

You can also direct `tetra` to sum-up some partial DOS components into a single DOS. This is for instance useful to sum over the different positions of one element.

Using the switches `-rxesw E1 E2` it is possible to generate a “weight-file”, where each k-point is weighted according to its contribution to the DOS in the energy range E1-E2. This weight-file `case.rxes` can be used using the switch `-rexs` to calculate the DOS with these weights. This option might be useful to simulate the E-dependency of RXES spectra, or in general calculate a “DOS” of regions around selected k-points only.

The density of states in files `case.dos1/2/3/...` or `case.dos1/2/3/...ev` can be plotted by `dosplot2.lapw` (see 5.10.5) or `Cgrace_dos.lapw` (see 5.10.6).

It is strongly recommended that you use “Run Programs [□](#) Tasks [□](#) Density of States” from `w2web`.

### 8.22.1 Execution

The program `tetra` is executed by invoking the command:

```
tetra tetra.def or x tetra [-up|dn -enefile -so -hf -rxes -rxesw
E1 E2]
```

### 8.22.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are listed in file `param.inc`:

|       |                                                                                            |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MG    | max. number of DOS cases                                                                   |
| LXDOS | usually 1, except for “cross-DOS” when using TELNES.2 = 3 (not needed anymore for TELNES3) |

### 8.22.3 Input

The required input file `case.int` can optionally be created using the `w2web` interface or the `configure.int.lapw` script (see 5.2.9).

An example is given below:

```
----- top of file: case.int -----
TiO2 # Title
-1.000 0.00250 1.200 0.003 # EMIN, DE, EMAX for DOS, GAUSS-Broad
 7 N 0.000 # NUMBER OF DOS-CASES, G/L/B broadening
 0 1 tot # jatom, doscase, description
 1 2 Ti-s
 1 3 Ti-p
 1 4 Ti-px
 1 5 Ti-py
 1 6 Ti-pz
 2 1 O-tot
SUM: 1 2 # NUMBER OF SUMMATIONS, max-nr-of summands
 2 3 # this sums dos-cases 2+3 from the input above
----- bottom of file -----
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format  
title

**line 2:** free format

emin, delta, emax, broad

|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| emin,<br>delta,<br>emax | specifies the energy mesh (in Ry) where the DOS is calculated. (emin should be set slightly below the lowest valence band; emax will be checked against the lowest energy of the highest band in <b>case.qt1</b> , and set to the minimum of these two values; delta is the energy increment. |
| broad                   | Gauss-broadening factor. Must be greater than delta to have any effect.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

**line 3:** free format

ndos, Bmethod, broadening

|            |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ndos       | specifies the number of DOS cases to be calculated. It should be at least 1. The corresponding output is written in groups of 7 to respective <b>case.dosX</b> files |
| Bmethod    | optional input (can be omitted) to select instead of the tetrahedron method:                                                                                         |
| G          | Gaussian broadening                                                                                                                                                  |
| L          | Lorentzian broadening                                                                                                                                                |
| B          | both, Gauss and Lorentzian broadening                                                                                                                                |
| broadening | parameters in Ry, typically below/around 0.01 (optional, specify two numbers for B)                                                                                  |

**line 4:** (2i5,3x,a6)

jatom, jcol, description

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| jatom       | specifies for which atom the DOS is calculated. 0 means total DOS, $jatom = nat + 1$ means DOS in the interstitial, where $nat$ is the number of inequivalent atoms. When spin-orbit is included, $jatom = nat + 1$ gives total spin-up/dn DOS in a spinpolarized SO calculation, but is meaningless in a non-spinpolarized SO case. |
| jcol        | specifies the column to be used in the respective QTL-file. 1 means total, 2...s, 3...p, ... The further assignment depends on the value of ISPLIT set in <b>case.struct</b> (see sec. 4.3); the respective description can be found in the header of <b>case.qt1</b> .                                                              |
| description | text used for further identification.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

>>>**line 4** is repeated "ndos" times**line 5:** optional line (free format)

SUM, nsum, isummax

|         |                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUM     | the keyword SUM directs tetra to add-up some partial DOS specified in the lines above and produce <b>case.dossum</b> and <b>case.dossumev</b> . |
| nsum    | number of summations as specified below (max 7).                                                                                                |
| isummax | max number of summands in the lines below.                                                                                                      |

**line 6:** optional line (free format)

iline1 iline2 ...

|             |                                                                   |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| iline1,2,.. | gives the DOS-cases which should be summed up (max isummax cases) |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|

>>>:line 6 is repeated "nsum" times

## 8.23 XSPEC (calculation of X-ray Spectra)

This program calculates near edge structure of x-ray absorption or emission spectra according to the formalism described by [Neckel et al., 1975, Schwarz et al., 1979, Schwarz and Wimmer, 1980]. For a brief introduction see below. It uses the partial charges in **case.qt1**. This file must be generated separately using **lapw2**. Partial densities of states in **case.dos1ev** are generated using the **tetra** program. Spectra are calculated for the dipole allowed transitions, generating matrix elements, which are multiplied with a radial transition probability and the partial densities of states. Unbroadened spectra are found in the file **case.txspec**, broadened spectra in the file **case.xspec**. Other generated files are: **case.m1** (matrix element for the selection rule L+1) and **case.m2** (matrix element for the selection rule L-1) and **case.corewfx** (radial function of the core state). The calculation is done with several individual programs (**initxspec**, **tetra**, **txspec**, and **lorentz**), which are linked together with the c-shell script **xspec**.

It is strongly recommended that you use "Run Programs □ Tasks □ X-ray spectra" from **w2web**.

### 8.23.1 Execution

#### Execution of the shell script xspec

The program **xspec** is executed by invoking the command:

```
xspec xspec.def or x xspec [-up|-dn]
```

#### Sequential execution of the programs

Besides calculating the X-ray spectra in one run using the **xspec** script, calculations can be done "by hand", i.e. step by step, for the sake of flexibility.

**initxspec** This program generates the appropriate input file **case.int**, according to the dipole selection rule, for the subsequent execution of the **tetra** program.

The program **initxspec** is executed by invoking the command:

```
initxspec xspec.def or x initxspec [-up|-dn]
```

**tetra** The appropriate densities of states for (L+1) and (L-1) states respectively are generated by execution of the **tetra** program.

The program **tetra** is executed by invoking the command:

```
tetra tetra.def or x tetra [-up|-dn]
```

**txspec** This program calculates energy dependent dipole matrix elements. Theoretical X-ray spectra are generated using the partial densities of states (in the **case.dos1ev** file) and multiplying them with the corresponding dipole matrix elements.

The program **txspec** is executed by invoking the command:

```
txspec xspec.def or x txspec [-up|-dn]
```

**lorentz** The calculated spectra must be convoluted to account for lifetime broadening and for a finite resolution of the spectrometer before they can be compared with experimental spectra. In the **lorentz** program a Lorentzian is used to achieve this broadening.

The program **lorentz** is executed by invoking the command:

```
lorentz xspec.def or x lorentz [-up|-dn]
```

If you want "orientation" sensitive XSPEC (like p-parallel and p-normal spectra, you may change in **case.int** the column-number to eg.  $p_x$  or  $p_z$  and rerun the last tree steps of the script above manually.

### 8.23.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following dimensioning parameters are collected in the files **param.inc** of **SRC.txspec** and **SRC.lorentz**:

|        |                                                                                 |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IEMAX0 | maximum number of energy steps in the spectrum (SRC.lorentz)                    |
| NRAD   | number of radial mesh points                                                    |
| LMAX   | highest l+1 in basis function inside sphere (consistent with input in case.in1) |

### 8.23.3 Input

Two examples are given below; one for emission spectra and one for absorption spectra:

#### Input for Emission Spectra:

```

----- top of file: case.inxs -----
NbC: C K (Title)
2 (number of inequivalent atom)
1 (n core)
0 (l core)
0,0.5,0.5 (split, int1, int2)
-20,0.1,3 (EMIN,DE,EMAX in eV)
EMIS (type of spectrum, EMIS or ABS)
0.35 (S)
0.25 (gamma0)
0.3 (W)
AUTO (generate band ranges AUTOMATICALLY or MANUALLY)
-7.21 (E0 in eV)
-10.04 (E1 in eV)
-13.37 (E2 in eV)
----- bottom of file -----

```

#### Input for Absorption Spectra:

```

----- top of file: case.inxs -----
NbC: C K (Title)
2 (number of inequivalent atom)
1 (n core)
0 (l core)
0,0.5,0.5 (split, int1, int2)
-2,0.1,30 (EMIN,DE,EMAX in eV)
ABS (type of spectrum)
0.5 (S)
0.25 (gamma0)
----- bottom of file -----

```

Interpretive comments on these files are as follows.

**line 1:** free format

|       |       |
|-------|-------|
| TITLE | Title |
|-------|-------|

**line 2:** free format

|      |                                                   |
|------|---------------------------------------------------|
| NATO | Number of the selected atom (in case.struct file) |
|------|---------------------------------------------------|

**line 3:** free format

NC principle quantum number of the core state

**line 4:** free format

LC azimuthal quantum number of the core state

The table below lists the most commonly used spectra:

| Spectrum                  | n | l |
|---------------------------|---|---|
| <i>K</i>                  | 1 | 0 |
| <i>L<sub>II,III</sub></i> | 2 | 1 |
| <i>M<sub>V</sub></i>      | 3 | 2 |

Table 8.116: Quantum numbers of the core state involved in the x-ray spectra

**line 5** free format

SPLIT,  
INT1,  
INT2 split in eV between e.g. *L<sub>II</sub>* and *L<sub>III</sub>* spectrum (compare with the respective core eigenvalues), INT1 and INT2 specifies the relative intensity between these spectra. Values of 0, 0.5, 0.5 give unshifted spectra.

**line 6:** free format

EMIN,  
DE,  
EMAX minimum energy, energy increment for spectrum, maximum energy; all energies are in eV and with respect to the Fermi level

EMIN and EMAX are only used as limits if the energy range created by the **lapw2** calculation (using the QTL switch) is greater than the selected range.

**line 7:** Format A4

TYPE    EMIS    X-ray emission spectrum  
         ABS    X-ray absorption spectrum (default)

**line 8:** free format

S broadening parameter for the spectrometer broadening. For absorption spectra S includes both experimental and core broadening. Set S to zero for no broadening.

**line 9:** free format

GAMMA0 broadening parameter for the life-time broadening of the core states. Set GAMMA0 to zero to avoid lifetime broadening of the core states.

**line 10:** free format

W broadening parameter for the life-time broadening of valence states. Set W to zero to avoid lifetime broadening of the valence states.

**line 11:** format A4

## BANDRA

AUTO band ranges are determined AUTOMATICALLY (default)  
MAN band ranges have to be entered MANUALLY

**line 12:** free format

E0 Emission spectra: onset energy for broadening, E0, generated automatically if AUTO was set in line 10  
Absorption spectra: not used

**line 13:** free format

E1 Emission spectra: onset energy for broadening, E1, generated automatically if AUTO was set in line 10  
Absorption spectra: not used

**line 14:** free format

E2 Emission spectra: onset energy for broadening, E2, generated automatically if AUTO was set in line 10  
Absorption spectra: not used

---

# 9 Utility Programs

---

## Contents

---

|      |                                                  |     |
|------|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 9.1  | <code>symmetso</code>                            | 199 |
| 9.2  | <code>pairhess</code>                            | 200 |
| 9.3  | <code>eigenhess</code>                           | 202 |
| 9.4  | <code>patchsymm</code>                           | 202 |
| 9.5  | <code>afminput</code>                            | 203 |
| 9.6  | <code>clmcopy</code>                             | 203 |
| 9.7  | <code>reformat</code>                            | 205 |
| 9.8  | <code>hex2rhom</code> and <code>rhomb_in5</code> | 205 |
| 9.9  | <code>plane</code>                               | 205 |
| 9.10 | <code>add_columns</code>                         | 206 |
| 9.11 | <code>add_columns_new</code>                     | 206 |
| 9.12 | <code>clminter</code>                            | 206 |
| 9.13 | <code>eosfit</code>                              | 206 |
| 9.14 | <code>calLa_Pre</code>                           | 207 |
| 9.15 | <code>eosfit6</code>                             | 207 |
| 9.16 | <code>spacegroup</code>                          | 207 |
| 9.17 | <code>join_vectorfiles</code>                    | 207 |
| 9.18 | <code>arrows</code>                              | 208 |
| 9.19 | <code>xyz2struct</code>                          | 209 |
| 9.20 | <code>cif2struct</code>                          | 209 |
| 9.21 | <code>Tmaker</code>                              | 210 |
| 9.22 | <code>struct2cif</code>                          | 210 |
| 9.23 | <code>struct2poscar</code>                       | 210 |
| 9.24 | <code>conv2prim</code>                           | 210 |
| 9.25 | <code>fleur2wien</code>                          | 210 |
| 9.26 | <b>StructGen of w2web</b>                        | 211 |
| 9.27 | <code>supercell</code>                           | 211 |
| 9.28 | <code>structeditor</code>                        | 211 |
| 9.29 | Visualization                                    | 213 |
| 9.30 | Unsupported software                             | 214 |

---

## 9.1 `symmetso`

This program helps to setup spin-orbit calculations in magnetic systems. Since SO may break symmetry in certain spacegroups, it classifies your symmetry operations into operations **A**, which

do not invert the magnetization (identity, inversion, rotations with the rotation axis parallel to magnetization), **B**, which invert it (mirror planes) and **C**, which change the magnetization in some other way. (Note: magnetization is a result of a circular current, or equivalently, an axial vector resulting from a vector product  $\hat{z} \sim \hat{x} \times \hat{y}$ ). **symmetso** will keep all A- and B-type and throw away all C-type symmetry operations.

Finally, **symmetso** uses the remaining symmetry operations to check/generate equivalent atomic positions (it can happen that some equivalent atoms become non-equivalent after inclusion of SO interaction).

In essence, it reads your **case.struct** and **case.inso** (for the direction of magnetization) files and creates an ordered **case.struct\_orb** file with proper symmetry and equivalent atoms. It also generates a file **case.ksym**, which is a struct file with valid operations to generate a proper k-mesh using `'x kgen -so'`. In addition proper input files **case.in1**, **case.in2**, **case.inc**, **case.vspup/dn**, **case.vnsup/dn**, **case.clmsum**, **case.clmup/dn** are generated, so that you can continue with **runsp -so** without any further changes.

### 9.1.1 Execution

The program **symmetso** is executed by invoking the command:

```
symmetso symmetso.def or x symmetso [-c]
```

Usually it is called from the script **initso.lapw** and thus needs not to be invoked manually.

## 9.2 pairhess

This program was contributed by:



James Rondinelli, Bin Deng and Laurence Marks  
 Dept. Materials Science and Engineering  
 Northwestern University  
 Evanston, USA  
 l-marks@northwestern.edu

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This program creates an approximate hessian matrix (in **.minpair**) for structure minimization using the PORT option. It uses a harmonic model with exponentially decaying bond strength and in many cases reduces the number of geometry steps during **min.lapw** significantly. It is described in detail in Rondinelli et al. 2006.

For its usage see the comments in sect. 5.3.2.

### 9.2.1 Execution

The program **pairhess** is executed by invoking the command:

```
pairhess pairhess.def or x pairhess [-copy]
```

The switch **-copy** copies **.minpair** to **.minrestart** and **.min.hess**, which are needed in **min.lapw**.

## 9.2.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are used in `param.inc`:

NATMAX      max. number of atoms)  
 NEIGMAX     max number of neighbours

## 9.2.3 Input

`pairhess` uses an optional input file `case.inpair`, which is needed only for an experienced user for better tailoring of certain default parameters.

An example is given below:

```
----- top of file: case.inpair -----
10.0 2.0 0.25 (Rmax, Decay, ReScale)
0.05 1.0 0 (Cutoff, Diag, mode)
0.2 (ZWEIGHT)
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

### line 1: free format

|         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RMAX    | Maximum distance (a.u.) for considering neighbors. 8-12 is good.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| DECAY   | Exponential decay applied to neighbors when calculating the pairwise bond strenghts. 1.5-2.5 is reasonable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| RESCALE | A scaling term to multiply the pairwise hessian by. This number is rather important; 0.25 appears to be best for a system with soft modes, 0.35 for a stiffer system. You can save substantial time by adjusting RESCALE so it is approximately correct using a <code>.min.hess</code> from a previous run (adjust until numbers for similar multiplicities are similar), or by adjusting the frequencies (see also <code>eigenhess</code> ). |

### line 2: free format

|        |                                                                                                                |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CUTOFF | When the weighting (via an exponential decay) becomes smaller than this number the pairwise bonds are ignored. |
| DIAG   | The value to multiply a unitary matrix by, this is added to the hessian estimate                               |
| MODE   | 0: Spring model; [1: harmonic model; not so good]                                                              |

### line 3: free format

|         |                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ZWEIGHT | Atomic number weight for bonds of form $\exp(-Z*ZWeight)$ . Values of 0.1-0.2 are reasonable. The default is 0.1; a negative number (e.g. -1) turns this off. |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 9.3 eigenhess

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Laurence Marks  
 Dept. Materials Science and Engineering  
 Northwestern University  
 Evanston, USA  
 l-marks@northwestern.edu

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This program analyses / manipulates `.min_hess`, which was created by a structural minimization using `min.lapw` and the “PORT” option. In particular, such an analysis can yield approximate vibrational frequencies and corresponding eigenmodes, which eventually can give a hint about a dynamically unstable structure (imaginary frequencies). Some more description is given in `$WIENROOT/SRC_pairhess/README`.

The program `eigenhess` is executed by invoking the command:

**x eigenhess**

## 9.4 patchsymm

This program was contributed by:

⇒ James Rondinelli, Bin Deng and Laurence Marks  
 Dept. Materials Science and Engineering  
 Northwestern University  
 Evanston, USA  
 l-marks@northwestern.edu

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This program performs a symmetry check on the positions and produces a new struct file `case.struct.new`. It is useful in case something went wrong during `min.lapw` (rounding errors of positions) or the cif/amc file did not have enough digits (eg. “1/3” was represented by “0.33333” only). The file `case.outputpatch` gives information on how parameters changed.

### 9.4.1 Execution

The program `patchsymm` is executed by invoking the command:

**patchsymm patchsymm.def** or **x patchsymm**

## 9.5 afminput

This program creates the inputfile **case.inclmcopy\_st** for the program **clmcopy**, which copies spin-up densities of atom *i* to spin-down densities of the related antiferromagnetic atom *j* and vice versa in an anti-ferromagnetic system. It uses a symmetry operation to find out how and which atomic densities must be interchanged and how the Fourier coefficients of the density transform. It is based on the ideas of Manuel Perez-Mato (Bilbao, Spain).

See \$WIENROOT/SRC\_afminput/afminput.test for several examples.

The best way is to supply a file **case.struct\_supergroup**, which is the struct file of the non-magnetic supergroup. If the two spacegroups are "TRANSLATIONENGLEICH", it will find out automatically the proper symmetry operation. *Please note, this automatic way works only when the coordinate system remains identical. In some cases sgroup may interchange eg. the y and z axis. In such cases reverse this change, both, for the lattice parameters as well as for all positions, set NSYM=0 and run init\_lapw again (ignoring any suggestion of sgroup).*

If the two spacegroups are "KLASSENGLEICH" (i.e. have the same number of symmetry operations), you will be asked to supply a translation which transforms the AF atoms into each other. A typical example would be bcc Cr: the bcc supergroup and the AF subgroup (simple cubic) have both 48 symmetry operations and the proper translation is (0.5,0.5,0.5).

Finally, if you don't give **case.struct\_supergroup**, you have to supply a symmetry operation (rotation + non-primitive translation) as input. For bcc Cr or the famous NiO-AFII structure this would be simply

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1.0 & 0.0 & 0.0 \\ 0.0 & 1.0 & 0.0 \\ 0.0 & 0.0 & 1.0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0.5 \\ 0.5 \\ 0.5 \end{pmatrix}$$

Please see the comments in sect. 4.5.4 on how to proceed in detail for AFM calculations and find further examples in **SRC.afminput**.

### 9.5.1 Execution

The program **afminput** is executed by invoking the command:

```
afminput afminput.def or x afminput
```

### 9.5.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are used:

|      |                                                               |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| NCOM | number of LM components in the density (in <b>param.inc</b> ) |
| LMAX | max l for LM expansion of the density (in <b>param.inc</b> ). |

## 9.6 clmcopy

This program generates the spin-dn density (**case.clmdn**) from a given spin-up density (**case.clmup**) according to rules and symmetry operations in **case.inclmcopy** (generated earlier by **afminput**) for an AFM calculation.

Please see the comments in sect. 4.5.4 on how to proceed in detail for AFM calculations.

### 9.6.1 Execution

The program `clmcopy` is executed by invoking the command:

```
clmcopy clmcopy.def or x clmcopy
```

### 9.6.2 Dimensioning parameters

The following parameters are used in `param.inc`:

|      |                                        |
|------|----------------------------------------|
| NCOM | number of LM components in the density |
| NRAD | number of radial mesh points           |
| NSYM | number of symmetry operations          |

### 9.6.3 Input

An example is given below:

```
----- top of file: case.inclmcopy -----
 2
 1 2
-1.000000000000 0.000000000000 0.000000000000
 0.000000000000 -1.000000000000 0.000000000000
 0.000000000000 0.000000000000 -1.000000000000
 0
 3 4
-1.000000000000 0.000000000000 0.000000000000
 0.000000000000 -1.000000000000 0.000000000000
 0.000000000000 0.000000000000 -1.000000000000
 9
 1 0 1 0 -1.00
 3 0 3 0 -1.00
 3 2 3 2 -1.00
-3 2 -3 2 -1.00
 5 0 5 0 -1.00
 5 2 5 2 -1.00
-5 2 -5 2 -1.00
 5 4 5 4 -1.00
-5 4 -5 4 -1.00
 1 0 0 0.50000
 0 1 0 0.00000
 0 0 1 0.50000
NUMBER of ATOMS to CHANGE
INTERCHANGE these ATOMS
SYMMETRY OPERATION
NUMBER of LM to CHANGE SIGN
INTERCHANGE these ATOMS
SYMMETRY OPERATION
NUMBER of LM to CHANGE SIGN
```

Interpretive comments on this file are as follows:

**line 1:** free format

|       |                                                                         |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NATOM | Number of atoms for which rules for copying the density will be defined |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**line 2:** free format

|        |                                                         |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| N1, N2 | Interchange spin-up and dn densities of atoms N1 and N2 |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------|

**line 3-5:** free format

|     |                                                                               |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SYM | Symmetry operation for atom N1 to rotate into N2 (without translational part) |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**line 6:** free format

NLM                      Number of LM values, for which you have to change the sign when swapping up and dn-densities

**line 7ff:** free format

L1,M1,L2,M2,Fac        NLM pairs of L1,M1 (spin-up), which change into L2,M2 (spin-dn) and the respecting CLMs are multiplied by Fac

Lines 2-7ff have to be repeated NATOM times.

**line 8-10:** free format

SYM0                    Symmetry operation (one of the operations of the NM-supergroup missing in the AFM-subgroup (transfers spin-up into spin-dn atom)

## 9.7 reformat

To produce a surface plot of the electron density using **rhoplot\_lapw** (which is an interface to **gnuplot**), data from the file **case.rho** created by **lapw5** must be converted using **reformat**

The sources of the program **reformat.c** are supplied in **SRC.reformat**.

## 9.8 hex2rhomb and rhomb\_in5

**hex2rhomb** interactively converts the positions of an atom from hexagonal to rhombohedral coordinates (needed in **case.struct**).

**rhomb\_in5** interactively helps to generate input **case.in5** for density plots with **lapw5** for rhombohedral systems. It defines a plane as needed in the input file when you specify 3 atoms of that plane.

The sources of these programs are supplied in **SRC.trig**.

## 9.9 plane

**plane** helps to generate **case.in5** for density plots with **lapw5** (for orthogonal and hex lattices only). The plane will be specified by 3 atoms and you need an auxiliary file **plane.input**, which contains:

```
a,b,c # lattice parameters
x0,y0,z0 # position of atom (fractional coordinates), which will be centered in the plot
x1,y1,z1 # position of atom, which will be 'below' the centered atom
x2,y2,z2 # position of atom, which will show to the 'left'
x1,y1 # lenght (in bohr) of plot in x and y direction.
'P' # defines lattice, either P (cartesian coordinates) or H (hexagonal) supported
```

The source of this program is supplied in **SRC.trig**.

## 9.10 add\_columns

**add\_columns** reads a sequence of pairs of 2 numbers (form stdin), adds them together and prints the sum to stdout. If you have two columns of numbers in 2 files (eg. in colup and coldn) you can add them using:

```
paste colup coldn | add_columns > col
```

The source of this program is supplied in **SRC.trig**.

## 9.11 add\_columns\_new

**add\_columns\_new** adds or subtracts two columns of data from two files You have to specify the filenames and columns you want to add on the commandline like:

```
add_columns_new file1 col1 file2 col2 [add/sub]
```

The source of this program is supplied in **SRC.trig**.

## 9.12 clminter

**clminter** interpolates the density in **case.clmsum/up/dn** to a new radial mesh as defined in **case.struct\_new**. This utility is useful when you run a structural minimization (**min\_lapw**), some atoms start to overlap and you have to reduce RMT (the size of the atomic spheres) of certain atoms. In such a case:

- ▶ save the calculations
- ▶ generate **case.struct\_new** with modified RMTs
- ▶ **x clminter**
- ▶ in spinpolarized case repeat this line with -up and -dn switches
- ▶ cp case.struct\_new case.struct
- ▶ cp case.clmsum\_new case.clmsum
- ▶ eventually copy also case.clmup/dn files)
- ▶ **run\_lapw**; (it will probably take some iterations until you reach scf again, but it should be much faster than starting with **init\_lapw**)

Note: Please be aware the the total energy will change with modified RMT (by some constant) and you must not compare energies comming from different RMTs (but most likely you can determine the constant shift by repeating (at least) ONE calculation with identical structure but different RMTs).

The source of this program is supplied in **SRC.trig**.

## 9.13 eosfit

Small program to calculate the Equation of States (EOS; Equilibrium volume  $V_0$ , Bulk modulus  $B_0$  and it's derivative  $B'_0$ . The Murnaghan [Murnaghan, 1944], the Birch-Murnaghan, the EOS2, Vinet-Rose[Vinet et al., 1989] and Poirier-Tarantola[Poirier and Tarantola, 1998] equation of states

are supported. It relies on the file **case.vol** (containing lines with "volume, E-tot", usually created from **w2web** using "Volume optimization"), or alternatively is called from **epplot\_lapw** using **case.analysis** (see 5.10.1 and 5.3.1).

The sources are supplied in **SRC.eosfit**.

## 9.14 calLa\_Pre

Small program to calculate lattice parameters at a given pressure using **case.initial.struct** and **case.outputeos** (both are created by a standard wien2k volume optimization) at constants b/a and c/a ratio

Contributed by by Morteza Jamal(m.jamal57@yahoo.com).

## 9.15 eosfit6

Nonlinear least squares fit (using PORT routines) for a parabolic fit of the energy vs. 2-4 dim. lattice parameters. It requires **case.ene** and **case.latparam**, usually generated by **parabolfit\_lapw**. It can optionally produce **case.enefit**, which contains energies on a specified grid for plotting purposes (in 2D same format as **case.rho**, which can be used in contourplot programs). (See 5.3.1).

The sources are supplied in **SRC.eosfit6**.

## 9.16 spacegroup

This program was contributed by:



Vaclav Petricek  
 Institute of Physics  
 Academy of Sciences of the Czech Republic  
 Na Slovance 2  
 182 21 Praha (Prague) 8  
 Czech Republic  
 petricek@fzu.cz

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

Interactive program to generate equivalent positions for a given spacegroup and lattice. The program is also used internally from **w2web** to generate positions when selecting spacegroups in the **StructGen**.

## 9.17 join\_vectorfiles

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Phillip Wissgott  
 Institute of Solid State Physics  
 TU Vienna  
 wissgott@ifp.tuwien.ac.at  
 Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

Interactive program to combine parallel vector and energy files (**case.vector.xx** and **case.energy.xx**) into single files (**case.vector** and **case.energy**).

Executed by:

- ▶ `x join_vectorfiles [-up/-dn/-so/-soup/-sodn] [-c] [-hf] case number_of_parallel_files_to_join`

## 9.18 arrows

This program was contributed by:

⇒ Evgeniya Kabliman  
 Institute for MaterialsChemistry  
 TU Vienna  
 evgeniya@theochem.tuwien.ac.at  
 Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

Small program which together with **Xcrysden** allows to display the “forces acting on all atoms” or the “differences between two structures” using arrows which indicate the movement of the atoms. The recommended sequence to visualize **forces** is:

- ▶ Prepare (copy) a struct and scf file with the initial structure using the names **case.initial.struct** and **case.initial.scf**.
- ▶ View **case.initial.struct** in **Xcrysden** and “File/Save as xsf-structure” with the name **case.initial.xsf**.
- ▶ **x arrows**
- ▶ View the resulting **case.forces.xsf** using: **xcrysden --xsf case.forces.xsf**. Switch on “Display/Forces” and adjust the length of the arrows in “Modify/Force-settings”.

while differences between the initial and relaxed structure can be viewed by:

- ▶ Prepare (copy) two struct files with the initial and the relaxed structure using the names: **case.initial.struct** and **case.final.struct**.
- ▶ View **case.initial.struct** in **Xcrysden** and “File/Save as xsf-structure” with the name **case.initial.xsf**.
- ▶ **x -delta arrows**
- ▶ View the resulting **case.delta.xsf** using: **xcrysden --xsf case.delta.xsf**. Switch on “Display/Forces” and adjust the length of the arrows in “Modify/Force-settings”.

## 9.19 xyz2struct

**xyz2struct** reads “atomlabel,x,y,z”-data from **case.xyz** and writes them into **xyz2struct.struct**. You may have to edit the xyz-file and insert a few lines at the top:

ANG(default)/BOHR; F/C (fractional or cart. coordinates) and L (lattice information, see example)

a,b,c lattice parameters, or when L was specified a scaling constant and the bravais matrix.

Since xyz data contain no symmetry information, all atoms with the same “label” will be treated as equivalent. The nuclear charges ZZ will not be given and you have to insert them manually or use **w2web-StructGen**.

It is executed using:

```
xyz2struct < case.xyz
```

(I recommend this program only for cases with many non-equivalent atoms and (almost) no symmetry. If you have spacegroup-information it is probably easier to use **StructGen** and copy/paste of the positions).

A proper **case.xyz** file looks like:

```
ang
7.47700 7.47700 7.47700
B 4.98466667 1.24616667 0.00000000
C 6.23083333 2.49233333 0.00000000
.....
```

or

```
BOHR F L
17.47700
 0.470724637 0.492808141 0.000000000
 -0.471118220 0.493012774 0.000000000
 0.000000000 0.000000000 0.680559876
B 0.00000000 0.00000000 0.00000000
C 0.14300000 0.14300000 0.25000000
.....
```

## 9.20 cif2struct

**cif2struct** reads structural data in cif-format from **case.cif** and writes them into **case.struct**. It is executed using:

```
cif2struct case.cif or cif2struct case.txt or x cif2struct [-txt]
```

The required cif files can be for example be obtained from Crystallographic databases (e.g. the Inorganic Crystal Structure DataBase ICSD) or from other programs (when transferred from MS-Windows, make sure to have it in “Unix-mode”, not in “Dos-mode”; eventually use **dos2unix**).

Alternatively, **cif2struct** can work with **case.txt**, which contains the following data:

```
a # a..Ang, b..Bohr
 0.0 0.0 0.0 # shift of origin
 4.7554 4.7554 12.991 90. 90. 120. # a,b,c,angles
'R-3c' # spacegroup-symbol (see \STRUCTGEN{})
'Al' # atom-name
 0.0000000 0.0000000 0.3520000 # atomic position
'O' # ...
 0.3063000 0.0000000 0.2500000 # ...
.....
```

## 9.21 Tmaker

**Tmaker** creates a struct-file **init.struct** from a file **datastruct**, which can be created by the script **makestruct\_lapw**. It is executed using:

**Tmaker**

It was contributed by Morteza Jamal(m.jamal57@yahoo.com).

## 9.22 struct2cif

**struct2cif** creates a cif-file **case.cif** from **case.struct**. It is executed using:

**x struct2cif** or **struct2cif struct2cif.def**

It was contributed by F. Boucher (Florent.Boucher@cnrs-imn.fr) and L.D.Marks (L-marks@northwestern.edu). In order to work properly, the **case.struct** file should have a spacegroup label included. There is also a similar program **struct2xyz** available.

## 9.23 struct2poscar

**struct2poscar** creates the files **case.poscar** and **case.xyz** from **case.struct**. **case.poscar** and **case.xyz** are files which are used by the package **dftd3** when periodic boundary conditions are switched on or off, respectively. It is executed using:

**x struct2poscar** or **struct2poscar struct2poscar.def**

## 9.24 conv2prim

**conv2prim** creates the file **case.prim.struct** which corresponds to the primitive cell of the conventional unit cell specified by **case.struct**.

It is executed using:

**x conv2prim** or **conv2prim conv2prim.def**

## 9.25 fleur2wien

**fleur2wien** converts the **FLEUR**-file which contains the exchange-correlation potential (**case.potential**) into the **WIEN2k**-format (**case.r2v(dn)**). The **FLEUR**-file **case.lattice\_harmonics**, which contains the linear combinations of spherical harmonics, is also necessary. If the **FLEUR** and **WIEN2k** Bravais matrices are not the same, then the **FLEUR** direct Bravais matrix has to be specified at the beginning of **case.lattice\_harmonics** below the keyword **bravais** (a, b, c lattice parameters specified at the 1st, 2nd, 3rd lines, respectively).

It is executed using:

**x fleur2wien** or **fleur2wien fleur2wien.def**

## 9.26 StructGen of w2web

The new **StructGen** helps to generate the master input file **case.struct**. It has the following additional features:

- ▶ automatic conversion from/to Å and Bohr
- ▶ Use spacegroup information (in conjunction with the **spacegroup** program (see 9.16 to generate equivalent positions)
- ▶ built in calculator to carry out simple arithmetic operations to specify the position parameters (of the equivalent atoms). Each position of equivalent atoms can be entered as a number, a fraction (e.g. 1/3) or a simple expression (e.g.  $0.21 + 1/3$ ). The first position defines the variables  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ , which can be using in expression defining the other positions (e.g.  $-y$ ,  $x$ ,  $-z + 1/2$ ).

## 9.27 supercell

This program helps to generate supercells from a regular **WIEN2k**-struct file.

It asks interactively for the name of the original struct file and the number of cells in  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  direction. (Only integers are allowed, thus no rotations by  $45^\circ$  like  $\sqrt{2} \times \sqrt{2}$  cells are supported yet).

If symmetry permits, one can change the target lattice to P, B or F centered lattices, which allows to increase the number of atoms in these supercells by a factor of 2, 4, 8, ...

Rhombohedral (R) lattices are converted automatically into H (hexagonal) lattices, which are 3 times larger than the original cell.

If the target lattice is P, one can add some vacuum in each direction for surface slabs (or chains or isolated molecules) and also add a "top"-layer (repeat the atoms with  $z=0$  at  $z=1$ ).

You can define an optional shift in  $x,y,z$  direction for all the atoms in the cell. (This might be useful if you want to arrange the atoms in a certain way, eg. you may want to create a surface slab such that it is centered around  $z=0.5$  (and not  $z=0$ ), so that plotting programs (xcrysden) produce nicer pictures of the structure.

For the experienced user a much more flexible (but also more complicated) tool is available, namely the **structeditor** package (see Sect.9.28).

*Please note: You cannot make calculations with these supercells (except for surfaces) unless you modify the created supercell-struct file. You must break the symmetry by introducing some distortions (e.g. for a frozen phonon) or replace one atom by an impurity/vacancy, ....*

### 9.27.1 Execution

The program **supercell** is executed by invoking the command:

```
supercell or x supercell
```

## 9.28 structeditor

This program was contributed by:



Robert Laskowski

email: [rolask@theochem.tuwien.ac.at](mailto:rolask@theochem.tuwien.ac.at)

Please make comments or report problems with this program to the WIEN-mailinglist. If necessary, we will communicate the problem to the authors.

This package helps to manipulate structures. Usually one would start from an appropriate (simple) **case.struct** file, and this tool allows to add or manipulate atoms (with or without symmetry considerations), or generate arbitrary supercells or surfaces. It is commandline driven and targeted for the more experienced user, who “knows what he wants to do” and is just looking for a convenient tool.

It consists of a couple of octave (matlab) routines and some fortran code, thus it requires **octave** (the free **matlab** version) and for visualization the **xcrysden** program.

A more extended documentation and some examples can be found in **\$WIENROOT/SRC.structeditor/doc**, but the “most important” command **helpstruct** lists all available functions:

```

a2adist * calculates distance between atoms
mina2adist * calculates minimum distance between atoms
addatom * adds an atom to the structure
addeqatom * adds an atom and all equivalent
copyatom * creates a copy of an atom
getaname * converts atomic number into atomic symbol
getar0 * calculates r0 from atomic number
getazz * converts atomic name into atomic number
loadstruct * reads Wien2k structfile
makeconventional * convestrs structure into the conventional form
makeprimitive * converts structure to the primitive form
makesupercell * creates supercell
makesurface * creates surface
mergestruct * merges two structures
movealla * moves all atoms with vector vec
replaceatom * replaces an atom with other atom
replaceeqatoms * replaces an atom and all equivalent with other atoms
rescale_c * rescales c for surface cell (vacume in the midle)
rescale_c_2 * rescales c for surface cell (vacume above)
rescale_c_3 * rescales c for surface cell (vacume audside)
rmatom * removes an atom
rmeqatoms * removes an atom and all equivalent
rotateall * rotates all atoms around z with a given angle
rotateatomlist * rotates specified atoms around z with a given angle
rotatethreedim * rotates specified atom around vector with given angle
savestruct * saves crystal structure
shiftatomlist * shifts specified atoms by a vector
showequivalent * outputs list of equivalent atoms
showstruct * displays structure (using xcrysden)
smultatom * creates symmetry equivalent positions
sshift * symmetric shifts of equivalent atoms

```

You can get then specific help on a particular function using eg.:

**help makesurface.**

Note: Several routines (in particular `makesupercell` or `makesurface`) need a “conventional” cell as input. For all F, B or C-centered lattices you should first convert your structures using “`makeconventional`”.

PS: It is also fairly trivial to construct new functions starting from already existing ones or by combining them in a convenient way.

### 9.28.1 Execution

The `structeditor` is invoked within the octave environment and a typical sequence of commands could be:

```
octave
s=loadstruct("GaN.struct")
make an orthorhombic supercell and visualize it
a=[1 0 0; 1 1 0; 0 0 2]
sout=makesupercell(s,a);
showstruct(sout);
save it as test.struct
savestruct(sout,"test.struct");
get help on all commands
helpstruct
get help on the command makesupercell
help makesupercell
```

## 9.29 Visualization

### 9.29.1 BALSAC

**balsac** (Build and Analyze Lattices, Surfaces and Clusters) was written by Klaus Hermann (Fritz-Haber Institut, Berlin). It provides high quality postscript files. In SRC\_balsac-utils we provide the following interface programs to convert from **WIEN2k** to **balsac**:

- ▶ **str2lat** to convert **case.struct** to **case.lat** (the BALSAC “lat” file).
- ▶ **str2plt** to convert **case.struct** to **case.plt** (the BALSAC “plt” file for one unit cell).
- ▶ **outnn2plt** to convert **case.outputnn** to **case.plt** (the BALSAC “plt” file for one unit cell). You have to select one atom (central atom) and than all nn-atoms are converted into the plt file.
- ▶ In addition converters to the xyz-format (**str2xyz**, **outnn2xyz**) for other plotting programs are also available.

For an example see figure 3.1 For scientific questions concerning BALSAC please contact Klaus Hermann at [hermann@FHI-Berlin.MPG.DE](mailto:hermann@FHI-Berlin.MPG.DE)

Balsac is available from:

Garching Innovation GmbH, Mrs. M. Pasecky Hofgartenstr. 8, D-80539 Munich, Germany  
 Tel.: +49 89 2909190, Fax.: +49 89 29091999  
 e-mail: [gi@ipp.mpg.de](mailto:gi@ipp.mpg.de)  
 web: <http://www.fhi-berlin.mpg.de/~hermann/Balsac/>

### 9.29.2 XCrysDen

XCrysDen [Kokalj, 2003] is a render and analysis package. It has the following features (see also <http://www.xcrysden.org/doc/wien.html>):

- ▶ render and analyze (distances, angles) the crystal structure
- ▶ generate k-mesh for bandstructure plots
- ▶ generate input and render 2D charge densities
- ▶ generate input and render 3D charge densities
- ▶ generate input and render Fermi surfaces
- ▶ render changes between two structures (original and relaxed) with the help of the **arrows** program (see 9.18)

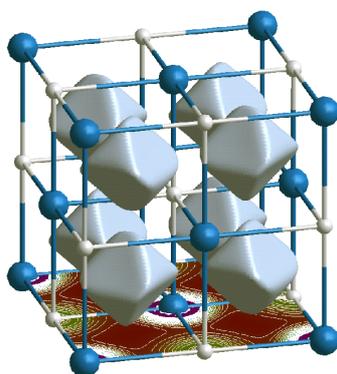


Figure 9.1: 3D electron density in TiC generated with XCrysDen

XCrysDen is available from:

Tone Kokalj  
Jozef Stefan Institute, Dept. of Physical and Organic Chemistry  
Jamova 39, SI-1000 Ljubljana, Slovenia  
Tel.: +386 61 177 3520, Fax: +386 61 177 3811  
Tone.Kokalj@ijs.si  
<http://www.xcrysden.org/>

## 9.30 Unsupported software

On our website [http://www.wien2k.at/reg\\_user](http://www.wien2k.at/reg_user) you can find a link to **Unsupported software goodies**, where references to various software packages are given. Most of those packages are contributions from WIEN2k-users and you may check this site from time to time if you find some useful tools for you.

In case you develop some goodies yourself and want to share this development with the **WIEN2k** community, please send an email to [pblaha@theochem.tuwien.ac.at](mailto:pblaha@theochem.tuwien.ac.at) and we will add it to this page.

---

# 10 How to run WIEN2k for selected samples

---

Three test cases are provided in the **WIEN2k** package. They contain the two starting files **case.struct** and **case.inst** and all the output so that you can compare your results with them.

The test cases are the following (where the names correspond to what was called CASE in the rest of this User's Guide)

**TiC**  
**Fccni**  
**TiO2**

We recommend to run these test cases (in a different directory) and compare the output to the provided one. All test cases are setup such that the CPU-time remains small (seconds). For real production runs the value of RKMAX in **case.in1** must be increased and a better (denser) k-mesh should be used.

In addition we provide a subdirectory **example.struct.files** where various more complicated struct files can be found.

## 10.1 TiC

The TiC example is described in detail in chapter 3 (**Quickstart**).

## 10.2 Fcc Nickel (spin polarized)

Ferromagnetic Nickel is a test case for a spin-polarized calculation. Ni has the atomic configuration  $1s^2, 2s^2, 2p^6, 3s^2, 3p^6, 3d^8, 4s^2$  or  $[\text{Ar}] 3d^8, 4s^2$ . We treat the  $1s, 2s, 2p$  and  $3s$  as core states, and  $3p$  (as local orbital),  $3d, 4s$  and  $4p$  are handled as valence states. In a spin-polarized calculation the file structure and the sequence of programs is different from the non-spin-polarized case (see 4.5.2).

Create a new session and its corresponding directory. Generate the structure with the following data (we can use a large sphere as you will see from the output of **nn**):

|                         |                                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Title                   | fcc Ni                                   |
| Lattice                 | F                                        |
| a                       | 6.7 bohr                                 |
| b                       | 6.7 bohr                                 |
| c                       | 6.7 bohr                                 |
| $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ | 90                                       |
| Atom                    | Ni, enter position (0,0,0) and RMT = 2.3 |

Initialize the calculation using the default RKmax and use 3000 k-points (a ferromagnetic metal needs many k-points to yield reasonably converged magnetic moments). Allow for spin-polarization.

Start the scf cycle (**runsp\_lapw**) with “-cc 0.0001” (in particular for magnetic systems charge convergence is often the best choice). At the bottom of the converged scf-file (**Fccni.scf**) you find the magnetic moments in the interstitial region, inside the sphere and the total moment per cell (only the latter is an “observable”, the others depend on the sphere size).

```
:MMINT: MAGNETIC MOMENT IN INTERSTITIAL = -0.03130
:MMI001: MAGNETIC MOMENT IN SPHERE 1 = 0.66198
:MMTOT: TOTAL MAGNETIC MOMENT IN CELL = 0.63068
```

### 10.3 Rutile ( $TiO_2$ )

This example shows you how to “optimize internal parameters” and do a k-point parallel calculation.

Create a new session and its corresponding directory. Generate the structure with the following data (we use a smaller O sphere because Ti-d states are harder to converge than O-p):

|                         |                                             |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Title                   | TiO2                                        |
| Spacegroup              | $P4_2/mnm$ (136)                            |
| a                       | 8.682 bohr                                  |
| b                       | 8.682 bohr                                  |
| c                       | 5.592 bohr                                  |
| $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ | 90                                          |
| Atom                    | Ti, enter position (0,0,0) and RMT = 2.0    |
| Atom                    | O, enter position (0.3,0.3,0) and RMT = 1.6 |

**StructGens** should automatically add the equivalent positions.

Initialize the calculation using RKmax=6.5 in **tio2.in1.st** and use 100 k-points and a “shift” in **kgen**.

If you have more cpus available (a parallel machine or simply a couple of PCs with a common NFS filesystem, for details see 5.5), you can use “Execution  Run scf”, activate the “parallel” button and “start scf” in **w2web**. This will create and open a **.machines** file and you should insert lines with the proper names of your PCs (possibly use 9 (or 3) processors since we have 9 k-points, ). Save this file and click on “Execution  Run scf”, activate “-fc 1.0” for force-convergence and “start scf” to submit the scf-cycle.

Alternatively at the command-line you can use the UNIX command

```
cp $WIENROOT/SRC_templates/.machines .
```

and edit this file. You would start the scf-cycle (in background) simply by typing

```
run_lapw -p -fc 1.0 &
```

During the scf-cycle monitor **tio2.dayfile** and check convergence (:ENE, :DIS, :FGL002), either using “Utils/Analysis” in **w2web**, or `grep :ENE tio2.scf`. You should see some convergence of :FGL002 and then a big jump in the final cycle, when the valence-force corrections are added. Only the last force (including this correction) is valid.

Since this force is quite large, you can now optimize the position of the O-atom:

Start the structure minimization in **w2web** using “Execution  mini.positions”. This will generate **TiO2.inM**, and you can try option PORT with tolf=1.0 (instead of 2.0), otherwise stay with the default parameters. Repeat “Execution  mini.positions” and start the minimization.

Alternatively you can use

```
min_lapw -p
```

which is identical to:

```
min_lapw -j `run_lapw -I -fc 1 -p`
```

This will create **TiO2.inM** automatically, call the program **min**, which generates a new struct file using the calculated forces, and continues with the next scf cycle. It will continue until the forces are below 1 mRy/bohr (TiO2.inM) and the final results are not “saved” automatically but can be found in the “current” calculation.

You should watch the minimization (:ENE, :FGL002, :POS002) using the file **TiO2.scf\_mini**, which contains the final iteration of each geometry step (see also Sec.5.3.2). If the forces in this file oscillate from plus to minus and seem to diverge, or if they change very little, you can edit **TiO2.inM** (change the method, reduce or increase the stepsize), and remove **TiO2.tmpM** (contains the “history” of the minimization and is used to calculate the velocities of the moving atoms). (This should not be necessary for the rutile example, but may occur in more complex minimizations. See comments in Sec. 5.3.2).

The final structural parameter of the O-atom should be close to  $x=0.304$ , which compares well with the experimental  $x=0.305$ .

## 10.4 Supercell calculations on TiC

This example shows you how to create a supercell of TiC, which could be used to simulate a TiC-surface or vacancies, impurities or core-holes for X-ray absorption / ELNES spectroscopy. I’ll describe the procedure using Unix and WIEN2k commands in an xterm, but of course you can do the same in **w2web**.

Create a new directory, copy the original TiC struct file into it and run **supercell** program:

```
mkdir super
cd super
cp ../TiC/TiC.struct .
x supercell
```

Specify “TiC.struct”, a “2x2x2” supercell, “F” lattice (this will create a cell with 16 atoms, you can also create 32 or 64 atom cells using B or P lattice type. Note: surfaces require a P supercell).

```
cp TiC_super.struct super.struct
```

and edit this file to make some changes. You could eg.

- ▶ delete an atom (to simulate a vacancy)
- ▶ replace an atom by another element (impurity)
- ▶ “label” an atom (put a 1 in the 3rd column next to the element name) to make this atom unique (needed eg. for core-holes)
- ▶ displace an atom (for phase transitions or phonons)

*Note: it is important to make at least one of these changes. Otherwise the initialization will restore the original unit cell (or the calculations will fail later on because symmetry is most likely not correct)*

Run **init\_lapw**. You will see that **nn** complains and finds a new set of equivalent atoms (originally all atoms were non-equivalent, but **nn** finds that some atoms have identical neighbors, thus should be in an equivalent set). Accept the automatically generated struct file and continue. Remember, supercells normally require less k-points than the original small cell.

After the complete initialization you may in principle restore the original struct file (eg. without a displacement) in case you want to “repeat” the undistorted structure in supercell geometry.

For a “core-hole” calculation you would now edit **super.inc** and remove one core electron from the desired atom and state (1s or 2p, ...). In addition you should add the missing electron either in **super.inm** (background charge) or **super.in2** (add it to the valence electrons). In the latter case, you should remove this extra electron AFTER scf and BEFORE calculation of the spectra.

Once this has been done, you could start a scf-cycle (for impurities, vacancies,.. you should most likely also optimize the internal positions).

## 10.5 Further examples

Further examples can be found on our web-site:

[http://www.wien2k.at/events/ws2008/talks/Exercises\\_08.pdf](http://www.wien2k.at/events/ws2008/talks/Exercises_08.pdf) or

[http://www.wien2k.at/reg\\_user/textbooks/WIEN2k\\_lecture-notes\\_2013/](http://www.wien2k.at/reg_user/textbooks/WIEN2k_lecture-notes_2013/)

## **Part III**

# **Installation of the WIEN2k package and Dimensioning of programs**



---

# 11 Installation and Dimensioning

---

## Contents

---

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| 11.1 Requirements . . . . .           | 221 |
| 11.2 Installation of WIEN2k . . . . . | 223 |
| 11.3 w2web . . . . .                  | 227 |
| 11.4 Environment Variables . . . . .  | 229 |

---

## 11.1 Requirements

**WIEN2k** is written in FORTRAN 90 and requires a UNIX operating system since the programs are linked together via C-shell scripts. It has been implemented successfully on the following computer systems: Intel and AMD based PCs running under Linux, IBM RS6000, HP, SGI, and Mac. Hardware requirements will change from case to case (small cases with 10 atoms per unit cell can be run on almost any PC under Linux), but we recommend a more powerful quad-core Intel-core2 PC with at least 4 GB (better 8-16GB GB) memory and plenty of disk space (a TB).

For coarse grain parallization on the k-point level, a cluster of PCs with a Gb Ethernet is sufficient. Faster communication (Infiniband) is recommended for the fine grain (single k-point) parallel version.

For Intel (AMD) based systems we recommend the **Intel ifort compiler** and the **Intel mkl library** (which includes blas, lapack and Scalapack) (see <http://www.intel.com>). If you have installed **ifort** yourself on your local PC, don't forget to configure your environment properly. Add some thing like:

```
source /opt/intel/11.0/074/bin/ifortvars.csh intel64
source /opt/intel/11.0/074/mkl/tools/environment/mklvarsem64t.csh
```

to your **.cshrc** file (or similar statements for **.bashrc**).

In order to use all options and features (such as the new graphical user interface **w2web** or some of its plotting tools) the following public domain program packages in addition to a F90 compiler must be installed:

- ▶ perl 5 or higher (for **w2web** only)
- ▶ emacs or another editor of your choice
- ▶ ghostscript (with jpg support)
- ▶ gnuplot (with png support)
- ▶ www-browser
- ▶ pdf-reader, acroread

- ▶ Tcl/Tk-Toolkit (for Xcrsden only)
- ▶ MPI+SCALAPACK (for fine grain parallelization only)
- ▶ ELPA (for fine grain parallelization only, optional)
- ▶ FFTW v.2 or 3 (mpi-version for fine grain parallelization only)

Usually these packages should be available on modern systems. If one of these packages is not available it can either be installed from public domain sources (ask your computing center, use the WWW to search for the nearest location of these packages) or the corresponding configuration may be changed (e.g. using vi instead of emacs). Brief installation instructions for mpich and fftw are given below.

### 11.1.1 Installation tips for mpich, fftw (either version 2.1.5 or 3.3), and ELPA

This is only a brief guidance (assuming you use Intel's mkl), you may need some Linux experience for this.

- ▶ Download the mpich1.2.7p1, fftw-2.1.5 / fftw-3.3, and ELPA sources from <http://www.mpich.org/>, <http://www.fftw.org/download.html>, and <http://elpa.mpcdf.mpg.de> (Please note, the fftw-3.x versions are incompatible with fftw-2.x, but both interfaces are available in WIEN2k using the -DFFTW2 or -DFFTW3 compiler option (in FOPT/FPOPT during **siteconfig.lapw**)
- ▶ unzip and untar the downloaded file
- ▶ Change into the expanded directories and configure the compilation.
  - Define your fortran compiler in the variables FC (elpa) or F77 (fftw) (setenv FC ifort, or export FC=ifort) – and your c compiler analogously in case of ELPA installation.
  - Provide additional flags in case of ELPA:  
SCALAPACK.LDFLAGS must be set to “-L\$MKLROOT/lib/intel64 -lmkl\_core -lmkl\_scalapack\_lp64 -lmkl\_intel\_lp64 -lmkl\_sequential -lmkl\_blacs\_intelmpi\_lp64 -lpthread -Wl,-rpath,\$MKLROOT/lib/intel64”. (Please note that if you do not use Intel-mpi you have to specify a different BLACS library, that matches your mpi version. “-lmkl\_blacs\_intelmpi\_lp64” has to be replaced by “-L/your.blacs.path -lyour.blacs.library”)  
FCFLAGS must be set to “-mkl”.
  - Use “./configure --prefix=/pathname” to configure compilation. /pathname is the directory where the libraries should be installed (could be /opt/local or /usr/local or similar, you will have to specify this path again in the LDFLAGS).
  - For fftw configuration add the “--enable-mpi” switch.
  - Please refer to the ELPA documentation for additional information regarding openMP support!
- ▶ make
- ▶ make install (if you specified a “system-directory” like /usr/local you must have proper permissions for this step, eg. become root user)
- ▶ if not already done, add the binaries of your mpi-directory to your path (eg. for mpich: set path = ( /opt/mpich/mpich-1.2.7p1/bin \$path ))

Optionally, one can also use in the sequential (non-mpi) version of **lapw0** and **lapw2** the fftw routines. However, there is some speedup only when you use the **MKL-fftw** routines, not the self-compiled fftw-binaries. The mkl-interface to fftw is not active by default, but you may have to compile it yourself. To do so (syntax for ifort12):

- ▶ cd \$MKLROOT/interfaces/fftw2xf
- ▶ make libintel64 (or make libia32)

- ▶ in case you do not have icc installed, but use GNU-C (gcc) you must:
  - edit makefile, and remove -D\_GNU from the line “ CC=gcc -D\_GNU” (to remove additional \_ from the object names)
  - make libintel64 compiler=gnu
- ▶ add -DFFT2 to FOPT in the **Makefile** of **lapw0** and **lapw2**
- ▶ add -lfftw2xf or -lfftw2xf.gnu to R\_LIBS in the **Makefile** of **lapw0** and **lapw2**
- ▶ a similar procedure is available for fftw3 (just exchange above 2 by 3 in all statements)

This may speedup the fft-parts of these programs a bit.

### 11.1.2 Installation of LIBXC

In order to use the library of exchange and correlation functionals **LIBXC** [Marques et al., 2012], you need to install it and recompile **lapw0**. The steps are the following:

- ▶ Download **LIBXC** version 3.0.0 (or a more recent version if available, but not an older one) from <http://octopus-code.org/wiki/Libxc:download>
- ▶ Compile **LIBXC** with the same compiler that was used to compile **WIEN2k**. The basic steps are the following (example with ifort):
  - cd libxc-3.0.0/
  - ./configure FC=ifort --prefix=\$LIBXCDIR
  - make
  - make check
  - make install

where LIBXCDIR is the directory where you choose to put the library and modules of **LIBXC**.

Then, **lapw0** needs to be recompiled with additional options and flags in the Makefile (it can be set automatically in siteconfig):

- ▶ specify LIBXCDIR
- ▶ -I\$(LIBXCDIR)/include/ -DLIBXC added to FOPT and FPOPT
- ▶ -L\$(LIBXCDIR)/lib/ -lxcf03 -lxc added to LDFLAGS

Note that at the end of the compilation, the file **\$WIENROOT/SRC\_lapw0/xc\_funcs.h** should be present.

## 11.2 Installation of WIEN2k

### 11.2.1 Expanding the WIEN2k distribution

The **WIEN2k** package comes as a single tar file (or you can download about 50 individual tar files separately), which should be placed in a subdirectory which will be your **\$WIENROOT** directory (e.g. **./WIEN2k**). In addition you can download three examples, namely **TiC.tar.gz**, **TiO2.tar.gz** and **Fccni.tar.gz**.

Uncompress and expand all files using:

```
tar -xvf wien2k_12.tar (skip this if you downloaded files separately)
gunzip *.gz
chmod +x ./expand_lapw
./expand_lapw
```

You should have gotten the following directories:

```
./SRC
SRC_2Doptimize
SRC_afminput
SRC_aim
SRC_arrows
SRC_balsac-utils
SRC_broadening
SRC_cif2struct
SRC_clmaddsub
SRC_clmcopy
SRC_dipan
SRC_dstart
SRC_elast
SRC_eosfit
SRC_eosfit6
SRC_filtvec
SRC_fsgen
SRC_hf
SRC_initxspec
SRC_irrep
SRC_joint
SRC_kgen
SRC_kram
SRC_lapw0
SRC_lapw1
SRC_lapw2
SRC_lapw3
SRC_lapw5
SRC_lapw7
SRC_lapwdm
SRC_lapwso
SRC_lcore
SRC_lib
SRC_lorentz
SRC_lstart
SRC_mini
SRC_mixer
SRC_nn
SRC_optic
SRC_optimize
SRC_orb
SRC_pairhess
SRC_phonon
SRC_qt1
SRC_reformat
SRC_sgroup
SRC_spacegroup
SRC_spaghetti
SRC_structeditor
SRC_sumhfpara
SRC_sumpara
SRC_supercell
SRC_symmetry
SRC_symmetso
SRC_telnes3
SRC_templates
SRC_tetra
SRC_trig
SRC_txspec
SRC_usersguide_html
SRC_vecpratt
SRC_w2web
example_struct_files
TiC
TiO2
fccni
```

Thus, each program has its source code (split into several files) in its own subdirectory. All programs are written in FORTRAN90 (except SRC.sgroup and SRC.reformat, which are in C).

**/SRC** contains the users guide (in form of a postscript file **usersguide.ps** and as pdf-file **usersguide.pdf**), all c-shell scripts and some auxiliary files.

**/SRC.usersguide.html** contains the html version of the UG.

**/Fccni**, **/TiC** and **/TiO2** contain three example inputs and the respective outputs.

**/example\_struct\_files** contains a collection of various struct files, which could be of use especially for the less experienced user.

**/SRC\_templates** contains various input templates.

In addition to the expansion of the tar-files **./expand\_lapw** copies also all csh-shell scripts from **/SRC** to the current directory and creates links for some abbreviated commands.

### 11.2.2 Site configuration for WIEN2k

At the end of **expand\_lapw** you will be prompted to start the script

**./siteconfig\_lapw**

When you start this script for the first time (file **INSTALLDATE** not present), you will be guided through the setup process.

Later on you can use **siteconfig\_lapw** to redimension parameters, update individual packages and recompile the respective programs.

During the first run, you will be asked to specify:

- ▶ your system; at this point system specific files (e.g. **cputim.f** will be installed. If your system is not listed, use the system **generic**, which should compile on any machine.
- ▶ your FORTRAN90 and C compilers;
- ▶ your compiler and linker options as well as the place for LAPACK and BLAS libraries. Depending on the system you selected, we have included some recommended compiler and linker options, which are known to work on our systems (use **generic** when you have problems here; see also sec. 11.2.4). On some systems it is required to specify LAPACK and BLAS libraries twice (i.e. **R.LIBS:-llapack.lapw -lblas.lapw -llapack.lapw -lblas.lapw**). This generates Makefiles from the corresponding Makefile.orig in all subdirectories.
- ▶ configuration of parallel execution will ask whether your system is shared memory, so that default parameters can be set accordingly ( **\$WIENROOT/parallel\_options** is the file where this information is stored).
- ▶ to configure parallel execution for distributed systems, specify the command to open a remote shell, which on most systems is **rsh** or **ssh**.
- ▶ You will then be asked whether you want to run fine-grained parallel. This is only possible if FFTW, MPI, SCALAPACK (included in newer mkl-versions), and, optionally, ELPA are installed on your system and requires a fast network (100Mb/s is not enough) or a shared memory machine. It pays off only for bigger cases (matrixsize > 5000).
- ▶ You should define **NMATMAX**, i.e. the maximum matrixsize (number of basisfunctions). This value should be adjusted according to the memory of your hardware. Rough estimates are:  
**NMATMAX= 5000 ==> 256MB** (real, i.e. with inversion symmetry)  
**NMATMAX=10000 ==> 1GB** (real) (==> cells with about 80-150 atoms/unitcell)  
 If you choose it too large, **lapw1** will start to "page" leading to unacceptable performance or a crash. **NMATMAX** will be automatically reduced (by  $\sqrt{2}$ ) for complex (without inversion) cases and increased by  $\sqrt{NPE}$  for mpi-parallel cases.
- ▶ Now you are prompted to compile all programs (this will be done using **make**) and the executables are copied to the **\$WIENROOT** directory. Compilation might take quite some time.
- ▶ During compilation watch for error messages on the screen. If there are errors, you may need to change into the corresponding **SRC.\*** directory and examine file **compile.msg** for details. Common errors are wrong specification of compiler, linking or library options. In such cases, adopt the Makefile in this directory and recompile using **make**. Once you have proper options, correct them globally in **siteconfig\_lapw** and recompile.

Later on you can use **siteconfig\_lapw** to change parameters, options or to update a package.

### 11.2.3 User configuration

Each **WIEN2k** user should run the script **userconfig\_lapw**. This will setup a proper environment. The script **userconfig\_lapw** will do the following for you:

- ▶ set a path to **WIEN2k** programs
- ▶ set the stacksize to “unlimited”
- ▶ add aliases
- ▶ add environment variables (**\$WIENROOT**, **\$SCRATCH**)

to your `~/.cshrc` or `~/.bashrc` file. Eventually you should also edit these files and set the **\$LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH** variable (path where compiler-libs or blas-libraries are located).

*Note: This will work only when the `csh`, `tcsh` or `bash-shell` is your login shell. Depending on your settings you may have to add similar lines also in your `.login` file. If you are using a different login-shell, edit your startup files manually.*

### 11.2.4 Performance and special considerations

The script **siteconfig\_lapw** is provided for general configuration and compilation of the **WIEN2k** package. When you call this script for the first time and follow the suggested answers, **WIEN2k** should run on your system (see 11.2.2).

The codes in the individual subdirectories **/SRC\_program** are compiled using `make`. The file **Makefile** is generated during installation using **Makefile.orig** as template.

In some directories the source files **\*.frc**, **\*.F** and **param.inc.r/c** contain both, the real and complex (for systems without inversion symmetry) version of the code. You create the corresponding versions with `make` and `make complex`, respectively. (The **\*.frc** and **\*.F** files will then be preprocessed automatically).

The fine-grained parallel versions **lapw0\_mpi**; **lapw1\_mpi**, **lapw1c\_mpi**, **lapw2\_mpi**, **lapw2c\_mpi** are created using `make para` (lapw0) and `make rp`; `make cp`.

For timing purposes a subroutine **CPUTIM** is used in several programs and specific routines for IBM-AIX, HP-UX, DEC-OSF1, SGI and SUN are available. On other systems **cputim\_generic.c** should work.

Most of the CPU time will be spent in **lapw1** and (to a smaller extent) in **lapw2** and **lapw0**. Therefore we recommend to optimize the performance for these 3 programs:

- ▶ Find out which compiler options (`man ``name_of_compiler```) make these programs run faster. You could specify a higher optimization (`-O3`), or specify a particular processor architecture (`-qarch=pwr5` or `-R10000`, ...).
- ▶ Good performance depends on highly optimized BLAS (and much less on LAPACK) libraries. Whenever possible, replace the supplied libraries (**SRC.lib/blas\_lapw** **SRC.lib/lapack\_lapw**), by routines from your vendor (mkl for Intel or AMD processors, aclm for AMD, essl for IBM, sunperf for SUN, complib.sgimath on SGI, ...). Because of the superior performance of the Intel-mkl library we recommend ifort/mkl instead of gfortan (or some other commercial f90 compiler). If such libraries are not available use the **OpenBLAS**-library (<http://www.openblas.net/>). (Eventually you may try to optimize them yourself using the “ATLAS” system (see <http://math-atlas.sourceforge.net>), but this is no longer recommended. We provide an “old” ATLAS-BLAS for a Pentium3 with **WIEN2k**.)

### 11.2.5 Global dimensioning parameters

**WIEN2k** is written in Fortran 90 and all important arrays are allocated dynamically. The only important parameters left are **NMATMAX** and **NUME**, specifying the maximum matrixsize (should be adjusted to the memory of your hardware, see above) and the maximum number of eigenvalues (must be increased for unitcells with large number of electrons)

Some less important parameters are still present and described in chapter “dimensioning parameters” of the respective section in chapter 6.

We recommend to use **siteconfig.lapw** for redimensioning and recompilation. In order to work properly, the parameter **XXXX** in the respective **param.inc** files must obey the following syntax:

```
PARAMETER (XXXX=)
```

*Note: between “(”, XXXX and “=” there must be no space.*

## 11.3 Installation and Configuration of w2web

### 11.3.1 General issues

**w2web** requires **perl**, which should be available on most systems. (If not contact your system administrator or install it yourself from the WWW)

When you start **w2web** for the first time on the computer where you want to execute **WIEN2k** (you may have to telnet, ssh,.. to this machine) with the command **w2web [-p xxxxx]**, you will be asked for a username/password (I recommend you use the same as for your UNIX login).

You must also specify a “port” number (which can be changed the next time you start **w2web**). If the default port (7890) used to serve the interface is already in use by some other process, you will get the error message **w2web failed to bind port 7890 - port already in use!**. Then you will have to choose a different port number (between 1024 and 65536) . Please remember this port number, you need it when connecting to the **w2web** server.

*Note: Only user **root** can specify port numbers below 1024!*

Once **w2web** has been started, use your favorite WWW-browser to connect to **w2web**, specifying the correct portnumber, e.g. **firefox http://hostname.where.w2web.runs:7890**

On certain sites a firewall may block all high ports and one cannot connect to this machine. In these cases you can create a *ssh-tunnel* using the following commands:

At your “local\_host” (the PC in front of you) connect to the “w2web\_host” (where you started **w2web**) using

```
ssh -fNL 2000:w2web_host:7890 user@w2web_host
```

On your local host use a web browser and connect with: **firefox http:127.0.0.1:2000**.

Using “*Configuration*” you can further tailor the behaviour according to your wishes. In particular you can define new “execution types” to adjust to your queuing system.

For example the line

```
batch=batch < %f
```

defines an execution type “batch” using the UNIX batch command. (**w2web** collects its commands in a temporary script and you can access it using %f).

If you run on a machine with a queuing system (like loadleveler, sun-grid-engine, or pbs) you may define an “execution type”

```
qsub=cat %f > w2web-job;qsub-wienjob_lapw
```

The following scripts may serve as templates: **qsub-wienjob\_lapw** in **\$WIENROOT** needs a master-job-template **qsub-job0\_lapw** and examples for loadleveler and SGE are provided in **\$WIENROOT** (you may need to adapt them ! Other examples you can find on our FAQ-page on the web). Of course, with some small modifications you can define several “execution types” with eg. different number of processors or mpi vs. k-point parallel runs,....

**w2web** saves several variables in startup files which are in the (`~/w2web`) directory.

### 11.3.2 How does w2web work?

**w2web** acts like a normal web-server - except that it runs on a “user level port” instead of the default http-port 80. It serves html-files and executes perl-scripts or executes system or user commands on the server host.

### 11.3.3 w2web-files in you home directory

**w2web** creates on the first start of w2web on host “hostname” the directory **.w2web/hostname** in your home directory with the following content:

- ▶ `.w2web/hostname/conf`
- ▶ `.w2web/hostname/logs`
- ▶ `.w2web/hostname/sessions`

### 11.3.4 The configuration file conf/w2web.conf

In this file various configuration parameters are stored by **w2web**. To restrict the access to certain IP addresses you can add lines like:

```
deny=*. *.*.*.*
allow=128.130.134.* 128.130.142.10
```

### 11.3.5 The password file conf/w2web.users

This file is created during the first run of **w2web**.

If you remove this file, the next start of **w2web** will activate the installation procedure again.

### 11.3.6 Using the https-protocol with w2web

In order to use the https-protocol the perl-library `Net::SSL` in addition to the OpenSSL package must be installed on your system. Both are freely available.

Then you must include a line with **ssl=1** in `w2web.conf`.

If you run **w2web-server** in **ssl-mode** you need a site certificate for your server. You may use the supplied certificate in **\$WIENROOT/SRC.w2web/bin/w2web.pem** (copy this file to your conf-directory and set the `keyfile=~/.w2web/<hostname>/conf/w2web.pem` line in your `w2web.conf`).

This certificate will not expire until 2015, but usually browsers will complain that they do not know the Certificate Authority who issued this certificate - if you don't like this message, you must buy a certificate from VeriSign, Thawte or a similar CA.

Of course you must connect to *https:* instead of *http:*, i.e. use:

**netscape https://hostname\_where\_w2web\_runs:7890.**

## 11.4 Environment Variables

**WIEN2k** uses the following environment variables set in your `.cshrc/.bashrc` file (by `userconfig_lapw`):

**WIENROOT** base directory where **WIEN2k** is installed  
**PDFREADER** specifies program to read pdf files (acroread, xpdf,...)  
**SCRATCH** directory where `case.vector` and `case.help??` are stored. On slow NFS-file systems, a "local" scratch-directory could greatly enhance the performance.  
**EDITOR** path and name of your preferred editor  
**STRUCTEDIT\_PATH** path where the `structeditor` tool is located  
**OCTAVE\_PATH** path where the `structeditor` tool is located  
**OCTAVE\_EXEC\_PATH** path where octave looks for executables (`structeditor`)  
**XCRYSDEN\_TOPDIR** if this variable is set **WIEN2k** will activate all interface extensions to XCrystal.  
**BERRYPI\_PATH** path for the **BERRYPI** executables  
**BERRYPI\_PYTHON** path for **PYTHON** (at least 2.7)

The following variables are stored in `$WIENROOT/parallel.options` (created by `siteconfig_lapw`)

**USE\_REMOTE** [0|1] determines whether parallel jobs are run in background (on shared memory machines) or using ssh. It is usually set in `$WIENROOT/parallel.options`  
**MPI\_REMOTE** [0|1] determines whether the `mpirun` command is issued on the "master-node", or first an ssh to a remote node is done and there the `mpirun` command is issued. Usually, on many mpi-2 systems the first method is preferred, on mpi-1 the second.  
**WIEN.GRANULARITY** Default granularity for parallel execution. It is overridden by setting the granularity in the `.machines`  
**WIEN.EXTRAFINE** if set, the residual k-points are spread one by one over the processors.  
**TASKSET** [no|command] specifies an optional command for binding a process to a specific core (like: `taskset -c`)  
**WIEN.MPIRUN** is used to define the command to launch mpi-parallel calculations. This variable is set in `$WIENROOT/parallel.options` and usually is set to:  
`"mpirun - np_NP_ - machinefile_HOSTS_EXEC_".`  
 In SLURM batch systems you may want to use:  
`"srun - K - N_nodes_n_NP_ - r_offset_PINNING_EXEC_"` and define in addition:  
**CORES\_PER\_NODE** (eg. 16 if you have 16 core nodes).  
**PINNING\_COMMAND** (eg. `'-cpu.bind=map-cpu:'`).  
**PINNING\_LIST** (eg. `"0,8,1,9,2,10,3,11,4,12,5,13,6,14,7,15"` on a 16 core machine). NOTE that for `srun` only commensurate grids are supported at the moment (i.e., the number of processes of your grid is a multiple or - in case of small grids - a divisor of your `CORES_PER_NODE`).

In addition on some systems useful variables are:

**LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH** path to libraries of compiler and math-libs

**OMP\_NUM\_THREADS** [1—2—4] on multi-core machines for parallelization in certain libraries  
(mkl)

---

## 12 Trouble shooting

---

In this chapter hints are given for solving some difficulties that have occurred frequently. This chapter is by no means complete and the authors would appreciate further suggestions which might be useful for other users. Beside the printed version of the users guide, an online pdf version is available using **help\_lapw**. You can search for a specific keyword (use `^f` keyword) and hopefully find some information.

There is a mailing list for **WIEN2k** related questions. To subscribe to this list goto:  
[http://www.wien2k.at/reg\\_user/mailling\\_list/](http://www.wien2k.at/reg_user/mailling_list/)  
and subscribe. You will then automatically be added to the mailing list  
[wien@theochem.tuwien.ac.at](mailto:wien@theochem.tuwien.ac.at)  
and can post questions. Please make use of this list!

If an error occurs in one of the SCF programs, a file `program.error` is created and an error message is printed into these files. The **run\_lapw** script checks for these files and will automatically stop if a non-empty error file occurs.

Check the files **case.dayfile** (which is written by **init\_lapw** and **run\_lapw**), **:log** (where a history of all commands using **x** is given) and **\*.error** for possible explanations.

In several places the dimensions are checked. The programs print a descriptive error message and stop.

**case.outputnn**: This file gives error messages if the atomic spheres overlap. But it should also be used to check the distances between the atoms and the coordination number (same distance). If inconsistencies exist, your **case.struct** file may contain an error. A check for overlapping spheres is also included in **mixer** and **lapw1**.

**case.outputd**: Possible stops or warnings are:

**"NO SYMMETRY OPERATION FOUND IN ROTDEF"**: This indicates that in your **case.struct** file either the positions of equivalent atoms are not specified correctly (only positive coordinates allowed!!) or the symmetry operations are wrong.

**case.output1**: Possible stops or warnings are:

**"NO ENERGY LIMITS FOUND IN SELECT"**: This indicates that  $E_{top}$  or  $E_{bottom}$  could not be found for some  $u_l(r, E_l)$ . Check your input if it happens in the zeroth iteration. Later, (usually in the second to sixth iteration) it may indicate that in your SCF cycle something went wrong and you are using a crazy potential. Usually it means that mixing of the charge densities was diverging and large charge fluctuations occurred. Check previous charges for being physically reasonable (grep for labels `:NTOxx :CTOxx :DIS :NEC01`). Usually this happens when your input is not ok, or for very ill conditioned problems

(very rare), or more likely, when “Ghostbands” appeared (or some states were missing) because of bad energy parameters in `case.in1`. You will probably have to delete `case.broy*` and `case.scf`, rerun `x dstart` and then change some calculational parameters. These could be: fixing some energy parameter (modify both, `case.in1` and `case.in1_orig` or try the `-in1orig` switch if you have used `-in1new`); switch to a broadening method (TEMP with eg. 0.010 mRy); or increase the k-mesh (magnetic metals); or reduce the mixing parameter in `case.inm` slightly (eg. to 0.1). In very difficult (magnetic) cases a PRATT mixing with eg. 0.01 mixing might be helpful at the beginning of the scf cycle (but later switch to MSEC1 again) !

“STOP RDC 22”: This indicates that the overlap matrix is not positive definite. This usually happens if your `case.struct` file has some error in the structure or if you have an (almost) linear dependent basis, which can happen for large RKMAX values and/or if you are using very different (extremely small and large) sphere radii  $R_{MT}$ .

“X EIGENVALUES BELOW THE ENERGY `emin`”: This indicates that X eigenvalues were found below `emin`. `emin` is set in `case.in1` (see sec. 7.5.3) or in `case.klist` generated by KGEN, see 6.3, 6.5). It may indicate that your value of `emin` is too high or the possibility of ghostbands, but it can also be intentional to truncate some of the low lying eigenvalues.

If you don't find enough eigenvalues (e.g.: in a cell with 4 oxygens you expect 4 oxygen s bands at roughly -1 Ry) check the energy window (given at the end of `case.in1`) and make sure your energy parameters are found by subroutine SELECT or set them by hand at a reasonable value.

**case.output2:** Possible stops or warnings are:

“CANNOT BE FOUND”: This warning, which could produce a very long output file, indicates that some reciprocal K-vector would be requested (through the k-vector list of `lapw1`), but was not present in the list of the K generated in `lapw2`. You may have to increase the `NWAV`, and/or `KMAXx` parameters in `lapw2` or increase `GMAX` in `case.in2`. The problems could also arise from wrong symmetry operations or a wrong structure in `case.struct`.

“QTL-B VALUE”: If larger than a few percent, this indicates the appearance of ghost bands, which are discussed below in section 12.1.

The few percent message (e.g up to 10 %) does not indicate a ghost band, but can happen e.g. in narrow d-bands, where the linearization reaches its limits. In these cases one can add a local orbital to improve the flexibility of the basis set. (Put one energy near the top and the other near the bottom of the valence band, see section 7.5.3).

**FERMI LEVEL not converged** (or similar messages). This can have several reasons: i) Try a different Fermi-Method (change TETRA to GAUSS or TEMP in `case.in2`). ii) Count the number of eigenvalues in `case.output1` and compare it with the number of valence electrons. If there are too few eigenvalues, either increase `EMAX` in `case.klist` (from 1.5 to e.g. 2.5) or check if your scf cycle had large charge oscillations (see SELECT error above)

If the SCF cycle stops somewhere (especially in the first few iterations), it is quite possible, that the source of the error is actually in a previous part of the cycle or even in a previous (e.g. the zeroth) iteration. Check in the `case.scf` file previous charges, eigenvalues, ... whether they are **physically reasonable** (see SELECT error above).

## 12.1 Ghost bands

Approximate linear dependence of the basis set or the linearization of the energy dependence of the radial wave functions (see section 2.2) can lead to spurious eigenvalues, termed “ghost bands”.

The first case may occur in a system which has atoms with very different atomic sphere radii. Suppose you calculate a hydroxide with very short O-H bonds so that you select small  $R_{MT}$  radii for O and H such as e.g. 1.0 and 0.6 a.u., respectively. The cation may be large and thus you could choose a large  $R_{MT}$  of e.g. 2.4 a.u. However, this gives a four time larger effective RKmax for the cation than for H, (e.g. 16.0 when you select RKmax=4.0 in **case.in1**). This enormous difference in the convergence may lead to unphysical eigenvalues. In such cases choose lmax=12 in **case.in1** (in order to get a very good re-expansion of the plane waves) and reduce  $R_{MT}$  for the cation to e.g. 1.8 a.u.

The second case can occur when you don't use a proper set of local orbitals. In this situation the energy region of interest (valence bands) falls about midway between two states with different principle quantum numbers, but with the same l-value (for one atom).

Take for example Ti with its 3*p* states being occupied as (semi-core) states, while the 4*p* states remain mostly unoccupied. In the valence band region neither of those two states (Ti 3*p*, 4*p*) should appear. If one uses 0.2 Ry for the expansion energy E(1) for the *p* states of Ti, then Ti-*p* states do appear as ghost bands. Such a run is shown below for *TiO*<sub>2</sub> (rutile).

The lowest six eigenvalues at GAMMA fall between about -1.30 and -1.28 Ry. They are ghost bands derived from fictitious Ti-*p* states. The next four eigenvalues between -0.94 and -0.78 Ry correspond to states derived from O 2*s* states, which are ok, since there are four O's per unit cell, four states are found.

The occurrence of such unphysical (indeed, unchemical!) ghostbands is the first warning that something went wrong. A more definite warning comes upon running LAPW2, where the corresponding charge densities are calculated. If the contribution to the charge density from the energy derivative of the basis function [the  $B_{lm}$  coefficient in equ. 2.4,2.7] is significant (i.e. much more than 5 per cent) then a warning is issued in LAPW2.

In the present example it reads:

```
QTL-B VALUE .EQ. 40.35396 !!!!!
```

This message is found in both the **case.scf** file and in **case.output2**.

When such a message appears, one can also look at the partial charges (QTL), which are printed under these conditions to OUTPUT2, and always appear in the files **case.helpXXX**, etc., where the last digit refers to the atomic index.

In the file below, note the E(1) energy parameter as well as the 6 ghost band energies around -1.29.

```
----- top of file:tio2.scf -----
 ATOMIC SPHERE DEPENDENT PARAMETERS FOR ATOM Titanium
 OVERALL ENERGY PARAMETER IS .2000
 E (0)= .2000
----> E (1)= .2000
 E (2)= .2000 E(BOTTOM)= -.140 E(TOP)= -200.000

 ATOMIC SPHERE DEPENDENT PARAMETERS FOR ATOM Oxygen
 OVERALL ENERGY PARAMETER IS .2000
 E (0)= -.7100 E(BOTTOM)= -2.090 E(TOP)= .670

 K= .00000 .00000 .00000 1
:RKM : MATRIX SIZE= 599 RKM= 6.99 WEIGHT= 8.00 PGR:
 EIGENVALUES ARE:
 -1.2970782 -1.2970782 -1.2948747 -1.2897193 -1.2897193
 -1.2882306 -1.2882306 -1.2882306 -1.2882306 -1.2882306
 -0.0484830 -0.0484830 -0.0484830 -0.0484830 -0.0484830
 .1914068 .1914068 .1914068 .1914068 .1914068
 .3477629 .3477629 .3477629 .3477629 .3477629
 .3809219 .3809219 .3809219 .3809219 .3809219
 .5617155 .5617155 .5617155 .5617155 .5617155
 .8736991 .8736991 .8736991 .8736991 .8736991
 1.4285169

 NUMBER OF K-POINTS: 1
```

```

:NOE : NUMBER OF ELECTRONS = 48.000
:FER : F E R M I - ENERGY = .53562

:POS01: AT.NR. -1 POSITION = .00000 .00000 .00000 MULTIPLICITY= 2
 LMMAX=10
 LM= 0 0 2 0 2 2 4 0 4 2 4 4 6 0 6 2 6 4 6 6 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
:CHA01: TOTAL CHARGE INSIDE SPHERE 1 = 8.802166
:PCS01: PARTIAL CHARGES SPHERE = 1 S,P,D,F,PX,PY,PZ,D-Z2,D-X2Y2,D-XY,D-XZ,D-YZ
:QTL01: .127 6.080 2.518 .067 2.011 2.047 2.022 1.090 .760 .155 .480 .034
 VXX VYY VZZ UP TO R
:VZZ01: -4.96856 8.48379 -3.51524 2.000
:POS02: AT.NR. -2 POSITION = .30500 .30500 .00000 MULTIPLICITY= 4
 LMMAX=16
 LM= 0 0 1 0 2 0 2 2 3 0 3 2 4 0 4 2 4 4 5 0 5 2 5 4 6 0 6 2 6 4 6 6 0 0
:CHA02: TOTAL CHARGE INSIDE SPHERE 2 = 5.486185
:PCS02: PARTIAL CHARGES SPHERE = 2 S,P,D,F,PX,PY,PZ,D-Z2,D-X2Y2,D-XY,D-XZ,D-YZ
:QTL02: 1.559 3.902 .022 .002 1.296 1.306 1.300 .014 .004 .000 .003 .001
 VXX VYY VZZ UP TO R
:VZZ02: .25199 -.55091 .29892 1.600

:CHA : TOTAL CHARGE INSIDE CELL = 48.000000
:SUM : SUM OF EIGENVALUES = -15.810906

 QTL-B VALUE .EQ. 40.35396 !!!!!!!
 NBAND in QTL-file: 24
-----end of truncated file tio2.scf-----

```

Next we show **tio2.output2** for the first of the ghost bands at -1.297 Ry. One sees that it corresponds mainly to a p-like charge, which originates from the energy derivative part Q(UE) of the Kohn-Sham orbital. Q(UE) contributes 40.1% compared with 8.5% from the main component Q(U). Q(UE) greater than Q(U) is a good indication for a ghost band.

```

-----part of file tio2.output2 -----
 QTL-B VALUE .EQ. 40.35396 !!!!!!!
 K-POINT: .0000 .0000 .0000 599 36 1
 BAND # 1 E= -1.29708 WEIGHT= 2.0000000
 L= 0 L= 1 PX: PY: PZ: L= 2 DZ2: DX2Y2: DXY: DXZ: DYZ: L= 3
 QINSID: .0000 48.6035 35.0996 13.5039 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0030
 Q(U) : .0000 8.4902 6.0125 2.4777 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0026
 Q(UE) : .0000 40.1132 29.0871 11.0261 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0005
 L= 0 L= 1 PX: PY: PZ: L= 2 DZ2: DX2Y2: DXY: DXZ: DYZ: L= 3
 QINSID: .1294 .0707 .0000 .0055 .0653 .0088 .0038 .0049 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0022
 Q(U) : .1279 .0627 .0000 .0052 .0575 .0087 .0038 .0049 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0020
 Q(UE) : .0016 .0081 .0000 .0003 .0077 .0001 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0000 .0002
 QOUT : 1.9265
-----bottom of truncated file -----

```

Another file in which the same information can be found is **tio2.help031**, since the ghost band is caused by a bad choice for the Ti-p energy parameter:

```

-----Top of file tio2.help031 -----
 K-POINT: .0000 .0000 .0000 599 36 1
 BAND # 1 E= -1.29708 WEIGHT= 2.0000000
 L= 0 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
 L= 1 48.60346 8.49022 40.11324 .00000 .00000 .00000
 PX: 35.09960 6.01247 29.08712 .00000 .00000 .00000
 PY: 13.50386 2.47774 11.02612 .00000 .00000 .00000
 PZ: .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
 L= 2 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
 DZ2: .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
 DX2Y2: .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
 DXY: .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
 DXZ: .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
 DYZ: .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
 L= 3 .00304 .00255 .00050 .00000 .00000 .00000
 L= 4 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
 L= 5 .00096 .00082 .00014 .00000 .00000 .00000
 L= 6 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000 .00000
-----bottom of truncated file -----

```

Note again for L=1 the percentage of charge associated with the primary (APW) basis functions ul (8.5%) versus that coming from the energy derivative component (40.1%).

If a ghost band appears, one should first analyze its origin as indicated above, then use appropriate local orbitals to improve the calculation and get rid of these unphysical states.

**Do not perform calculations with “ghost-bands”, even when the calculation converges.**

Good luck !



## **Part IV**

# **Appendix**



---

## A Local rotation matrices

---

Local rotation matrices are used to rotate the global coordinate system (given by the definition of the Bravais matrix) to a local coordinate system for each atomic site. They are used in the program for two reasons:

- ▶ to minimize the number of LM combinations in the lattice harmonics expansion (of potential and charge density according to equ. 2.10). For example for point group  $mm2$  one needs for  $L=1$  just  $LM=1,0$  if the coordinate system is chosen such that the  $z$ -axis coincides with the 2-fold rotation axis, while in an arbitrary coordinate system the three terms  $1,0$ ;  $1,1$  and  $-1,1$  are needed (and so on for higher  $L$ ).
- ▶ The interpretation e.g. of the partial charges requires a proper orientation of the coordinate system. In the example given above, the  $p$  orbitals split into 2 irreducible representations, but they can be attributed to  $p_z$  and  $p_x, p_y$  only if the  $z$ -axis is the 2-fold rotation axis.

It is of course possible to perform calculations without “local rotation matrices”, but in such a case the LM combinations given in Table 7.55 (and by SYMMETRY) may not be correct. (The LM values for arbitrary orientations may be obtained from a procedure described in Singh 94.)

Fortunately, the “local rotation matrices” are usually fairly simple and are now **automatically inserted** into your `case.struct` file. Nevertheless we recommend to check them in order to be sure.

The most common coordinate transformations are

- ▶ interchanging of two axes (e.g.  $x$  and  $z$ )
- ▶ rotation by  $45^\circ$  (e.g. in the  $xy$ -plane)
- ▶ rotation of  $z$  into the  $(111)$  direction

Inspection of the output of SYMMETRY tells you if the local rotation matrix is the unit matrix or it gives you a clear indication how to find the proper matrix.

The local rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}$ , which transforms the global coordinates  $r$  to the rotated ones  $r'$ , is defined by  $\mathbf{R}r = r'$ .

There are two simple ways to check the local rotation matrixes together with the selected LM combinations:

- ▶ charge density plots generated with LAPW5 must be continuous across the atomic sphere boundary (especially valence or difference density plots are very sensitive, see 8.13)
- ▶ Perform a run of LAPW1 and LAPW2 using the GAMMA-point only (or a complete star of another  $k$  point). In such a case, “wrong” LM combinations must vanish. Note that the latter is true only in this case. For a  $k$  mesh in the IBZ “wrong” LM combinations do not vanish and thus must be omitted!!

A first example for “local rotation matrices” is given for the rutile  $TiO_2$ , which has already been described as an example in section 10.3. Also two other examples will be given (see below).

## A.1 Rutile ( $TiO_2$ )

Examine the output from symmetry. It should be obvious that you need local rotation matrices for both, Ti and O:

```

.....
Titanium operation # 1 1
Titanium operation # 2 -1
Titanium operation # 5 2 || z
Titanium operation # 6 m n z
Titanium operation # 12 m n 110
Titanium operation # 13 m n -110
Titanium operation # 18 2 || 110
Titanium operation # 19 2 || -110
pointgroup is mmm (neg. iatnr!!)
axes should be: m n z, m n y, m n x

```

This output tells you, that for Ti a mirror plan normal to z is present, but the mirror planes normal to x and y are missing. Instead, they are normal to the (110) plane and thus you need to rotate x, y by  $45^\circ$  around the z axis. (The required choice of the coordinate system for mmm symmetry is also given in Table 7.55)

```

.....
Oxygen operation # 1 1
Oxygen operation # 6 m n z
Oxygen operation # 13 m n -110
Oxygen operation # 18 2 || 110
pointgroup is mm2 (neg. iatnr!!)
axes should be: 2 || z, m n y

```

For O the 2-fold symmetry axes points into the (110) direction instead of z. The appropriate rotation matrices for Ti and O are:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 \\ \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

## A.2 Si $\Gamma$ -phonon

Si possesses a face-centered cubic structure with two equivalent atoms per unit cell, at  $(\pm 0.125, \pm 0.125, \pm 0.125)$ . The site symmetry is  $-43m$ . For the  $\Gamma$ -phonon the two atoms are displaced in opposite direction along the (111) direction and cubic symmetry is lost. The output of SYMMETRY gives the following information:

```

Si operation # 1 1
Si operation # 13 m n -110
Si operation # 16 m n -101
Si operation # 17 m n 0-11
Si operation # 24 3 || 111
Si operation # 38 3 || 111
pointgroup is 3m (neg. iatnr!!)
axis should be: 3 || z, m n y
lm: 0 0 1 0 2 0 3 0 3 3 4 0 4 3 5 0 5 3 6 0 6 3 6

```

Therefore the required local rotation matrix should rotate z into the (111) direction and thus the matrix in the "struct" file should be:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} 0.4082483 & -.7071068 & 0.5773503 & \frac{\sqrt{6}}{6} & -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \\ 0.4082483 & 0.7071068 & 0.5773503 & \frac{\sqrt{6}}{6} & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \\ -.8164966 & 0.0000000 & 0.5773503 & -2\frac{\sqrt{6}}{6} & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \end{array}$$

### A.3 Trigonal Selenium

Selenium possesses space group P3121 with the following struct file:

```
H LATTICE,NONEQUIV.ATOMS: 1
MODE OF CALC=RELA POINTGROUP:32
8.2500000 8.2500000 9.369000
ATOM= -1: X= .7746000 Y= .7746000 Z= 0.0000000
 MULT= 3 ISPLIT= 8
ATOM= -1: X= .2254000 Y= .0000000 Z= 0.3333333
ATOM= -1: X= .0000000 Y= .2254000 Z= 0.6666667
Se NPT= 381 R0=.000100000 RMT=2.100000000 Z:34.0
LOCAL ROT.MATRIX: 0.0 0.5000000 0.8660254
 0.0000000 -.8660254 0.5000000
 1.0000000 0.0000000 0.0
 6 IORD OF GROUP G0
.....
```

The output of SYMMETRY reads:

```
Se operation # 1 1
Se operation # 9 2 $|$$|$ 110
 pointgroup is 2 (neg. iatnr!!)
 axis should be: 2 || z
lm: 0 0 1 0 2 0 2 2 -2 2 3 0 3 2 -3 2 4 0 4 2 -4 2
```

Point group 2 should have its 2-fold rotation axis along z, so the local rotation matrix can be constructed in two steps: firstly interchange x and z (that leads to z || (011) ) and secondly rotate from (011) into (001) (see the struct file given above). Since this is a hexagonal lattice, SYMMETRY uses the hexagonal axes, but the local rotation matrix must be given in cartesian coordinates.



---

## **B Periodic Table**

---

Periodic Table of the Elements

|                        |                        |                            |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                       |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                          |                          |                          |                          |
|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <sup>1</sup> H<br>1    |                        |                            |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        | <sup>2</sup> He<br>2   |                       |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                          |                          |                          |                          |
| <sup>3</sup> Li<br>3   | <sup>4</sup> Be<br>4   |                            |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        | <sup>9</sup> F<br>9    | <sup>10</sup> Ne<br>10 |                       |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                          |                          |                          |                          |
| <sup>11</sup> Na<br>11 | <sup>12</sup> Mg<br>12 |                            |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        | <sup>17</sup> Cl<br>17 | <sup>18</sup> Ar<br>18 |                       |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                          |                          |                          |                          |
| <sup>19</sup> K<br>19  | <sup>20</sup> Ca<br>20 | <sup>21</sup> Sc<br>21     | <sup>22</sup> Ti<br>22 | <sup>23</sup> V<br>23  | <sup>24</sup> Cr<br>24 | <sup>25</sup> Mn<br>25 | <sup>26</sup> Fe<br>26 | <sup>27</sup> Co<br>27 | <sup>28</sup> Ni<br>28 | <sup>29</sup> Cu<br>29 | <sup>30</sup> Zn<br>30 | <sup>31</sup> Ga<br>31 | <sup>32</sup> Ge<br>32 | <sup>33</sup> As<br>33 | <sup>34</sup> Se<br>34 | <sup>35</sup> Br<br>35 | <sup>36</sup> Kr<br>36 |                       |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                          |                          |                          |                          |
| <sup>37</sup> Rb<br>37 | <sup>38</sup> Sr<br>38 | <sup>39</sup> Y<br>39      | <sup>40</sup> Zr<br>40 | <sup>41</sup> Nb<br>41 | <sup>42</sup> Mo<br>42 | <sup>43</sup> Tc<br>43 | <sup>44</sup> Ru<br>44 | <sup>45</sup> Rh<br>45 | <sup>46</sup> Pd<br>46 | <sup>47</sup> Ag<br>47 | <sup>48</sup> Cd<br>48 | <sup>49</sup> In<br>49 | <sup>50</sup> Sn<br>50 | <sup>51</sup> Sb<br>51 | <sup>52</sup> Te<br>52 | <sup>53</sup> I<br>53  | <sup>54</sup> Xe<br>54 |                       |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                          |                          |                          |                          |
| <sup>55</sup> Cs<br>55 | <sup>56</sup> Ba<br>56 | <sup>57-71</sup><br>La-Lu  | <sup>72</sup> Hf<br>72 | <sup>73</sup> Ta<br>73 | <sup>74</sup> W<br>74  | <sup>75</sup> Re<br>75 | <sup>76</sup> Os<br>76 | <sup>77</sup> Ir<br>77 | <sup>78</sup> Pt<br>78 | <sup>79</sup> Au<br>79 | <sup>80</sup> Hg<br>80 | <sup>81</sup> Tl<br>81 | <sup>82</sup> Pb<br>82 | <sup>83</sup> Bi<br>83 | <sup>84</sup> Po<br>84 | <sup>85</sup> At<br>85 | <sup>86</sup> Rn<br>86 |                       |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                          |                          |                          |                          |
| <sup>87</sup> Fr<br>87 | <sup>88</sup> Ra<br>88 | <sup>89-103</sup><br>Ac-Lr |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                       |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                          |                          |                          |                          |
| <sup>57</sup> La<br>57 | <sup>58</sup> Ce<br>58 | <sup>59</sup> Pr<br>59     | <sup>60</sup> Nd<br>60 | <sup>61</sup> Pm<br>61 | <sup>62</sup> Sm<br>62 | <sup>63</sup> Eu<br>63 | <sup>64</sup> Gd<br>64 | <sup>65</sup> Tb<br>65 | <sup>66</sup> Dy<br>66 | <sup>67</sup> Ho<br>67 | <sup>68</sup> Er<br>68 | <sup>69</sup> Tm<br>69 | <sup>70</sup> Yb<br>70 | <sup>71</sup> Lu<br>71 | <sup>89</sup> Ac<br>89 | <sup>90</sup> Th<br>90 | <sup>91</sup> Pa<br>91 | <sup>92</sup> U<br>92 | <sup>93</sup> Np<br>93 | <sup>94</sup> Pu<br>94 | <sup>95</sup> Am<br>95 | <sup>96</sup> Cm<br>96 | <sup>97</sup> Bk<br>97 | <sup>98</sup> Cf<br>98 | <sup>99</sup> Es<br>99 | <sup>100</sup> Fm<br>100 | <sup>101</sup> Md<br>101 | <sup>102</sup> No<br>102 | <sup>103</sup> Lr<br>103 |



**WIEN2k**

ISBN 3-9501031-1-2

---

# Bibliography

---

- [Tab, 1964] (1964). *International Tables for X-Ray Crystallography*, volume I. Kynoch, Birmingham. 40, 41
- [Abt et al., 1994] Abt, A., Ambrosch-Draxl, C., and Knoll, P. (1994). *Physica B*, 194-196:1451. 11, 176
- [Abt, 1997] Abt, R. (1997). PhD Thesis, University of Graz. 11
- [Ambrosch-Draxl et al., 1995] Ambrosch-Draxl, C., Majewski, J. A., Vogl, P., and Leising, G. (1995). *Phys. Rev. B*, 51:9668. 11
- [Ambrosch-Draxl and Sofo, 2006] Ambrosch-Draxl, C. and Sofo, J. (2006). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 175:1. 11, 102, 176
- [Andersen, 1973] Andersen, O. K. (1973). *Solid State Commun.*, 13:133. 8
- [Andersen, 1975] Andersen, O. K. (1975). *Phys. Rev. B*, 12:3060. 8
- [Anisimov et al., 1993] Anisimov, V. I., Solovyev, I. V., Korotin, M. A., Czyzyk, M. T., and Sawatzky, G. A. (1993). *Phys. Rev. B*, 48:16929. 120
- [Anisimov et al., 1991] Anisimov, V. I., Zaanen, J., and Andersen, O. K. (1991). *Phys. Rev. B*, 44:943. 120
- [Armiento and Kümmel, 2013] Armiento, R. and Kümmel, S. (2013). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 111:036402. 116, 118
- [Armiento and Mattsson, 2005] Armiento, R. and Mattsson, A. E. (2005). *Phys. Rev. B*, 72:085108. 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Bader, ] Bader, R. F. W. [<http://www.chemistry.mcmaster.ca/bader/aim/>]. 146
- [Becke, 1988] Becke, A. D. (1988). *Phys. Rev. A*, 38:3098. 116, 118
- [Becke, 1993] Becke, A. D. (1993). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 98:5648. 116, 118
- [Becke and Edgecombe, 1990] Becke, A. D. and Edgecombe, K. E. (1990). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 92:5397. 118
- [Becke and Johnson, 2006] Becke, A. D. and Johnson, E. R. (2006). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 124:221101. 55, 118
- [Becke and Roussel, 1989] Becke, A. D. and Roussel, M. R. (1989). *Phys. Rev. A*, 39:3761. 118
- [Berland and Hyldgaard, 2014] Berland, K. and Hyldgaard, P. (2014). *Phys. Rev. B*, 89:035412. 59

- [Betzinger et al., 2010] Betzinger, M., Friedrich, C., and Blügel, S. (2010). *Phys. Rev. B*, 81:195117. 55, 66
- [Blaha et al., 2009] Blaha, P., Hofstätter, H., Koch, R., Laskowski, R., and Schwarz, K. (2009). *J. Comput. Phys.*, 229:453. 124
- [Blaha and Schwarz, 1983] Blaha, P. and Schwarz, K. (1983). *Int. J. Quantum Chem.*, 23:1535. 8
- [Blaha et al., 1985] Blaha, P., Schwarz, K., and Herzig, P. (1985). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 54:1192. 8
- [Blöchl et al., 1994] Blöchl, P. E., Jepsen, O., and Andersen, O. K. (1994). *Phys. Rev. B*, 49:16223. 10, 11, 107, 135, 192
- [Boese et al., 2000] Boese, A. D., Doltsinis, N. L., Handy, N. C., and Sprik, M. (2000). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 112:1670. 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Boese and Handy, 2001] Boese, A. D. and Handy, N. C. (2001). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 114:5497. 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Brooks, 1985] Brooks, M. S. S. (1985). *Physica B*, 130:6. 121
- [Burke et al., 2014] Burke, K., Cancio, A., Gould, T., and Pittalis, S. (2014). *arXiv:1409.4834*. 117, 119
- [Carmona-Espíndola et al., 2015] Carmona-Espíndola, J., Gázquez, J. L., Vela, A., and Trickey, S. B. (2015). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 142:054105. 116, 118
- [Charpin, 2001] Charpin, T. (2001). see \$WIENROOT/SRC/elast-UG.ps. 153
- [Constantin et al., 2016] Constantin, L. A., Terentjevs, A., Della Sala, F., Cortona, P., and Fabiano, E. (2016). *Phys. Rev. B*, 93:045126. 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Cooper, 2010] Cooper, V. R. (2010). *Phys. Rev. B*, 81:161104(R). 58
- [Czyzyk and Sawatzky, 1994] Czyzyk, M. T. and Sawatzky, G. A. (1994). *Phys. Rev. B*, 49:14211. 120
- [Desclaux, 1969] Desclaux, J. P. (1969). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 1:216. Note that the actual code we use is an apparently unpublished relativistic version of the non-relativistic code described in this paper. Though this code is widely circulated, we have been unable to find a formal reference for it. 8, 105, 139
- [Desclaux, 1975] Desclaux, J. P. (1975). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 9:31. This paper contains much of the Dirac-Fock treatment used in Desclaux's relativistic LSDA code. 105, 139
- [Dion et al., 2004] Dion, M., Rydberg, H., Schröder, E., Langreth, D. C., and Lundqvist, B. I. (2004). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 92:246401. 57, 58, 119, 120
- [Engel and Vosko, 1993] Engel, E. and Vosko, S. H. (1993). *Phys. Rev. B*, 47:13164. 116, 118
- [Eriksson and Johansson, 1989] Eriksson, O. and Johansson, B. (1989). *J. Phys.: Condens. Matter*, 1:4005. 121

- [Fabiano et al., 2010] Fabiano, E., Constantin, L. A., and Della Sala, F. (2010). *Phys. Rev. B*, 82:113104. 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Gay, 1983] Gay, D. M. (1983). *ACM Trans. Math. Software*, 9:503. 172
- [Grimme et al., 2010] Grimme, S., Antony, J., Ehrlich, S., and Krieg, H. (2010). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 132:154104. 57, 115
- [Haas et al., 2010] Haas, P., Tran, F., Blaha, P., Pedroza, L. S., da Silva, A. J. R., Odashima, M. M., and Capelle, K. (2010). *Phys. Rev. B*, 81:125136. 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Haas et al., 2011] Haas, P., Tran, F., Blaha, P., and Schwarz, K. (2011). *Phys. Rev. B*, 83:205117. 116, 118
- [Hamada, 2014] Hamada, I. (2014). *Phys. Rev. B*, 89:121103(R). 59
- [Hammer et al., 1999] Hammer, B., Hansen, L. B., and Nørskov, J. K. (1999). *Phys. Rev. B*, 59:7413. 116, 118
- [Hamprecht et al., 1998] Hamprecht, F. A., Cohen, A. J., Tozer, D. J., and Handy, N. C. (1998). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 109:6264. 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Henderson et al., 2008] Henderson, T. M., Janesko, B. G., and Scuseria, G. E. (2008). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 128:194105. 51, 116, 118
- [Heyd et al., 2003] Heyd, J., Scuseria, G. E., and Ernzerhof, M. (2003). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 118:8207. 51
- [Hirst, 1997] Hirst, L. L. (1997). *Rev. Mod. Phys.*, 69:607. 121
- [Hohenberg and Kohn, 1964] Hohenberg, P. and Kohn, W. (1964). *Phys. Rev.*, 136:B864. 7
- [Jamal et al., 2016] Jamal, M., Abu-Jafar, M. S., and Reshak, A. H. (2016). *J. Alloys Compd.*, 667:151. 159
- [Jansen and Freeman, 1984] Jansen, H. J. F. and Freeman, A. J. (1984). *Phys. Rev. B*, 30:561. 8
- [Kara and Kurki-Suonio, 1981] Kara, M. and Kurki-Suonio, K. (1981). *Acta Cryst.*, A37:201. xiii, 136
- [Karsai et al., 2017] Karsai, F., Tran, F., and Blaha, P. (2017). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, in preparation:0. 124
- [King-Smith and Vanderbilt, 1993] King-Smith, R. D. and Vanderbilt, D. (1993). *Phys. Rev. B*, 47:1651. 95
- [Klimeš et al., 2010] Klimeš, J., Bowler, D. R., and Michaelides, A. (2010). *J. Phys.: Condens. Matter*, 22:022201. 59, 116, 118
- [Klimeš et al., 2011] Klimeš, J., Bowler, D. R., and Michaelides, A. (2011). *Phys. Rev. B*, 83:195131. 58, 59, 116, 118
- [Koelling, 1972] Koelling, D. D. (1972). *J. Phys. Chem. Solids*, 33:1335. 8
- [Koelling and Arbman, 1975] Koelling, D. D. and Arbman, G. O. (1975). *J. Phys. F: Met. Phys.*, 5:2041. 8, 124

- [Koelling and Harmon, 1977] Koelling, D. D. and Harmon, B. N. (1977). *J. Phys. C: Solid State Phys.*, 10:3107. 8
- [Kohler et al., 1996] Kohler, B., Wilke, S., Scheffler, M., Kouba, R., and Ambrosch-Draxl, C. (1996). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 94:31. 10
- [Kohn and Sham, 1965] Kohn, W. and Sham, L. J. (1965). *Phys. Rev.*, 140:A1133. 7, 116, 118
- [Kokalj, 2003] Kokalj, A. (2003). *Comput. Mater. Sci.*, 28:155. 214
- [Koller et al., 2012] Koller, D., Tran, F., and Blaha, P. (2012). *Phys. Rev. B*, 85:155109. 57
- [Krieger et al., 1990] Krieger, J. B., Li, Y., and Iafrate, G. J. (1990). *Phys. Lett. A*, 146:256. 55, 118
- [Krimmel et al., 1994] Krimmel, H. G., Ehmann, J., Elsässer, C., Fähnle, M., and Soler, J. M. (1994). *Phys. Rev. B*, 50:8846. 10
- [Krukau et al., 2006] Krukau, A. V., Vydrov, O. A., Izmaylov, A. F., and Scuseria, G. E. (2006). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 125:224106. 51
- [Kuneš et al., 2001] Kuneš, J., Novák, P., Schmid, R., Blaha, P., and Schwarz, K. (2001). *Phys. Rev. B*, 64:153102. 11, 47, 131
- [Laskowski and Blaha, 2012a] Laskowski, R. and Blaha, P. (2012a). *Phys. Rev. B*, 85:035132. 87, 91, 175
- [Laskowski and Blaha, 2012b] Laskowski, R. and Blaha, P. (2012b). *Phys. Rev. B*, 85:245117. 87, 91, 175
- [Laskowski and Blaha, 2014] Laskowski, R. and Blaha, P. (2014). *Phys. Rev. B*, 89:014402. 87, 91, 175
- [Laskowski and Blaha, 2015a] Laskowski, R. and Blaha, P. (2015a). *Journal of Physical Chemistry C*, 119:731. 91
- [Laskowski and Blaha, 2015b] Laskowski, R. and Blaha, P. (2015b). *Journal of Physical Chemistry C*, 119:19390. 91
- [Laskowski et al., 2013] Laskowski, R., Blaha, P., and Tran, F. (2013). *Phys. Rev. B*, 87:195130. 175
- [Laskowski et al., 2017] Laskowski, R., Khoo, K., Haarmann, F., and Blaha, P. (2017). *Journal of Physical Chemistry C*, in print:0. 91, 92
- [Lee et al., 1988] Lee, C., Yang, W., and Parr, R. G. (1988). *Phys. Rev. B*, 37:785. 117, 119
- [Lee et al., 2010] Lee, K., Murray, E. D., Kong, L., Lundqvist, B. I., and Langreth, D. C. (2010). *Phys. Rev. B*, 82:081101(R). 58, 120
- [Liechtenstein et al., 1995] Liechtenstein, A. I., Anisimov, V. I., and Zaanen, J. (1995). *Phys. Rev. B*, 52:R5467. 120
- [MacDonald et al., 1980] MacDonald, A. H., Pickett, W. E., and Koelling, D. D. (1980). *J. Phys. C: Solid State Phys.*, 13:2675. 8, 11

- [Madsen, 2007] Madsen, G. K. H. (2007). *Phys. Rev. B*, 75:195108. 116, 118
- [Madsen et al., 2001] Madsen, G. K. H., Blaha, P., Schwarz, K., Sjöstedt, E., and Nordström, L. (2001). *Phys. Rev. B*, 64:195134. 10, 124
- [Marks, 2013] Marks, L. D. (2013). *J. Chem. Theory Comput.*, 9:2786. 141
- [Marks and Luke, 2008] Marks, L. D. and Luke, R. (2008). *Phys. Rev. B*, 78:075114. 141, 142
- [Marques et al., 2012] Marques, M. A. L., Oliveira, M. J. T., and Burnus, T. (2012). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 183:2272. 114, 223
- [Mattheis and Hamann, 1986] Mattheis, L. F. and Hamann, D. R. (1986). *Phys. Rev. B*, 33:823. 8
- [Mostofi et al., 2008] Mostofi, A. A., Yates, J. R., Lee, Y.-S., Souza, I., Vanderbilt, D., and Marzari, N. (2008). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 178:685. 93
- [Murnaghan, 1944] Murnaghan, F. D. (1944). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 30:244. 206
- [Neckel et al., 1975] Neckel, A., Rastl, P., Eibler, R., Weinberger, P., and Schwarz, K. (1975). *Microchim. Acta Suppl.*, 6:257. 11, 195
- [Novák, 1997] Novák, P. (1997). see \$WIENROOT/SRC/novak\_lecture\_on\_spinorbit.ps. 8, 11, 130
- [Novák, 2001] Novák, P. (2001). see \$WIENROOT/SRC/novak\_lecture\_on\_ldaumatrixelements.p 11
- [Novák, 2006] Novák, P. (2006). see \$WIENROOT/SRC/Bhf\_3.ps. 138
- [Novák et al., 2001] Novák, P., Boucher, F., Gressier, P., Blaha, P., and Schwarz, K. (2001). *Phys. Rev. B*, 63:235114. 120
- [Ortenzi et al., 2012] Ortenzi, L., Mazin, I. I., Blaha, P., and Boeri, L. (2012). *Phys. Rev. B*, 86:064437. 114
- [Paier et al., 2006] Paier, J., Marsman, M., Hummer, K., Kresse, G., Gerber, I. C., and Ángyán, J. G. (2006). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 124:154709. 53
- [Pardini et al., 2012] Pardini, L., Bellini, V., Manghi, F., and Ambrosch-Draxl, C. (2012). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 183:628. 176
- [Perdew et al., 1996] Perdew, J. P., Burke, K., and Ernzerhof, M. (1996). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 77:3865. 8, 106, 113, 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Perdew et al., 1992] Perdew, J. P., Chevary, J. A., Vosko, S. H., Jackson, K. A., Pederson, M. R., Singh, D. J., and Fiolhais, C. (1992). *Phys. Rev. B*, 46:6671. 8, 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Perdew et al., 1999] Perdew, J. P., Kurth, S., Zupan, A., and Blaha, P. (1999). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 82:2544. 8, 116, 117

- [Perdew et al., 2009] Perdew, J. P., Ruzsinszky, A., Csonka, G. I., Constantin, L. A., and Sun, J. (2009). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 103:026403. 116, 117
- [Perdew et al., 2008] Perdew, J. P., Ruzsinszky, A., Csonka, G. I., Vydrov, O. A., Scuseria, G. E., Constantin, L. A., Zhou, X., and Burke, K. (2008). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 100:136406. 106, 113, 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Perdew and Wang, 1992] Perdew, J. P. and Wang, Y. (1992). *Phys. Rev. B*, 45:13244. 7, 106, 113, 117, 119
- [Poirier and Tarantola, 1998] Poirier, J. and Tarantola, A. (1998). *Phys. Earth Planet. Inter.*, 109:1. 206
- [Reshak and Jamal, 2013] Reshak, A. and Jamal, M. (2013). *J. Alloys Compd.*, 555:362. 75
- [Resta et al., 1993] Resta, R., Posternak, M., and Baldereschi, A. (1993). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 70:1010. 95
- [Román-Pérez and Soler, 2009] Román-Pérez, G. and Soler, J. M. (2009). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 103:096102. 57, 119
- [Ruzsinszky et al., 2009] Ruzsinszky, A., Csonka, G. I., and Scuseria, G. E. (2009). *J. Chem. Theory Comput.*, 5:763. 116, 117, 118, 119
- [Sabatini et al., 2013] Sabatini, R., Gorni, T., and de Gironcoli, S. (2013). *Phys. Rev. B*, 87:041108(R). 59, 120
- [Schwarz and Blaha, 1996] Schwarz, K. and Blaha, P. (1996). *Lecture Notes in Chemistry*, 67:139. 8
- [Schwarz et al., 2002] Schwarz, K., Blaha, P., and Madsen, G. K. H. (2002). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 147:71. 8
- [Schwarz et al., 1979] Schwarz, K., Neckel, A., and Nordgren, J. (1979). *J. Phys. F: Met. Phys.*, 9:2509. 11, 195
- [Schwarz and Wimmer, 1980] Schwarz, K. and Wimmer, E. (1980). *J. Phys. F: Met. Phys.*, 10:1001. 11, 195
- [Singh, 1989] Singh, D. (1989). *Phys. Rev. B*, 40:5428. 124
- [Singh and Nordström, 2006] Singh, D. J. and Nordström, L. (2006). *Planewaves, Pseudopotentials and the LAPW Method, 2nd ed.* Springer, Berlin. 8, 11, 130
- [Sjöstedt et al., 2000] Sjöstedt, E., Nordström, L., and Singh, D. J. (2000). *Solid State Commun.*, 114:15. 9, 124
- [Slater, 1951] Slater, J. C. (1951). *Phys. Rev.*, 81:385. 55, 118
- [Sofa and Fuhr, 2001] Sofa, J. and Fuhr, J. (2001). see \$WIENROOT/SRC/aim\_sofa.notes.ps. 11, 146
- [Soler and Williams, 1989] Soler, J. M. and Williams, A. R. (1989). *Phys. Rev. B*, 40:1560. 10
- [Stahn et al., 2001] Stahn, J., Pietsch, U., Blaha, P., and Schwarz, K. (2001). *Phys. Rev. B*, 63:165205. 11, 115

- [Stephens et al., 1994] Stephens, P. J., Devlin, F. J., Chabalowski, C. F., and Frisch, M. J. (1994). *J. Phys. Chem.*, 98:11623. 116, 118
- [Sun et al., 2013] Sun, J., Haunschild, R., Xiao, B., Bulik, I. W., Scuseria, G. E., and Perdew, J. P. (2013). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 138:044113. 116, 117
- [Sun et al., 2015a] Sun, J., Perdew, J. P., and Ruzsinszky, A. (2015a). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 112:685. 116, 117
- [Sun et al., 2015b] Sun, J., Ruzsinszky, A., and Perdew, J. P. (2015b). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 115:036402. 113, 116, 117
- [Tao and Mo, 2016] Tao, J. and Mo, Y. (2016). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 117:073001. 116, 117
- [Tao et al., 2003] Tao, J., Perdew, J. P., Staroverov, V. N., and Scuseria, G. E. (2003). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 91:146401. 8, 116, 117
- [Tran, 2012] Tran, F. (2012). *Phys. Lett. A*, 376:879. 53
- [Tran and Blaha, 2009] Tran, F. and Blaha, P. (2009). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 102:226401. 55, 56, 57, 73, 113, 116, 118
- [Tran and Blaha, 2011] Tran, F. and Blaha, P. (2011). *Phys. Rev. B*, 83:235118. 50, 51, 72, 116, 118, 129, 130
- [Tran et al., 2015] Tran, F., Blaha, P., Betzinger, M., and Blügel, S. (2015). *Phys. Rev. B*, 91:165121. 118
- [Tran et al., 2006] Tran, F., Blaha, P., Schwarz, K., and Novák, P. (2006). *Phys. Rev. B*, 74:155108. 11, 48, 121
- [Tran et al., 2007] Tran, F., Laskowski, R., Blaha, P., and Schwarz, K. (2007). *Phys. Rev. B*, 75:115131. 113
- [Tran et al., 2017] Tran, F., Stelztl, J., Koller, D., Ruh, T., and Blaha, P. (2017). *arXiv:1705.07749*. 57, 58, 119
- [van Leeuwen and Baerends, 1994] van Leeuwen, R. and Baerends, E. J. (1994). *Phys. Rev. A*, 49:2421. 118
- [Van Voorhis and Scuseria, 1998] Van Voorhis, T. and Scuseria, G. E. (1998). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 109:400. 116, 117
- [Vinet et al., 1989] Vinet, P., Rose, J., Ferrante, J., and Smith, J. (1989). *J. Phys.: Condens. Matter*, 1:1941. 206
- [Vosko et al., 1980] Vosko, S. H., Wilk, L., and Nusair, M. (1980). *Can. J. Phys.*, 58:1200. 117, 119
- [Vydrov and Van Voorhis, 2010] Vydrov, O. A. and Van Voorhis, T. (2010). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 133:244103. 59, 120
- [Wei et al., 1985] Wei, S. H., Krakauer, H., and Weinert, M. (1985). *Phys. Rev. B*, 32:7792. 8
- [Weinert, 1981] Weinert, M. (1981). *J. Math. Phys.*, 22:2433. 8, 111
- [Weinert et al., 1982] Weinert, M., Wimmer, E., and Freeman, A. J. (1982). *Phys. Rev. B*, 26:4571. 8, 10, 112

- [Weintraub et al., 2009] Weintraub, E., Henderson, T. M., and Scuseria, G. E. (2009). *J. Chem. Theory Comput.*, 5:754. 51, 116, 118
- [Wellendorff et al., 2014] Wellendorff, J., Lundgaard, K. T., Jacobsen, K. W., and Bligaard, T. (2014). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 140:144107. 116
- [Wimmer et al., 1981] Wimmer, E., Krakauer, H., Weinert, M., and Freeman, A. J. (1981). *Phys. Rev. B*, 24:864. 8
- [Wu and Cohen, 2006] Wu, Z. and Cohen, R. E. (2006). *Phys. Rev. B*, 73:235116. 106, 113, 116, 118
- [Yanchitsky and Timoshevskii, 2001] Yanchitsky, B. Z. and Timoshevskii, A. N. (2001). *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 139:235. 104
- [Yu et al., 1991] Yu, R., Singh, D., and Krakauer, H. (1991). *Phys. Rev. B*, 43:6411. 10, 112
- [Zhang and Yang, 1998] Zhang, Y. and Yang, W. (1998). *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 80:890. 116, 118
- [Zhao and Truhlar, 2008] Zhao, Y. and Truhlar, D. G. (2008). *J. Chem. Phys.*, 128:184109. 116, 118